



# LANGUAGE TRANSFER

LEARN A LANGUAGE, AS IF YOU KNEW IT ALREADY

This transcript was created by volunteers. If you notice any errors in transcription or spelling, please contact: [info@languagetransfer.org](mailto:info@languagetransfer.org)

"The transcripts have been provided for reference and clarification. The transcripts should be used at an absolute minimum during the course and especially during the thinking exercises.

**DO NOT LOOK AT THE TRANSCRIPTS WHILST YOU ARE BUILDING YOUR SENTENCES.** This helps keep your process in your mind, and stops your transcript from behaving like an external brain cell! This is essential for *speaking* a language."

## Contents

Track 1.....	5
Track 2.....	8
Track 3.....	13
Track 4.....	17
Track 5.....	23
Track 6.....	29
Track 7.....	34
Track 8.....	41
Track 9.....	46
Track 10.....	53
Track 11.....	60
Track 12.....	67
Track 13.....	77
Track 14.....	83
Track 15.....	93
Track 16.....	98
Track 17.....	103
Track 18.....	112
Track 19.....	117
Track 20.....	121
Track 21.....	127
Track 22.....	135
Track 23.....	143
Track 24.....	147
Track 26.....	158
Track 27.....	164
Track 28.....	171
Track 29.....	178
Track 30.....	182
Track 31.....	187

<b>Track 32</b> .....	<b>191</b>
<b>Track 33</b> .....	<b>196</b>
<b>Track 34</b> .....	<b>201</b>
<b>Track 35</b> .....	<b>206</b>
<b>Track 36</b> .....	<b>210</b>
<b>Track 37</b> .....	<b>217</b>
<b>Track 38</b> .....	<b>225</b>
<b>Track 39</b> .....	<b>231</b>
<b>Track 40</b> .....	<b>237</b>
<b>Track 41</b> .....	<b>244</b>
<b>Track 42</b> .....	<b>251</b>
<b>Track 43</b> .....	<b>255</b>
<b>Track 44</b> .....	<b>260</b>
<b>Track 45</b> .....	<b>267</b>
<b>Track 46</b> .....	<b>274</b>
<b>Track 47</b> .....	<b>280</b>
<b>Track 48</b> .....	<b>285</b>
<b>Track 49</b> .....	<b>291</b>
<b>Track 50</b> .....	<b>298</b>
<b>Track 51</b> .....	<b>303</b>
<b>Track 52</b> .....	<b>309</b>
<b>Track 53</b> .....	<b>317</b>
<b>Track 54</b> .....	<b>322</b>
<b>Track 55</b> .....	<b>327</b>
<b>Track 56</b> .....	<b>335</b>
<b>Track 57</b> .....	<b>342</b>
<b>Track 58</b> .....	<b>348</b>
<b>Track 59</b> .....	<b>354</b>
<b>Track 60</b> .....	<b>360</b>
<b>Track 61</b> .....	<b>365</b>
<b>Track 62</b> .....	<b>370</b>

Track 63.....	376
Track 64.....	379
Track 65.....	388
Track 66.....	397
Track 67.....	400
Track 68.....	406
Track 69.....	411
Track 70.....	415
Track 71.....	420
Track 72.....	425
Track 73.....	433
Track 74.....	437
Track 75.....	441
Track 76.....	447
Track 77.....	451
Track 78.....	454
Track 79.....	458
Track 80.....	461
Track 81.....	465
Track 82.....	471
Track 83.....	474
Track 84.....	479
Track 85.....	484
Track 86.....	487
Track 87.....	492
Track 88.....	498
Track 89.....	503
Track 90.....	506

## Track 1

Hello and welcome to Complete Spanish. We're really excited about this new material, Language Transfer's first complete course, which is all you need to become a master self-directed language learner and steer yourself to fluency through practice of, and exposure to, Spanish; enjoying the fascinating journey of delving into language.

Right after the first hour, you will be and feel like a Spanish speaker. With the thinking method, we are not just interested in teaching you Spanish in record time, but also about exploring the thinking processes, abilities, and habits which make us effective and confident language learners in control of our own learning process. This will give you a more intimate relationship with your new language and the greater ability to express yourself through the mechanisms that language offers.

We will reconstruct the language together in a way that will give you all of the know-how to overcome your technical difficulties in that language, so that you can concentrate on achieving and enjoying a freedom in your new language.

The course has been recorded with a volunteer student and is a genuine real life learning experience. The volunteer student does not have a script, and she's not acting. Recording in this way has allowed us to capture the essence of the learning experience with the thinking method. During the length of the course, I will be asking the volunteer student to perform various mental exercises, resulting in the construction of sentences. When I do so, you will pause the audio and complete the task yourself, and then continue listening to see how our volunteer student answered. It is important to understand that these are exercises and not tests.

Do not rush to answer. Take your time to think through your answer at your own pace, building it up piece by piece with the instructions you received during the audio, which are as much about the language as they are about the mental processes.

It is very important that you don't try to memorize anything. Memorization is an extremely distracting process, and I need you 100% here with us. If you need help getting over any anxiety about forgetting or the possibility of forgetting, then just remind yourself that you can always repeat the course at the end. So relax.

It's also important that you don't write anything down. You will carry around your new language in your head, not in a notebook. Some of the content you may forget, and that's ok. That's part of the design. Don't worry about that, and just concentrate on understanding (not memorizing) the explanations and building the sentences we give you.

Find the time and place to do the audios where you are calm, undisturbed and can concentrate solely on your language learning experience. Using headphones should help you to tune out from the outside world and concentrate on this experience.

Try to be well rested when you do the courses. The tired mind makes all kinds of unproductive short cuts and careless mistakes. It is of the utmost importance that you don't just listen to the audios, even if you're listening and understanding the process, but that you pause every time I ask our volunteer student a question and work it out for yourself before hearing her response.

Otherwise you will not have your own language learning experience - you will just be witnessing somebody else's. If you do not pause and work out the answer for yourself before continuing, you will finish knowing a lot about Spanish but not speaking Spanish.

Sometimes our student takes one second to reply; sometimes 30 seconds or more. What we've done in the editing process is to leave a short pause for you to hit the pause button and then embark on your own mental journey before replying out loud and continuing with us.

The more energy you have, the more information you will naturally assimilate. If you find yourself tuning out during the explanations due to tiredness, then take a break and go back to it later. It's better to do little often than a lot all at once. So 20 minutes a day you will find much more effective than a few hours crammed in over the weekend. But of course you will find your own balance with other commitments and how quickly you wish to learn Spanish.

If it's been awhile since you've had to concentrate, then don't worry. You will notice your concentration span increase very rapidly. And remember: think slowly to learn quickly. This isn't at school where we expect your hand to go up straight away with the correct answer through memorization; this is a different process where you are expected to take the time to think your answer through and to appreciate and understand that it's those very processes of taking that time and thinking those answers through which makes us assimilate this new knowledge. You don't even have to worry about memorizing this advice, because it will be revisited many times during the course.

Not only are all the courses at Language Transfer available for free download, but we are also an unfunded and independent project. This allows us to create the best courses we can create, without external monetary or publicity pressures. Now, to maintain this freedom and to continue with the many plans we have in the pipeline for more audio courses and also textbooks, we really do need help with donations. So if you love the course and are in a position to donate, then please do. Many thanks for joining us, and let's begin.

## Track 2

Teacher: English and Spanish are two related languages. English is considered a Germanic language, but it's kind of half Latin. We have a huge amount of Latin vocabulary in English and this Latin vocabulary we can convert it over to Spanish really easily because Spanish is practically Modern Latin.

Whoever said Latin is a dead language lied. Just in the same way that Greek is a modern version of ancient Greek, Spanish is like a modern version of Latin. It's actually a street Latin that became Spanish. So we can identify Latin words in English, and we can, with just some rule or other, convert them over to Spanish, and this will give us around 3,000 words, I didn't count them, but there are around 3,000 words. So for example, one of these rules is that words ending in *-al* tend to come from Latin, so we can make them Spanish. So to give you an example, *normal* in Spanish is **normal**.

Student: **Normal**.

Teacher: **Normal**, good. What do you notice different between *normal* and **normal**?

Student: Well, the accent.

Teacher: What do you mean by the accent?

Student: Well the ..., well where the sound is stressed, with which vowel it's stressed.

Teacher: Where's it stressed in English?

Student: On the *o*.

Teacher: Good. At the beginning, right? *NORmal*, *NORmal*, and in Spanish we're stressing the end, right? **NorMAL**.

Student: **NorMAL**.

Teacher: So if we assume the same happens with other words, how do you think you would say *metal*?

*Metal*:

Student: **Metal**.



Teacher: **Metal**. To get a perfect accent in Spanish we just need to pronounce all of the vowels exactly as they are written so *a, e, i, o, u* in Spanish is /ah/, /eh/, /ee/, /oh/, /oo/, where in English the vowel, it can have many different sounds. Like if you look at the *a* sound in *apple* or in *mare*, it's a very different sound. But *a* in Spanish is always going to be /ah/, *e* is always going to be /eh/. So if you pronounce the vowels as they're written, not this kind of uh-uh-uh English vowels that we get, then we get a perfect Spanish accent.

Student: **NorMAL, MeTAL**.

Teacher: Perfect. So we can begin to make sentences with this already. The word for *is* in Spanish is **es, e-s**.

Student: **Es**.

Teacher: **Es**. And this also means *it is, she is, he is*, or even *you are*, talking to somebody formally. So now we can say *he is normal, she is normal*:

Student: **Es normal**.

Teacher: Yeah, **Es normal**. And you pronounced an *s* which is excellent. English speakers should beware that maybe they feel themselves pronouncing a *z*, because many times we have an *s* in English like in the word *is*, and we pronounce a *z*. So you might find slipping out a /z/, but this is incorrect--you should be careful to pronounce an *s*. **Es normal**. Good, how would you say *legal*?

Student: **Legal**.

Teacher: Yeah, **legal**. So how would you say *it is legal*?

Student: **Es legal**.

Teacher: **Es legal**. *Illegal*?

Student: **Ilegal**.

Teacher: **Ilegal**, good. So here in English we have an *i* and an *e* producing the same sound, "*illegal*".

The *i* and the *e* are producing the same sound, so this is really confusing if you want to learn English. But in Spanish you're not going to have this problem. The *i* is like in *ink* and the *e* is like in *elephant*. **Ilegal. Ilegal**. So, *it is illegal*:

Student: **Es ilegal.**

Teacher: Good. **Es ilegal.** What if you wanted to say *he is liberal*? You don't need the word for *he* if you know who you're talking about, you can just use **es**.

Student: **Es liberal.**

Teacher: Yeah, **es liberal.** Now Spanish is much more phonetic than English; what that means is that the letters are going to represent the same sound, where English has a million rules and a million exceptions to those rules. I mean it's really hard even for native English speakers often to understand how to pronounce a new word when they see it written; but you're not going to have that problem in Spanish. So you know *natural* and you don't just want to just change the accent and say *natuRAL*; this is not Spanish. You want to think "how is it written?" and pronounce the letters as they are. So how do you think you would say *natural* in Spanish?

Student: **Natural.**

Teacher: **Natural**, good. That's a *t*, so you pronounce a *t*. *A* is like /ah/, *u* is like /oo/: **natural**. Very good, and the accent on the end as well. *It's natural?*

Student: **Es natural.**

Teacher: **Es Natural.** If you want to say *it isn't* or *it's not*, the word for *not* or *don't* is the same as the word for *no*. And the word for *no* in Spanish is the same as the word for *no* in English, but you pronounce it like in Spanish. So how do you think you say *no* in Spanish?

Student: **No.**

Teacher: **No.** Good. And you put this before *is* if you want to say *it is not*, *he is not*, *she is not*, *you* (formal) *are not*. So how would that sound, *it is not?*

Student: **No es.**

Teacher: **No es**, good. So now we can say things like *it's not normal*:

Student: **No es normal.**

Teacher: **No es normal.** How would you say *ideal*? So really think about how it's spelled and try and pronounce each of those vowels as they're written. *I* like ink, *e* like elephant, *a* like apple.

Student: **Ideal.**

Teacher: Good. **Ideal.** How would you say *it's ideal*?

Student: **Es ideal.**

Teacher: **Es ideal.** *It's not ideal:*

Student: **No es ideal.**

Teacher: Good. **No es ideal.** Perfect. How would you say *fatal*?

Student: **Fatal.**

Teacher: **Fatal.** Good. *Natal:*

Student: **Natal.**

Teacher: **Natal,** good. *Colonial:*

Student: **Colonial.**

Teacher: **Colonial.** *Cultural:*

Student: **Cultural?**

Teacher: So think about how it's written.

Student: **Cultural?**

Teacher: Yes and perfect Spanish accent there. **Cultural,** very nice. *Annual:*

Student: **Anual.**

Teacher: **Anual.** And you cut this y sound that comes in English *ann-y-ual*. This y sound comes from nowhere in English and you cut it out 'cause you focused on how it's written. **Anual.** Very nice.

*Dental:*

Student: **Dental.**

Teacher: Tooth in Spanish is **diente**. So this is coming from **dental**. So if you look up *tooth* in the dictionary and you find **diente**, rather than treating it as a random piece of vocabulary that you

have to memorize, you can relate it back to *dental*. Oh okay, like *dental* it comes from there. And this is useful for memory. A couple more: *festival*:

Student: **Festival.**

Teacher: *Personal*:

Student: **Personal.**

Teacher: **Personal.** Good, *total*:

Student: **Total.**

Teacher: **Total.** Good, *verbal*:

Student: **Verbal.**

Teacher: **Verbal.** So if we wanted to say *verb*, we might not have a rule to convert that word over.

But if we know *verbal* is **verbal**, we can guess that the verb is probably going to be the same in Spanish. And most of the time words are either the same that we don't have a rule, maybe we need to stick an *o* or an *e* or an *a* on the end. So we can make a guess. How do you think you say *verb* in Spanish?

Student: **Verbo?**

Teacher: Yeah, that's right. So with structure, with the building, when we're going to be making sentences with these words, we don't ever want to guess. We want to take our time and think it through. But with vocabulary, we can happily guess and try. Imagine we said *verba* for example, and they would look at us funny and they would go "ah **verbo**" and when that person says "ah, **verbo**" then we learn "oh ok this is the right word". And it's the best way to learn quickly.

## Track 3

T: So what was *is* or *he is*, *she is*, *it is*?

S: **Es.**

T: **Es.** Good, we can use this with some other convertible words as well to make sentences. Another rule for these convertible words is that words in English that end *-ant* or *-ent*, most of them we can just stick an *e* on the end and they become Spanish. So for example, *important* becomes **importante. Importante.** Where is the stress there?

S: In the second last.

T: Good. The stress is as much part of the word as the sounds, which is why we want to get into the habit of just processing where is the accent, not trying to memorize it, just looking where it is.

Not trying to memorize it, just observing it. How would you say *it is important*?

S: **Es importante.**

T: **Es importante.** *It's not important:*

S: **No es importante.**

T: **No es importante.** How would you say *different*?

S: **Diferente?**

T: **Diferente.** *It's not different:*

S: **No es diferente.**

T: Good, **no es diferente.** How would you say *constant*? *Constant:*

S: **Constante.**

T: Yeah, **constante.** How would you say *it is constant*?

S: **Es constante.**

T: **Es constante.** If you add on **-mente**, **-mente**, this sound you get: *-ly* in English. If you want to say *constantly* you can say **constantemente**, and it's one word, **constantemente**.

S: **Constantemente.**

T: Good, so how would you say *legally*?

S: **Legalmente.**

T: Perfect, **legalmente.** Good, *Illegally*:

S: **Ilegalmente.**

T: **Ilegalmente.** How do you think you say *real* in Spanish? *Real*:

S: **Real.**

T: **Real.** Good, when we have an *r* at the beginning you might hear it like a rolling *r*. **Real.** How do you think you would say *really*?

S: **Realmente.**

T: **Realmente.** **Real** also means royal. Like **Real Madrid** is not, you know, *real Madrid*, it's *Royal Madrid*. How would you say *normally*?

S: **Normalmente.**

T: Good, **normalmente.** So what would it mean if I said to you **normalmente es importante**?

**Normalmente es importante**, what does that mean?

S: *Normally*, as in usually, *it's important*.

T: Very good, this is true. You actually use *normally* like *usually*. **Normalmente es importante.** Now if we have a /j/ sound, a /j/ sound, in a convertible word so we're not working with the letter *g*, we're working with the sound here, we're thinking about the sound. If we have a /j/ sound in a convertible word, this /j/ is going to become /kh/ in Spanish. Now if you know how to say *Argentina* for example in Spanish, **Argentina**, if you've heard that anywhere, this is a good hook to remember this rule. If we have a /j/ sound it's going to become /kh/ as a sound. This doesn't mean any *g*. For example how would you say *global*?

S: **Global.**

T: **Global.** *Globally*:

S: **Globalmente.**

T: **Globalmente.** So it's not a *g*, it's the /j/ sound. *General* is going to become?

S: **General.**

T: Very good, **general.** So we're causing a bit of friction in the throat, **general.** *Generally:*

S: **Generalmente.**

T: **Generalmente.** Good. *Original:*

S: **Original.**

T: **Original.** *Originally:*

S: **Originalmente.**

T: Good, **originalmente.** *Digital:*

S: **Digital.**

T: **Digital.** Good, *naturally:*

S: **Naturalmente.**

T: Good. How would you say *naturally it's original?*

S: **Naturalmente es original.**

T: Good. So **naturalmente**, you can also use it a little bit like *obviously*, something like that. Words ending *-ible* or *-able*, we can also convert many of them. We just have to pronounce them syllable by syllable and put the accent second from the end. So *possible* becomes **posible**.

S: **Posible.**

T: *Probable:*

S: **Probable?**

T: Yeah, **probable.** How would you say *probably?*

S: **Probablemente.**

T: Yeah, **probablemente**. *Possibly:*

S: **Posiblemente**.

T: Good. *Possibly it's original:*

S: **Posiblemente es original**.

T: Good. **Posiblemente es original**. *Flexible:*

S: **Flexible**.

T: **Flexible**. Good. So you can't do this - like if you say *doable* for example, you know. It's when the *-able* or *-ible* is really part of the word you will probably be able to do this. Some of these rules are more useful than others, some of these rules have more exceptions than others. We want to just get in the habit of identifying them and then getting this sense of what words in English are from Latin, and which ones we can experiment with converting over to Spanish. Now, this gives us over 3,000 words, and there are enough words to be very conversational. So we want to feel free to experiment with the vocabulary, but at the same time we don't want to feel restricted by the fact that we might find an exception or we might use one that doesn't work. And feeling comfortable about that possibility of making that error is what really allows you to learn quickly.

Because with this experimentation, you find very quickly the words that you can use.



## Track 4

T: How would you say *urgent*?

S: **Urgente.**

T: Good, **Urgente. Urgente.** How would you say *urgently*?

S: **Urgentemente.**

T: **Urgentemente.** *I love you* in Spanish is **te quiero**, literally *I want you*. You might have also heard **te amo**. You should be wary of this difference. **Te quiero** you can use with friends, you can use with lovers very soon. **Te amo** is much much more serious but **te quiero** is very common and it literally means *I want you*. So **te** is *you*, we can get rid of this and here we are left with *I want*.

S: **Quiero.**

T: **Quiero.** Good, how would you say *I don't want*?

S: **No quiero.**

T: **No quiero.** Good, we just put *no* before. One of my favourite rules for convertible words is the rule for words ending *-ion*. This is an extremely useful rule. Words ending *-ion* are the same in English and Spanish, just in Spanish they have the accent on the end. So for example, in English we have *opinion*, and in Spanish you are going to pronounce syllable by syllable, making sure that you are pronouncing the vowels as they are written and you are going to put the accent on the end.

S: **Opinión.**

T: **Opinión.** Good, *passion*?

S: **Pasión.**

T: **Pasión.** Good! And you pronounced an *s* because we don't want /sh/. *Preparation*? Now if it's *-tion*, *t-i-o-n*, if we have *-tion*, it's going to be *c-i-o-n* in Spanish. And this *c-i-o-n* is pronounced /**ción**/ like an *s* in most of the Spanish-speaking world, or in most of Spain it's pronounced /**thion**/. So you can choose, if you have a particular affiliation for Spain you can make this /th/. If not, I suggest using the /s/ sound because the majority of Spanish speakers are using this sound and it's

also much easier. It doesn't appear difficult here: **preparación**, but if you want to ask for a beer for example with the /s/ sound you are going to ask for a **/cervesa/**, if you are going to ask using the /th/ sound you are going to ask for a **/cervetha/**. So, I would suggest unless you have a particular affiliation with Spain or you particularly want to be practicing with some Spanish friends or whatever to use the /s/ sound. So you have a word like organization, that z as well is going to sound like an s or a /th/. **/Or-ga-ni-tha-thión/**, so you see, much easier, then this is **/or-ga-ni-sa-ción/**.

S: **Organización.**

T: Good. *Preparation:*

S: **Preparación.**

T: *Generation:*

S: **Generación.**

T: **Generación.**

S: **Generación.**

T: Good. We had a little bit slipping in from English, one of the vowels there, but if you take it syllable by syllable we get every vowel perfect. **Generación:**

S: **Generación.**

T: *Confirmation:*

S: **Confirmación.**

T: **Confirmación.**

S: I was tempted to say **confermación.**

T: Ah! But you thought "no, I, like ink." This is actually called "language transfer", so this is negative language transfer. Things that come from English affecting your Spanish which are not part of Spanish, are negative language transfer. And what is useful from English like these convertible words that we are using, as far as language learning is concerned, this is positive language transfer. So part of our journey here is to identify what is negative language transfer and what is positive language transfer and using both to our advantage. And English becomes more interesting when

we learn Spanish because we start to see where some words come from, where is the inherent wisdom in the vocabulary. So *confirmation* for example means *with signing*. **Con** is *with* in Spanish and **firma** is *signature*. So when you confirm you are doing it “with signature”.

*Conversation:*

S: **Conversación.**

T: Good. And this means “with verses”, “with verse”. *Confrontation:*

S: **Confrontación.**

T: **Confrontación.** And *front* actually, like in **frontación**, comes from **frente** which means forehead.

So it’s “with the forehead”, when you confront you go forward with the forehead. *Complication:*

S: **Complicación.**

T: **Complicación.** Here **com-** is also **con-** but it changes to an *m* because of that *p*. It happens the same in English and Spanish. **Complicación.** But this is “with folding” from Latin, *plicare*, to fold. You know when you fold stuff up I guess it gets more complicated or something like that. The reason why this is my favourite rule is because out of these words ending *-ion*, if you take the words that end *-ation*, if you take those words and you get rid of the *-tion* and you put an *r* on the end you get the verb. Let me give you an example. *Preparation*, **preparación**, **preparar**.

And there you get the verb *to prepare*. So there is like 1,000 verbs now we know in Spanish.

What was *generation*?

S: **Generación.**

T: Good. What is *to generate*?

S: **Generar.**

T: **Generar.** Good, what was *confirmation*?

S: **Confirmación... Confirmación.**

T: Good. What is *to confirm*?

S: **Confirmar.**

T: Yes, **Confirmar**. So if you had to guess, how do you think you would say *to sign*? If *to confirm* is “with signing”:

S: Oh, **firmar**.

T: Yes! **Firmar**. **Firmar** means *to sign*. *Complication*:

S: **Complicación**.

T: *To complicate*:

S: **Complicar**.

T: Good. So now we can make some sentences with these. What was again *I want*? And if we forget that we can think of *I love you* in Spanish and then take away the *you*.

S: **Quiero**.

T: **Quiero**. So now we can make some sentences. *I want to prepare*:

S: **Quiero preparar**.

T: Good, **quiero preparar**. How do you say *cooperation*?

S: **Cooperación**.

T: Good, **cooperación**. Good, you pronounced both *o*'s, that was correct. **Cooperación**. It just sounds a tiny bit longer, **cooperación**. *To cooperate*:

S: **Cooperar**.

T: **Cooperar**. *I want to cooperate*:

S: **Quiero cooperar**.

T: Good! How do you say *cancellation*?

S: **Cancelación**.

T: And *to cancel*:

S: **Cancelar**.

T: *I want to cancel.*

S: **Quiero cancelar.**

T: Good. How do you think you would say *I don't want to cancel*?

S: **No quiero cancelar.**

T: Perfect, *exploration*:

S: **Exploración.**

T: *To explore*:

S: **Explorar.**

T: Good. *I want to explore*:

S: **Quiero explorar.**

T: Perfect. The word for *me* in Spanish is the same as English. You are just going to pronounce it how it's written.

S: **Me.**

T: **Me**, good. How would you say *I want to prepare myself*? *Myself* is the same as *me*. So you would say *I want to prepare me*.

S: **Quiero prepararme.**

T: Good, **quiero prepararme**. *I want to prepare me*. *I want to prepare myself* and this means *I want to get ready* and you can use this like *I want to get ready*. **Quiero prepararme**. Now this probably sounds quite formal in English: *I want to prepare myself*, but we should be aware that in English, Latin words sound especially formal. Not always: *cancel* doesn't sound formal because it's the only word we use to say cancel. But most of the time we have two words with similar meanings, like for example you might have *to find* and then *to encounter*, which sounds a little bit more formal or a little bit more literary or flowery. And these ones that have these different feelings in English are generally Latin words. And the Germanic words like *find*, which in German is *Finden* (same word), sound more everyday, colloquial. Now we should bear in mind that that's in English,

and Latin words in Spanish, which is more Latin, of course don't sound formal, they just sound normal.

## Track 5

T: You might have noticed we are not using the word for *I*. **Quiero** by itself means *I want*. There is a word for *I*, the word for *I* is **yo**. *Y-o*.

S: **Yo**.

T: You only use it if you want to be emphatic. So if you want to say “*I want*”, to show that emphasis, how would you do it?

S: **Yo quiero**.

T: **Yo quiero**. *I don't want*:

S: **No yo quiero**.

T: The same order as English. *I don't want*:

S: **Yo no quiero**.

T: Good, **yo no quiero**. *I don't want*. Good, *I don't want to cancel*:

S: **Yo no quiero cancelar**.

T: Good. **Yo no quiero cancelar**. How would you say *celebration*?

S: **Celebración**.

T: **Celebración**, very good. And *to celebrate*?

S: **Celebrar**.

T: **Celebrar**. *I want to celebrate*:

S: **Quiero celebrar**.

T: **Quiero celebrar**, good. What would it mean if I say: **Quiero ilustrar**. **Quiero ilustrar**.

S: *I want to illustrate*.

T: Yes! *I want to illustrate*. This is an interesting word as well, actually. The **lus** inside of **ilustrar** means light, and the word **luz**, *l-u-z*, (so actually this *z* would be pronounced /th/ in most of Spain

- /looth/ - but in the rest of Spanish-speaking world (/loos/) means *light* so you can use that word as well. How would you say *I want to find out*? Now in Spanish you will say something like *I want to inform myself. I want to inform myself*:

S: **Quiero informarme.**

T: Good, very good. **Quiero informarme.** So how was *information*?

S: **Información.**

T: **Información**, very good. What was *you*, in the sense of *I love you, I want you*?

S: **Te.**

T: And this is informal *you*, this is used informally. How would you say then *I don't want to oblige you*? You might think "I don't know this!" It's very important, sentences that we think we don't know, to take them block by block. And in this way we will realise we can say so much in Spanish that we would have assumed that we don't know how to say. So the first bit is *I don't want*.

S: **No quiero.**

T: **No quiero.** *To oblige*? So we look to see if we have *obligation* in English: we have it, it's a word.

It's legal, so how is that?

S: **Obligación.**

T: **Obligación.** And *to oblige* then?

S: **Obligar.**

T: **Obligar.** So we don't want to jump from *oblige* to sticking *-ar* on it. We want to take that long route. *Obligation, obligación, obligar.* And then we find the word in Spanish. So, *I don't want, no quiero, to oblige you*:

S: **No quiero obligarte.**

T: Good, **no quiero obligarte.** *I don't want to oblige you. I don't want to make you do it.* So in



English we would say *make you*, maybe. Maybe *oblige* sounds a little bit too formal, but in Spanish it's everyday language. How would you say *I don't want to provoke you? I don't want to provoke you*:

S: **No quiero provocarte.**

T: Good, **no quiero provocarte**. The word for *it* in Spanish is **lo**.

S: **Lo.**

T: **Lo.** So how would you say *I want to cancel it*?

S: **Quiero cancelarlo.**

T: Good, **quiero cancelarlo**. How would you say *I want to regulate it*?

S: **Quiero regularlo.**

T: Good. I want to talk about this *r*. An initial *r*, like in **regular** in most Spanish dialects, it's a rolling *r*. You get this flick of the tongue, **regular**. **Real**, we saw this as well in *real*, **real**. Now, if you can't make that sound, I don't want you to worry about it yet, it's something that I couldn't pronounce it actually, I couldn't pronounce it for a long time, and it was really frustrating, and I was trying to pronounce it, and when you are trying to pronounce it your mouth gets tense and actually you need a very relaxed mouth to pronounce this *r* because you are kind of lifting your tongue up a little bit and letting the air flap it. Now that's a muscle. If it's tense the air can't flap it. So I tried a very long time, I got very frustrated and I gave up and then I was practising Spanish in Peru, one day I started speaking about rice, which is **arroz** and the *r* came out all by itself and I was so excited that I was jumping up and down saying **arroz arroz arroz** and then I heard "the gringo is hungry". My advice if you can't pronounce this sound is just to let it come. The more you hear, just because you want to pronounce it it's going to come. So initial *r* or two *r*'s together inside the word is going to pronounce this double *r*. So, the word for *but* in Spanish is **pero**.

S: **Pero.**

T: *P-e-r-o*. And the word for *dog* is **perro**. *P-e-r-r-o*.

S: **Perro.**

T: So that's the difference. You have normal *r*: **pero**.

S: **Pero**.

T: And it's a bit different to English because it's still kind of more pronounced. You know you are still using your tongue more there. **Pero**. And then **perro**, you keep that in the same position that you are using to make that Spanish *r* which is kind of a little bit more pronounced than the /r-r-r/ English sound, but you pass a little bit of air over it and you let that flick it. **Perro**.

S: **Perro**.

T: Now, like I said, I don't want you to worry about if you can't pronounce this, there are even native Spanish speakers that can't pronounce this, so it's really something I don't want to inhibit anybody. How do you think is *salvation* in Spanish?

S: **Salvación**.

T: **Salvación**. So how do you think would be *to save*?

S: **Salvar**.

T: **Salvar**. This word that we used for *it*, **lo**, can also mean *him*. So how would you say *I want to save him*?

S: **Quiero salvarlo**.

T: Good, **quiero salvarlo**. *I want to save him*. How would you say *situation*?

S: **Situación**.

T: **Situación**. Good, now if you turn that into a verb you actually get *to situate*, to place, to put somewhere. So how would that be?

S: **Situar**.

T: **Situar**. Good, *participation*:

S: **Participación**.

T: **Participación**. *To participate*:

S: **Partipi...**

T: So, take it syllable by syllable. This is very important, so it doesn't become like a salad. You want to take it syllable by syllable.

S: *Participation*-**participación**-**partipisar**.

T: Slower.

S: **Participar**.

T: **Participar**. So we must take it slowly, sometimes you don't need to take it slowly, but we want to get in the habit of taking it slowly, dividing up syllable by syllable. We want to install the correct process slowly. We don't want to jump from *participate* to **participar** because maybe we end up putting some extra sound "**participatar**" or something like this and we don't want to do this. We want to take the long route. So for example, if you want to work out how to say *to create* in Spanish you want to go through the long way, you want to go through *creation*.

S: **Creación**.

T: And then?

S: **Crear**.

T: Yeah. And that's it, that's the verb in Spanish. **Crear**, *to create*. How is *to experiment*?

S: So it's *experimentation*. **Experimentación**-**experimentar**.

T: Yeah, that's it. **Experimentar**. And this also means *to experience*. *To experiment* and *to experience*, which is a little bit of wisdom that I really like there from Spanish because your experience is like an experiment. If you think that your relationship with experience is scientific, you look what happens and you learn from it, or at least you should. So in Spanish, there is a suggestion of that in the fact that these words are the same, *to experience* and *to experiment* is the same verb, **experimentar**. The nouns are different. *Experience* is **experiencia**, *experiment* is **experimento**. But the verb, the act, is the same verb, **experimentar**. Actually this gives us another nice rule: *experience*, **experiencia**. If we have a word that ends in *-ence* or *-ance*, we can change *-ence* to **-encia** and *-ance* to **-ancia**, and we will get the word in Spanish. *Difference?*

S: **Diferencia.**

T: Good. *Influence:*

S: **Influencia.**

T: Yeah, *Existence:*

S: **Existencia.**

T: Good! *Consistence:*

S: Consi.. Consi... **Consistencia.**

T: Good, *Inconsistence:*

S: **Inconsistencia.**

T: Good, *Incongruence:*

S: **Incongruencia.**

T: Yes.

## Track 6

T: What do you think **intento** might mean? **Quiero** is *I want*, and this *-o* is showing that it's *I*. If you heard **intento**, what do you think it might mean?

S: *Try?*

T: Yeah. How did you know that? Do you know how you knew that?

S: Yeah. I sort of went from *intend*, *I intend to do something*.

T: There is no rule here to convert *intention* to a verb. It's not *-ation* so we can't take off the *-ation* and put *-r*.

S: Yeah.

T: But we have *intention*, we know what is the meaning so we can hear a verb like this and understand what it means. **Intento** means *I try* or *I am trying*. *I try* or *I am trying*. So how would you say *I am trying to publish it*? Again it's something you think "I can't say this in Spanish!"

S: **Intento publicarlo.**

T: Good. **Intento publicarlo.** *I try to publish it* or *I am trying to publish it*. We've got both there.

Good. How would you say *I am trying to administrate it*?

S: **Intento administrarlo.**

T: Good. **Intento administrarlo.** *I am trying to imitate it* or *I am trying to imitate him*. It could mean either.

S: **Intento**, OK, it's *imitation-imitación-imitar*. **Intento imitarlo.**

T: Exactly. Now *h's* in Spanish are completely silent. You must be careful not even to *think* them because they will have a habit of slipping out even if you think it. So it's written, the *h* is written in convertible words for example, like *hospital* (ends in *-al*) but it's not pronounced. You must imagine that it begins with an *o*. So how would you say *hospital*?

S: **Hospital.**

T: See? You thought of the *h* and a little kind of aspiration came there, which is fine, but to get the perfect accent you really want to think in your mind that it begins with *o*.

S: **Hospital.**

T: There you are perfect. **Hospital.** *Horrible:*

S: **Horrible.**

T: Good. And here we have an example of double *r* inside the word. **Horrible, horrible.** If you can't pronounce that you just make **horrible** and it will be perfectly understood: there is no problem there. Good. How would you say *habitual*?

S: **Habitual.**

T: **Habitual.** *Habitually:*

S: **Habitualmente.**

T: **Habitualmente.** The word for *now* in Spanish is **ahora**.

S: **Ahora.**

T: This is spelled *a-h-o-r-a*. *A-h-o-r-a*. **Ahora.**

S: **Ahora.**

T: Good.

S: Is the *h* silent in every...

T: Yeah. Unless it's *c-h* in which case it's like English /ch/. **Ahora** is actually the combination of two words: **a** which means *to* and **hora** which means *hour*. So it's something like "to the hour". So that gives us another couple of words as well, **a** meaning *to* in the sense of direction, to somewhere, and **hora** meaning *hour*. **Ahora**, *now*. So how would you say *I want to cancel it, but I don't want to cancel it now*? We said that the word for *but* is **pero**. So we want to divide it up piece by piece.  
*I want:*

S: **Quiero.**

T: *To cancel it:*

S: **Cancelarlo.**

T: Good. *But:*

S: **Pero.**

T: *I don't want:*

S: **No quiero.**

T: *To cancel it:*

S: **Cancelarlo.**

T: *Now:*

S: **Ahora.**

T: Perfect! So a big sentence which we might imagine that we can't take on; if we divide it up bit by bit we realise that we can think our way through it. The word for *I go* or *I am going* in Spanish is **voy**. S: **Voy.**

T: **Voy.**

S: **Voy.**

T: Good. Now this is actually spelled *v-o-y*. Now the *v* in Spanish can sound like a *v* in English like a /v/ or it can sound like a soft *b* like /boy/. You might be familiar with the word **vamos** which means *let's go*, literally *we are going*, used a lot like *let's go*, **vamos**. Now this is spelled *v-a-m-o-s*. What you probably hear there is a *b*. It really depends where you are: in the southern cone around Argentina and Chile you hear a lot more /v/ kind of pronunciation in many places. Generally in the Spanish-speaking world it's like a soft *b* so we want to make that association now between *v* and soft *b*. To remember this word, **voy**, we can think of a voyage so we can see the connection there between *voyage* and *to go*. *I go* or *I am going*?

S: **Voy.**

T: *I am going now:*

S: **Voy ahora.**

T: **Voy ahora.** *I am not going now:*

S: **No voy ahora.**

T: Good, **No voy ahora.** How do you think you might say *visit* in Spanish?

S: **Visitar?**

T: Yeah. Why did you think that? Was it just a guess?

S: Well, it's *visitation*...

T: *Visitation*, does that exist?

S: I think so, visitation rights?

T: Exactly! Very good! This is it. It's a word that exists that we only use in some context, like visitation rights. **Visitar, visitar**, if you are not comfortable with the soft *b* just pronounce a *v*, it doesn't matter. When you practice Spanish you are going to pick up the accent of who you are speaking to so it's not a fundamental issue of ours right now. So, **visitar.** *I want to visit him:*

S: **Quiero visitarlo.**

T: Good. We can look at some other words now with this *v* sound and experiment a little bit with the sound. So how do you think you would say *visible* in Spanish?

S: **Visible.**

T: Good. There is something very good that you are doing here, you are not pronouncing that *s* as a *z* like in English: *visible*. Many people at home will find themselves doing this, putting that *z* there from English and pronouncing **vi-zi-ble**. We don't want that, we want **visible**. And the *v* is like a soft *b*. If you want more elaboration of what is this soft *b* you can put a small piece of paper in front of your mouth and make the *b* in English like *bucket* and you will see that paper move with that burst of air that comes with *bucket*. That hard *b* in English is a plosive sound, it means you gather up a little bit of air and you shoot it out when you make that *b*, where this *b* doesn't have that, it's a soft one. So you can experiment with that, again like I say we don't want to stress out about sounds, to use a *v* sound is perfectly fine. *Viral:*

S: **Viral.**



T: **Viral.** Good. So if *viral* is **viral** how do you think *virus* might be?

S: **Viro.**

T: **Virus.** It's actually the same word, you are just pronouncing it exactly as it is. **Virus.**

*Convenient:*

S: **Conveniente?**

T: **Conveniente.** Good.

## Track 7

T: How would you say *I want to carry on*? Now you think “*carry on*, I don't know this!” So, one of the skills we want to really make use of these convertible words is to find the Latin equivalent of *carry on*. *I want to carry on, I want to go on, I want to...?* What is the Latin word that we could use here? Nothing comes to mind?

S: Like?

T: So, think of-

S: Ah, *continue*.

T: So you can think of a *-tion* word that has something to do with carrying on?

S: *Continuation*.

T: Exactly, good. So, *I want to continue*:

S: **Quiero continuar.**

T: **Quiero continuar.** *I want to continue it:*

S: **Quiero continuarlo.**

T: Good. *I am trying to continue*:

S: I've already forgotten what *trying* is.

T: So it's not about remembering, it's about knowing how to find it. So there are a few things you could think about, that when we discuss this word, that could lead you back to it, and the important thing is to take that time to have those thoughts rather than just, "Oh, do I know it? Do I not?"

S: **Intención.**

T: **Intención.** There wasn't a rule here because it doesn't finish *-ation*. Our rule was for ones that finish *-ation*, but it was very similar. Do you remember what it is now? *I try*, so it ends in *-o* like-

S: Ah, **intento.**

T: **Intento**, good, so that's *I try*. We want to see first if we can find it... relaxed, not... you know if your brain locks on "Do I remember it or don't I?" Game over. But if you go "Okay, what was that related to, what was that about?" And just see what pops up, then you are much more likely to get it.

So, **Intento**. **Intento** is *I try*. *I try* or *I am trying to continue*:

S: **Intento continuar**.

T: Good. **Intento continuar**. What is **demostración**? **Demostración**:

S: *Demonstration*.

T: *Demonstration*. Do you notice something different though? There's some change here. **Demostración**?

S: There's no *n*.

T: Good. There's no *n*. **Demostración**. So how would you say *to demonstrate*?

S: **Demostrar**.

T: **Demostrar**. Now if you get rid of that *de-*, how would it sound?

S: **Mostrar**.

T: **Mostrar**, and that means *to show*. *To show*. **Mostrar**. So we might think again, **mostrar** has no connection that we can hook on to, but usually when we have a look we can find some connection through English, Latin English, that helps us interiorize. **Mostrar**, *to show*. The word for *something* is **algo**. **Algo**. *A-l-g-o*. **Algo**.

S: **Algo**.

T: **Algo**, good. What was the word for *you*, like in *I love you*, how was *I love you*?

S: **Te quiero**.

T: **Te quiero**, so it was **te**. So how would you say, *I want to show you something*, in this order, *I want to show you something*:

S: **Quiero mostrarte algo**.

T: **Quiero mostrarte algo.** *I want to show you something.* What again was *I go* or *I am going* and it was related to *voyage* we said.

S: **Voy.**

T: The beginning bit of *voyage*, and you're mostly going to hear it pronounced more like a soft *b*.

**Voy. Voy.**

S: **Voy.**

T: Now, just as in English, we say *I am going to...* and we talk about the future. *I am going to continue.* *I am going to eat later.* We can do exactly the same thing in Spanish. The only difference is that even though, for example, if we use *continue* – **continuar** - **continuar** means *to continue*. In Spanish we say **voy a continuar**. It's actually because **voy** is a verb of movement, and when we are putting a "to" form, a verb that is "to" something like **continuar** after a verb of movement, a verb that has some kind of motion in its meaning like **voy**: *I am going*, Spanish wants to show this feeling of motion so you say *I am going to* and you put the *to* for that movement, even if you're not actually moving and you're just using it to speak about the future.

So, if you want to say, for example, *I am going to confiscate it.* *I am going to confiscate it:*

S: **Voy a confiscarlo.**

T: Good. **Voy a confiscarlo.** Very good. How do you say *I am going to examine it?* *I am going to examine it:*

S: **Voy a examinarlo.**

T: Good. **Voy a examinarlo.** Good. Now we said *lo* is *it* or *him*. Now the plural of *him* is *them*. This is not very obvious in English because *him* and *them*, they look very different as words. We don't ever think of *them* as the plural of *him* or of *her* but it is. It's very obvious in Spanish, **lo** means *him* or *it* and if you want to get *them*, if you want to make it plural, what do you think you might do?

S: Just add the *s*? **Los.**

T: **Los.** Good. So now we have the word for *them*. *To see* is **ver, ver**. We have *view* in English, like *view, ver*. So how would you say, *I want to see them*?

S: **Quiero a verlos?**

T: Why **a** here?

S: **Quiero verlos.**

T: **Quiero verlos.** So, **ver** is *to see*. If you say *I am going to see them*, how is it going to be?

S: **Voy a verlos.**

T: Good. **Voy a verlos.** But if you say, *I want to see them*?

S: **Quiero verlos.**

T: And if you say *I am trying to see them*?

S: **Intento verlos.**

T: Good. No **a**. **Intento verlos.** Because **ver** is *to see*. *To try*, so *trying* in its "to" form, *to try* is **intentar. Intentar.** This is *to try*. So how would you say *I want to try*?

S: **Quiero intentar.**

T: Good. *I am going to try*:

S: **Voy a intentar.**

T: Good. With **a**. **Voy a intentar.** *I am going to try to see them? I am going to try to see them:*

S: **Voy a intentar a verlos.** No, **verlos.**

T: Very good.

S: **Voy intentar-**

T: Slower.

S: **Voy a intentar verlos.**

T: Good. **Voy a intentar verlos.** Good. Let me give you another example of a verb that connects with this **a**, so **voy** isn't isolated, we can understand the concept better if we see another verb of movement. So another verb of movement is **pasar**. What do you think **pasar** means?

S: Is it *to pass*?

T: Yes, **pasar** is *to pass* and *to pass by*, so *I'm going to pass by to visit you. I'm going to pass by to visit you.* How would we say this? The first bit is *I am going*.

S: **Voy.**

T: Good. *I am going to pass by:*

S: **A pasar.**

T: Good. *To visit you:*

S: **Visitarlo, visitarte.**

T: Well actually **lo**, other than *him* and *it*, can also mean formal *you*, so if you're speaking formally, you can use this **lo** as well. But I want to go back to **pasar**. **Pasar** is a verb of movement. Let's take the sentence again from the beginning. The whole sentence is *I'm going to pass by to visit you.*

S: **Voy a.** So it's **voy a pasar a visitarlo.**

T: Good, **lo** if you are speaking formally or **te** if you are speaking informally. **Voy a pasar a visitarte. Voy a pasar a visitarlo.** Which would mean *him, it* or *you* (formal). How would you say *formal*, by the way, in Spanish?

S: **Formal.**

T: And *formally*:

S: **Formalmente.**

T: Very good. Now, if you want to say, *I am going to try to pass by to visit you* we have to think which ones we are going to use this **a** with and which ones not, which is a great exercise for us to internalise this rule. So, *I am going to try*:

S: **Voy a intentar.**

T: *To pass by:*

S: **A, no. Voy a intentar pasar.**

T: *To visit you:*

S: **A visitarte.**

T: Very good. So we learned that rule. **Voy a intentar pasar a visitarte.** There's not many times that we have something between the verbs so there's not going to be a lot of rules like this, don't worry, but this one's important because there are many important verbs of motion that we will be putting this **a** after. How was *to demonstrate* again?

S: **Demonstrar.**

T: And what happened to that *n*?

S: **Demostrar.**

T: **Demostrar.** And what is *to show*? You get rid of-

S: **Mostrar.**

T: Good. **Mostrar.** And the word for *something* I mentioned was **algo, algo.**

S: **Algo.**

T: *Something. I want to show you something.* Let's speak informally. *I want to show you something.*

So we're going to use **te.**

S: **Quiero mostrarte algo.**

T: Good. *I want to show you something.* **Quiero mostrarte algo.** So maybe you call somebody and you say *where are you? I'm at home. I want to pass by to show you something. I want to pass by to show you something:*

S: **Quiero pasar a** - what was it?

T: *To show you something.*

S: **Mostrarte algo.**

T: Good. **Quiero pasar a**, because we had the verb of movement, **mostrarte algo**. So if we are connecting a verb of movement to another verb we connect using this extra **a**, *to*. **Quiero pasar a mostrarte algo**. Good.



## Track 8

T: What was again the word then for *it* or for *him* or for *you* (formal)?

S: **Lo.**

T: **Lo.** If we make this feminine, so we change the *o* to an *a*, and we're going to see other examples of this way of making something feminine in Spanish, we get **la**. And this means *her, it* (a feminine thing), so objects as well. Well, not objects. Objects don't have gender. When people speak about languages that have gender, they tend to think that the object has the gender. But it's not the object, it's the word.

You might have two words for the same object, and one might be masculine and one might be feminine. So it's the word. A feminine word for example usually are ones that end in *a*. So like **casa, casa**, house. If you want to say *I want to see it*, and with this *it* you mean the house. What do you think you will say? *I want to see it*:

S: **Quiero verla.**

T: Good. **Quiero verla.** Now what else could that sentence mean, other than *I want to see it* (the feminine thing)? what else could it mean?

S: Oh. It could also mean *I want to see her*.

T: Yes, exactly. So we get quite a few meanings just with this little **lo** and adding an *s* to it or changing the *o* to an *a*. We actually get a lot of options. **La** could mean *her*, and it also could mean *you* (formal) talking to a female. So you could be saying *I want to see you*, formally. Now, where you use the formal language and the informal language really, really depends on the dialect. So the safe way is to go in with the formal and to see what happens and to see how people address you and see how people address each other in this context, and you can adjust accordingly. For example, in Spain, when you meet somebody, when you're going to a shop, when you meet somebody for the first time - with the exception of kind of young peers - the common thing is to begin speaking formally. If I compare this to Buenos Aires, for example, in Argentina, it's almost never used, this formal way of addressing people. In fact, it's used more often to insult somebody with an extra

layer of sarcasm or irony, than say, than it's actually used sincerely to be formal. So it really depends on the place. You want to go and see.

But to play safe, you can use the formal, which will be **lo** or **la**, speaking to a male or to a female.

**Lo** and **la** instead of **te**.

**Quiere** means *he wants, she wants, it wants* or *you (formal) want*. We can see that these four, they band together. Not just in words like **lo** and **la**, but in the verbs as well. We saw it with **es**, that **es** means *it is, she is, he is, you (formal) are*. So they will band together. **Quiere** means *he wants, she wants, it wants, you (formal) want*. So, how would you say *you want to visit me*?

S: **Quiere visitarme.**

T: Good. **Quiere visitarme.** *You want to visit me.* Now if you want to make that a question, in English, you put *do, do you want?* But in Spanish, you won't do anything like that. In Spanish, you will just make it sound like a question with your voice. So, how would you say *Do you want to visit me?*:

S: ¿**Quiere visitarme?**

T: Good. ¿**Quiere visitarme?** How would you say *You don't want to visit me?*

S: **No quiere visitarme.**

T: You sounded very sad when you said that. **No quiere visitarme.** Now if you want to say *Don't you want to visit me?* Again, English gets really complicated there. But not Spanish. So, *don't you want to visit me?*:

S: ¿**No quiere visitarme?**

T: Good. ¿**No quiere visitarme?** You could add the word for *why*. The word for *why* is **por qué**. **Por qué.**

S: **Por qué.**

T: It's actually the word for because as well. So *why don't you want to visit me?*:

S: ¿**Por qué no quiere visitarme?**

T: Good. **¿Por qué no quiere visitarme?** The verb for *to come* is **venir**.

S: **Venir.**

T: So of course you could hear /v/, like I just pronounced for you, so you would get the spelling **venir**.

But more commonly you would hear /benir/, /benir/, like a soft *b*. Firstly, let's say, *do you want to come?*:

S: **¿Quiere venir?**

T: Good. **¿Quiere venir?** And a nice way to remember **venir**, actually, is **conveniente**, *convenient*, "with coming", when things come together. Or if you ever heard *welcome* in Spanish, you might have heard **bienvenido** or **bienvenida**, **bienvenidos**, **bienvenidas**. Literally the same as *welcome*. *Well* is **bien**, and *come*, there we have **venidos**, a different version of **venir**. So **venir**, *to come*. If you want to say *the house*, it's **la casa**.

S: **La casa.**

T: What was *to*?

S: **A.**

T: What is *to the house*?

S: **A la casa.**

T: Good. *Do you want to come to the house?*:

S: **¿Quiere venir a la casa?**

T: Good. How'd you say *Do you want to come to visit me? Do you want to come to visit me?*:

S: **¿Quiere venir a visitarme?**

T: Good. *Don't you want to come to visit me?*:

S: **¿No quiere venir a visitarme?**

T: Good. **¿No quiere venir a visitarme?** What was the word for *why*?

S: **Por qué.**

T: Good. *Why don't you want to come to visit me?:*

S: **¿Por qué no quiere venir a visitarme?**

T: Very good. **¿Por qué no quiere venir a visitarme?** Good. And of course, here we're using **a** because we have **venir**. A verb of coming and going, like **voy, voy a, venir a**, when we're connecting to a "to" form. The word for *I owe, I owe* in Spanish is **debo. Debo.**

S: **Debo.**

T: **Debo.** The English word *debt* which is spelled *d-e-b-t* has this *b* from **debo**. It comes from there. We don't pronounce it in English, of course. But this word is from Latin and **debo** is *I owe*. The useful thing about *I owe* is that you can use it like *I must*. So if you want to say *I must continue*, you say *I owe to continue. I owe to continue*. And that's the meaning of *I must continue*. So how would you say that: *I must continue?*

S: **Debo continuar.**

T: Good. How would you say *I must identify it?*

S: **Debo- identify. Identification.**

T: Good.

S: **Identificación.**

T: Very good.

S: **Identificar.**

T: Very good.

S: So it's **debo identificarlo.**

T: Good. **Debo identificarlo.** *I must or I owe to identify them. I must identify them:*

S: **Debo identificarlos.**

T: Good. **Debo identificarlos.** Or if they were feminine things, what change do you think you would see?

S: **Las.**

T: Good.

S: **Debo identificarlas.**

T: Good.

## Track 9

T: *To know* in Spanish is **saber**. **Saber**.

S: **Saber**.

T: **Saber**. You may have heard in British slang *He's got savvy, she's got savvy*. Have you ever heard that?

S: Yeah.

T: And that comes from Latin actually. That slang is coming from Latin. **Saber** is *to know*. He's got **saber**. He's got *savvy*. **Saber** is spelt with a *b*, but in English we're saying *savvy* with a */v/*. So we're seeing even that connection between the sounds of *v* and *b* crossing between English and Spanish. **Saber**, *savvy*. So **saber** is *to know*. So if you want to say *I want to know*?

S: **Quiero saber**.

T: How would you say *I don't want to know*?

S: **No quiero saber**.

T: Good. How would you say *he wants to know* or *she wants to know* or *you* (formal) *want to know*?

S: **Quiere saber**.

T: Good. You change the *-o* to *-e*. And you get **quiere**. **Quiere saber**. *He doesn't want to know*:

S: **No quiere saber**.

T: *Why doesn't he want to know?*:

S: **¿Por qué no quiere saber?**

T: *I want to know why he doesn't want to know*:

S: **Quiero saber por qué no quiere saber**.

T: Very good. **Quiero saber por qué no quiere saber**. Very good. The word for *yes* in Spanish is **sí**.

S: **Sí**.

T: This is also the word for *if*. So how do you say *if*?

S: **Si.**

T: Good. *I want to know if you want to know*. Of course we're speaking formally. This is the one we've learned so far. *I want to know if you want to know*:

S: **Quiero saber si quiere saber.**

T: Good. **Quiero saber si quiere saber.** *I want to know if he wants to invite me*. So the first bit is *I want to know*:

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: **Saber**, *b* sound 'cause it's a *b* here.

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: *If*:

S: **Si.**

T: *He wants to invite me*:

S: **Quiere invitarme.**

T: So you see if you think about it block by block, it's very simple. If we think slowly, we learn very quickly and the process gets much faster. How do you say *imagination*?

S: **Imaginación.**

T: Good. *I don't want to imagine. I don't want to imagine it*:

S: **No quiero imaginarlo.**

T: Good. And what was *to come*? And we said that we could remember it if we look at *convenient*, **conveniente**, which is like “with coming”.

S: **Venir.**

T: **Venir.** Good. *I want to know if she wants to come to the house to visit me. I want to know if she wants to come to the house to visit me.* So again it might be something that looks overwhelming that we can't say. But if we divide it up: *I want to know:*

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: *If:*

S: **Si.**

T: *She wants to come:*

S: **Quiere venir.**

T: Good. *To the house:*

S: **A la casa.**

T: Good. *To visit me:*

S: **A visitarme.**

T: Good! You put **a** there. Because even though we have **a la casa**, there in between, you stayed with the feeling of **venir** and you wanted to connect it to the next verb. And you are 100% correct to do that. *I want to know why she doesn't want to come to the house to visit me. I want to know why she doesn't want to come to the house to visit me. I want to know:*

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: **SaBer.**

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: *Why:*

S: **Por qué.**

T: *She doesn't want:*

S: **No quiere.**

T: *To come to the house:*



S: **Venir a la casa.**

T: *To visit me:*

S: **A visitarme.**

T: Good. Very good. Well done. **Quiero saber por qué no quiere venir a la casa a visitarme.** Very good. So what we most want to take away from this is the confidence to try to say what we are almost sure we cannot say. Because we have this wonderful advantage as English speakers, that we have so much vocabulary that we can convert over to Spanish that we won't realize we can convert over to Spanish until we try it. I'll just give you now a couple of sentences for listening practice. What does it mean if I say **Voy a invitarlo, pero no voy a invitarlo ahora?**

What did I say? First bit is **Voy a invitarlo:**

S: *I'm going to invite them.*

T: **Lo.**

S: Oh, *you.* Oh.

T: It could be *you.* *You* formal.

S: *You* formal or *him.*

T: Yeah. **Voy a invitarlo.**

S: Or *it?*

T: Or *it* if it can make some sense. *I'm going to invite it.* **Voy a invitarlo, pero.** What is **pero?**

S: *But.*

T: *But.* **No voy a invitarlo ahora:**

S: *But I won't invite him now.*

T: Very good. **Quiero iniciarlo ahora. Quiero iniciarlo ahora:**

S: *I want to start now.*

T: Good. And something missing though. **Quiero iniciarlo ahora:**

S: Ah. *I want to start it now.*

T: Good. **Quiere iniciarlo ahora. Quiere iniciarlo ahora:**

S: *You want or he wants.*

T: Good. Or *she.*

S: Or *she wants.*

T: **¿Por qué no quiere informarme? Por qué no quiere informarme?:**

S: *Why doesn't he want to let me know? To inform me?*

T: Yeah. Perfect. But this is perfect what you did. You found the meaning, but you said it how it's comfortable for you in English. Exactly. *Why doesn't he want to inform me? Why doesn't he want to let me know?* Perfect. How is *justification* in Spanish?

S: Is it a /kh/ sound?

T: Good, yes. If it's /j/.

S: So it's **justificación**?

T: **Justificación.** *To justify:*

S: **Justificar.**

T: **Justificar.** *I'm not trying to justify myself. I'm not trying to justify myself.* What is *myself* in Spanish?

S: **Me.**

T: Yes. Same as *me.* Same as *me.* So, *I'm not trying:*

S: **No intento justificarlo.** No. **Justificarme.**

T: Good. **No intento justificarme.** *But I want to explain.* Now *explain* is an exception. We have *explanation* in English. But this in Spanish is **explicación**. It changes, so it's an exception. We don't say **explanación**, but **explicación**. We have this in English as well. We have in English *inexplicable*. How do you say that in Spanish?

S: **Inexplicable.**

T: Yes. We have it in English this root of the *c* sound with *explain*. We say *explain*, but then we say *inexplicable*. So *explanation* is **explicación** in Spanish. So how is to *explain*?

S: **Explicar.**

T: **Explicar.** So *but I want to explain*:

S: **Pero quiero explicar.**

T: Good. Do you remember how to say *something*?

S: **Algo.**

T: **Algo.** Well done. *But I want to explain you something*. In English maybe it's more common we would say *I want to explain something to you*. But in Spanish we can just say *But I want to explain you something*. And let's say it informally. So what was the word for *you*, for informal? We can remember it from *I love you*.

S: **Te.**

T: Yes. **Te. Te quiero.** So *but I want to explain you something*.

S: **Pero quiero explicarte algo.**

T: Very good. **Pero quiero explicarte algo.** Let's say it all together. *I'm not trying to justify myself, but I want to explain something to you*. So *I'm not trying* is the first bit. Now I want 100% of your mental energy on *I'm not trying*. All of your attention on *I'm not trying* then we look at the next bit and we forget *I'm not trying*. Once we've said it, we don't need to hold it. *I'm not trying*:

S: **No intento.**

T: *To justify myself*:

S: **Justificarme.**

T: Good. We can forget that bit. *But*:

S: **Pero.**

T: *I want:*

S: **Quiero.**

T: *To explain you:*

S: **Explicarte.**

T: *Something:*

S: **Algo.**

T: Very good. **No intento justificarme, pero quiero explicarte algo.** Very good. Well done.

## Track 10

T: How would you say *to ventilate*?

S: **Ventilar.**

T: Yeah. **Ventilación-ventilar.** How would you say *to separate*?

S: **Separar.**

T: Good. **Separar.** So in English what we pronounce as *separate*, maybe like an *e* sound, but if you look at how it's written, it's an *a*. **Separar.** Good. So how was *to know*, something to do with *savvy*?

S: **Saber.**

T: **SaBer.**

S: **Saber.**

T: With a *b*.

T: Another way to remember this is *Homo sapien*, there's that connection there. The *Homo sapien* is the *wise creature*. Supposedly. And how was *to come*? *Convenient*?

S: **Venir.**

T: **Venir.** Good. So we can remember that *convenient* is “with coming”, when things come together, they are convenient. We've seen the “to” forms of the verb end in *r* and the “I” forms most of the time end in *o*. For example, *I want*, how was that?

S: **Quiero.**

T: **Quiero.** *I owe*? Which we can use like *must*:

S: **Debo.**

T: **Debo.** *I try*:

S: **Intento.**

T: **Intento.** Unless the verb is irregular, and we know some irregular verbs already. We saw *I am going*.

S: **Voy.**

T: **Voy.** So that doesn't end in *o*, or in */o/*. **Voy.** It's an irregular verb. So how does this work? Now all "to" verbs, all verbs in the "to" form, when we say *to go*, *to want*, *to segregate*, how would you say *to segregate*?

S: *Segregation-segregación-segregar.*

T: There you are. All of them in the "to" form end in the letter *r*. They either end in *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. We have an example of each. We have like a thousand examples of the ones that end in *-ar* because this is the one that we're using to build these from, for example, *simulation-simulación-similar. Revelation-revelación-revelar. Respiration-respiración-respirar.* What do you think **respirar** means?

S: *To breathe.*

T: Yes. To breathe. So we could say *to respire* literally and we go, oh of course, this would be how I would say breathe in Spanish. **Respirar.** Good. So we have many examples of *-ar* verbs. We have one example of an *-er* verb, in its "to" form, which is *to know*. How was that? *To know:*

S: **Saber.**

T: **Saber.** And we have the example of the verb ending *-ir*, *ir*, which is *to come*.

S: **Venir.**

T: **Venir.** Good. So all "to" forms are going to end in an *r*. And it's either going to be *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. *a-r*, *e-r*, *i-r*. In fact, and talking about "to" forms, it's actually with this "to" that we identify what is a verb. Now it's good to talk about this because at school we learn that verbs are doing words, which is really kind of unhelpful, because *to be* for example is, there's nothing, you're not doing anything. If you say *is*, *he is here*, what is he doing? But *is* is a verb. *Is* is a verb because it comes from *to be*. We don't say *He be here*. We say *He is here*. So the way we identify what is a verb, is that you can put *to* in front of it. *To be*, *to stay*, *to go*. These are verbs. And in Spanish, these are going to end in *r*. Either *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. Now the way we get the "I" version, is we take off this

ending, we chop off this *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir* and we put *-o*. We have an example already. We know how is *to try*. What was *to try*?

S: **Intentar.**

T: **Intentar.** Good. And *I try*:

S: **Intento.**

T: **Intento.** Good. So we take off *-ar* and we put on *-o*. But something else is happening as well.

**Intentar. Intento.**

S: The accent.

T: Good. The accent. **Intentar**, we have the accent on the end. When we put the *-o*, the accent is just before it. **IntENTo**. Now this is extremely important. If I say **intentO**, if I put the accent on the end, it means something else. It means *he tried*. Which is going to be useful for us later when we learn the past. For now, we need to think that the accent in the present tense is going on the penultimate syllable. The second to last syllable. **Intentar** is not present tense. It has no tense. It's the "to" form. *To try*. Part of the present tense, other than putting this *-o* for *I*, is also moving the accent: **intento**. How would you say *to donate*?

S: *Donation*-**donación-donar**.

T: Good. **Donar**. *I donate*. You take off the *-ar* and you put *-o*.

S: **Dono.**

T: Yes. **Dono**. *I don't donate* or *I'm not donating*:

S: **No dono.**

T: Good. **No dono**. How was *to create*?

S: **Crear.**

T: Good. **Crear-creación-crear**. *I create*:

S: **Creo.**

T: **Creo.** Good. **Comer, comer** means *to eat*. So how do you say *I eat* or *I'm eating*?

S: **Como.**

T: **Como.** Good. *I'm going to eat*:

S: **Voy a comer.**

T: Good. **Voy a comer.** The word for *late* in Spanish is **tarde. Tarde.** We know this from English as well because we have this slang in English, in British English at least, *tardy*. Have you ever heard that?

S: Yes.

T: **Tarde. Tarde.** So how would you say *I'm going to eat late*?

S: **Voy a comer tarde.**

T: Good. **Voy a comer tarde.** You might have heard the word for *tomorrow* as well in Spanish.

**Mañana.** So how would you say *I'm going to eat tomorrow*?

S: **Voy a comer mañana.**

T: **Voy a comer mañana.** Now in Spanish, if you have some kind of future context, something that's showing you that you're talking about the future, you can just use the present. You can say **Voy a comer mañana** or you could just say *I eat tomorrow* because you have *tomorrow* showing you that you're talking about the future. It's absolutely perfect Spanish, even though it sounds a bit odd in English. It's perfect Spanish to say *I eat tomorrow*. There's no problem there. So how would you say that?

S: **Como mañana.**

T: **Como mañana.** So if you want to say *I'm eating with Pablo tomorrow. I'm eating with Pablo tomorrow.* You just say *I eat with Pablo tomorrow.*

S: How do you say *with*?

T: Do you remember how to say *to confirm*?

S: **Confirmación-confirmar.**



T: Good. And what did that mean literally? *Confirm?*

S: Ah! “With signature”.

T: So what is *with?*

S: **Con firma. Con.**

T: **Con.** Good. So, *I’m eating with Pablo tomorrow:*

S: **Como con Pablo mañana.**

T: Good. **Como con Pablo mañana.** So we can just use the present or we can say *I’m going to eat with Pablo tomorrow* and it’s the same.

S: **Voy a comer con Pablo mañana.**

T: Good. **Voy a comer con Pablo mañana.** Very good. So we are taking off our ending. We’re taking off our *-ar, -er* or *-ir* and we’re adding *-o* to get the “I” version. We are also accenting the penultimate syllable. The syllable that comes before the last. What is *to organize?*

S: **Organización-Organizar.**

T: Good. Now how do you say *I organize* or *I’m organizing?*

S: **Organizo?**

T: **Organizo.** Good. I will just mention for anybody trying to keep up with the Spanish pronunciation that that *z* there is going to be pronounced /th/. /Organitho/ in Spain. **Organizo.** *To have* in Spanish is **tener. Tener.**

S: **Tener.**

T: **Tener.** How do you say *I want to have it? I want to have it:*

S: **Quiero tenerlo.**

T: Good. *I’m going to have it:*

S: **Voy a tenerlo.**

T: Good. *I’m going to have it late:*

S: **Voy a tenerlo tarde.**

T: Good! **Voy a tenerlo tarde.** If you want to say *later*, you can say *more late* and the word for *more* is **más**, *m-a-s*.

S: **Más.**

T: Related to *massive*. So how is *later*?

S: **Más tarde.**

T: **Más tarde.** Good. *I'm going to have it later:*

S: **Voy a tenerlo mas tarde.**

T: Good. I will tell you something that's going to help you remember **tener**. **Tener** is a very interesting verb, because other than *to have*, we can also translate it as *-tain*. *Contain* is **contener**. *Obtain*, this *-tain* is **tener**. So how would you say *obtain* in Spanish, if *contain* becomes **contener**?

S: **Obtener.**

T: Yes! **Obtener.** *Sustain*, this one changes a little bit. *Sus-*, which is *s-u-s*, becomes *s-o-s* in Spanish.

S: **Sostener.**

T: **Sostener.** *Sustain. Maintain. Maintain*, this *main* becomes **man-** in Spanish. So how would you say *maintain*?

S: **Mantener.**

T: **Mantener.** And if you heard **entretener**, what would you think it means? **Entretener:**

S: *Entertain.*

T: Yes. So it changes a little bit, but you can recognize it. **Entretener.** And **entre** in Spanish means *between*. You might hear in Spanish **entre tu y yo**. *Between you and I. Entre tu y yo.* Many languages express this idea of possession in different ways. In English and in Spanish, we have a simple verb: *Have*, **tener**, to express possession. But Arabic for example, you would say "at me" or "with me" instead of "I have." So it's not a straightforward concept that all languages express in the same way, this concept of possession. In Turkish, for example, if you want to say "I have a

car” you say “My car there is.” So it’s not such a straightforward concept that we are expressing in all languages in the same way, this concept of possession. Something that Spanish is alluding to here is kind of the symbiotic relationship in ownership. When you own something, you also belong to it. You must maintain it. You must sustain it. You must contain it. It’s a symbiotic relationship. You don’t just own things. You are also owned by them. *To have* is **tener**. And you also get these other verbs that you can use. **Obtener, contener, mantener, sostener, entretener.**

*I have* is **tengo**. What happened here? What should it be?

S: **Teno.**

T: Yes. That’s what it should be. But it’s irregular. It has a *g* popping up. But the nice thing about the irregular verbs in Spanish is that we can group them together. There’s always a little group of verbs that do things in the same way. For example, what was *to come*?

S: **Venir.**

T: **Venir.** Very good. Now **venir** behaves like **tener** when it makes the I form. So if **tener** becomes **tengo**, **venir** might become...

S: **Vengo.**

T: **Vengo!** Good. So *I come* is **vengo**. It’s irregular. But we’ve already noticed two verbs that have this same pattern of irregularity. And to think of them together helps us. Now if you want to say *I will come tomorrow*, we don’t know the word for *will*, but we don’t need it. Because *tomorrow* is our future context. What is the word for *tomorrow*?

S: **Mañana.**

T: Good. So *I’m coming tomorrow*:

S: **Vengo mañana.**

T: **Vengo mañana.** Very good.

## Track 11

T: So we saw how our “to” form of the verb: *to come, to eat, to tolerate*. How would *to tolerate* be?

S: **Toleración-tolerar.**

T: Exactly, **tolerar**. Good. So our “to” form ends with an *r* and it's always going to be *-ar, -er* or *-ir*. And we had an example of each. And we notice that for *-ar, -ir* and *-er* verbs, unless the verb is irregular, we will take off that ending and put on an *-o* to get the “I” version, to say *I tolerate* for example. So how would you say *I tolerate*?

S: **Tolero?**

T: Good. And you moved the accent back as well, which is essential for the present tense. Very good. If you said **toleró**, it would mean *he tolerated*, which as I mentioned, will be useful for us later when we learn this tense. But it's important in the present tense to have the accent on the penultimate syllable. **Tolero**. What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer.**

T: And what is *I eat*?

S: **Comero.**

T: So you don't add on the *o*, you take off the ending – and then you put:

S: Oh yes, **como**.

T: **Como**. Good. This also means *how* or *like*, by coincidence. You might have heard **cómo estás?** - *How are you?* But **como** is also *I eat*. So for all verbs, we take off the ending and we add *-o* and we get the “I” version. But for the rest of the versions, for *he, she, it, you* (formal), for *we*, etc., the verbs split into two groups. Although we have three different endings, we have two groups. Now most verbs in Spanish are *-ar* verbs. This is the biggest group. The group of *-ar* verbs, the verbs that end *-ar*. In fact any new verb that comes into Spanish will become, will be crowned, as an *-ar* verb. So to give you some examples - **tuítear**. What do you think that means?

S: *To Twitter.*

T: *To tweet*, yes, **tuitear**. **Facebookear**, yes this exists. **Googlear**.

S: Excellent.

T: So there is something in the mental lexicon, in the mental dictionary that is saying there can be no more *-er/-ir* verbs. These are a historic group, the door is closed. So we have two groups. So for *-ar*, *-er*, *-ir*, if the verb is regular we take off the ending *-ar*, *-er*, *-ir*, and we put *-o* and we get the “I” version. Now for the others, the other versions, there's a slight difference between *-ar* verbs and *-er/-ir* verbs. Now *-ar* verbs have the vowel /ah/ as a principle sound, as a sound that keeps popping up. So, for example, *to eliminate*. How is *to eliminate*?

S: **Elimination-eliminación-eliminar**.

T: Good. **Eliminar**. So if you want to say *I eliminate* or *I delete*, how would it be? Think syllable by syllable. If you think of it all together it's quite confusing here because you have quite a few vowels.

S: **Elimino**?

T: Good. You see when you take your time to divide actually the word piece by piece, it's much more digestible. **Elimino**. Good. Now for *he*, *she*, *it* and *you* (formal) - we have learned that these group together in Spanish - we just use an *a* on the ending. So how would that be? *He deletes* or *eliminates*, *she/he/you* (formal).

S: **Elimina**.

T: Good. And we still have the accent on the penultimate syllable, **elimina**. Very good. How do you think you would say *to last* like “it lasts a long time” or something like this? It's not obvious through the word *last*, but maybe we find something through Latin that helps us work out how to say that: “a period of time”, sometimes we call it *duration*, no?

S: Yes.

T: So how would that be in Spanish?

S: **Duración**.

T: So *to last* might actually come from this. If it did, how would it sound?

S: **Durar**.

T: Yes. And this is the verb, **durar**. *A lot is much* in Spanish; it's **mucho**. So if you want to say *it lasts a long time* you can just say *it lasts much*.

S: **Durar mucho.**

T: This is *to last*, **durar**. So how would *it lasts* be? So...

S: **Dura mucho.**

T: So you might be talking about a show or movie. How would you say *it doesn't last a long time*?

S: **No dura mucho.**

T: Good. **No dura mucho**. How do you say *exaggeration*? Exa/juh-juh/, *exaggeration*?

S: **Exageración.**

T: **Exageración.** *To exaggerate:*

S: **Exagerar.**

T: Yeah. So how would you say *I exaggerate*?

S: **Exagero.**

T: *He's exaggerating*, or *she's exaggerating* or *you-*

S: **Exagera.**

T: Good. **Exagera.** *He's not exaggerating, she's not exaggerating, you (formal) are not exaggerating:*

S: **No exagera.**

T: Good. **No exagera.** Good. Did you ever hear the word *mastication* in English?

S: **Masticación.**

T: Did you ever hear it though?

S: Yes.

T: I didn't. I mean this is a word-

S: It's *chewing*.

T: Yes. So how do you think *to chew* would be?

S: **Masticar.**

T: **Masticar** is *to chew*. Now I didn't know this word actually and this will happen to many English speakers as well. You will be able to work out many English words that you didn't know before through Spanish. So this was the way round it worked for me. Because I found **masticar** first, and then I saw in English somewhere *mastication*. So it can work that way round as well which is useful. Another example is **morder**, which means *to bite*. I learned this in Spanish, and then I saw in some novel I was reading, *mordent*. Oh ok that means *biting*. You can increase your English vocabulary and what you understand in English just through the Latin that you learn in Spanish. So if **masticar** is to chew, how would you say *I chew*?

S: **Mastico.**

T: **Mastico.** Good. And *he chews* or *she chews*, *it chews*, *you* (formal) *chew*?

S: **Mastica.**

T: **Mastica.** Good. Now this is our key sound, this /a/ sound. Now we can add on different sounds to this /a/ to get other versions. So for example, if we add on an *n* to this /a/, we get *they* and we get *you* (plural). So in English like *you guys*, *you all*. So how would you say *collaboration*?

S: **Colaboración.**

T: **Colaboración.** *To collaborate:*

S: **Colaborar.**

T: Good. *I collaborate:*

S: **Colaboro.**

T: Good. **Colaboro.** *He/she/it/you* (formal):

S: **Colabora.**

T: **Colabora.** You can add on to this an *n* and you get *they* or *you* (plural). So how would it be?

S: **Colaboran.**

T: **Colaboran.** Good. **Hablar** is *to speak* in Spanish. **Hablar.** It's spelled *h-a-b-l-a-r*. What's happening with that *h*?

S: It's silent.

T: Totally silent. **Hablar.** How do you say *I speak*?

S: **Hablo.**

T: So **hablo** is *I speak* or *I am speaking*. **Habla** is-

S: *He/she/it* or the formal.

T: Good. *You* formal. So what would it mean if I said **no hablan con Pablo**?

S: *They're not speaking with Pablo.*

T: Good. *They're not speaking with Pablo* or *they don't speak with Pablo*. Good. How would you say *I want to speak*?

S: **Quiero hablar.**

T: How would you say *I'm going to speak*? Think of to go on a voyage.

S: Ah, **voy.**

T: Good.

S: Yes. **Voy hablar.**

T: Now I'm not sure, because **hablar** starts with */a/*, I'm not sure if you put the **a** to connect them.

Did you?

S: Oh, no I didn't. **Voy a hablar.**

T: And when you speak quickly, it will kind of blend together. **Voy a hablar.** Maybe it's a fraction longer, **voy a hablar**, but it will stick together like this. Good. Now, if we go back to this *he/she/it* form, **habla**, and we add an *s*, we get the *you* (informal).

S: **Hablas.**



T: So this is speaking to one person informally. **Hablas**. When we have one of these little words: **te, me, lo, los, la, las**, they will come before the changed verb. So the changed verb is the one that isn't ending in *r* anymore. They will come before this verb. So if we have **quiero**, *I want*, and we want to say *I want it*, that *it* must come before the verb. So how would it be?

S: **Lo quiero.**

T: But that little word can also go after the complete verb. If we say something like *I want to see it*, we end up actually having an option where we put that *it*. But it doesn't matter; there's no change in meaning. It's exactly the same, you just have the option.

So what was *to see*, which was related to English *view*?

S: **Ver?**

T: So if you want to say *I want to see it* or *I want to see him*?

S: So it's **quiero verlo**.

T: **Quiero verlo.**

S: Or **lo quiero ver**.

T: Yeah you have the option. **Lo quiero ver**. But if you have one changed verb all by itself, you don't have the option; it must go before. You might say *it's important to speak about it*. Now you don't need to say *about* in Spanish, we're going to say *to speak it* and that's understood *to speak about it*. So here, in that clause and that bit, *to speak about it* is only *to speak*. So how would you say *it's important to speak about it* or literally, *it's important to speak it*?

S: **Es importante hablarlo.**

T: Good. So how was *I must* or *I owe*, which is related to the English word *debt*?

S: **Debo.**

T: So *I must invite him*:

S: **Debo invitarlo.**

T: Or?

**S: Lo debo invitar.**

T: Good. So that's the deal with these little words, where we can put them. Good.

## Track 12

T: So, we're looking at *-ar* verbs and how they work, and we are changing them for the different people. Let's make a recap. How would you say *to contaminate*?

S: **Contaminar.**

T: Good. So how would you say *it's contaminating*?

S: **Contamina.**

T: Good. So our key vowel for *-ar* verbs is /a/. That's our key vowel. We add a *n* to get *you guys* or *they contaminate*. So how would that be?

S: **Contaminan.**

T: And we add an *s* to the *he/she/it* form to get the *you* (informal). So *you* (informal) *contaminate* would be:

S: **Contaminas.**

T: Now for *-er/-ir* verbs, for *-er/-ir* verbs, their key sound is /e/. For this closed group of historic verbs, their key sound is /e/. So, what do you think **vender** means? **Vender**. What do you think that means?

S: Does it have anything to do with *vent* and *ventilation*?

T: No it's not a *t*, it's a *d*.

S: Oh *vending*. *Vending machine*?

T: Yeah. Good. So what does it mean then, **vender**? What does a vending machine do? It's a selling machine. Or you might have heard *street vender* as well. So *I sell* or *I'm selling*:

S: **Vendo.**

T: *I'm selling it*:

S: **Lo vendo?**

T: Good. Is there anywhere else you can put that **lo**? Do you have the option here?

S: Well, we can put it at the end if it's in its **vender** state.

T: Exactly. So no, we can't put it anywhere else. It has to go there. **Lo vendo**. How would you say *I'm selling them*?

S: **Lo vendas**.

T: It's very important when you're making-

S: **Véndolo. Las**. Oh. Sorry.

T: It's very important when you're building the sentence that you take your time to understand who's doing what. Ah? So *I sell*, it's me doing the selling. So *I'm selling them*, the first bit you want to work out is *I'm selling*. What's that?

S: **Vendo**.

T: Good. And then you want to work out *them*. *I sell* is **vendo**. *I sell them* is?

S: **Los vendo**.

T: **Los vendo**. Good. So this process of dividing it into two thoughts, just doing that is going to make sure that you don't kind of get this salad. Many times, you will just switch them, and you want to say *she has them* but you will say *they have her*. You know, so it's very important to take your time to think about those bits separately. If you're talking about feminine things like *I sell the houses*, how would it be? So it's still *them* we're going to say, but we mean feminine things. *I sell them*:

S: **Las vendo**.

T: Very good. **Las vendo**. If you want to say actually *I sell* or *I am selling the houses*, the word for *the*, we said was **la**. **La casa** also becomes plural.

S: **Las**.

T: Yes. And the word **casa** also becomes plural.

S: **Casas**.

T: So *I am selling the houses*:

S: **Vendo las casas?**

T: Yeah. *I'm selling the houses*, **vendo las casas**, or *I'm selling them* and you mean the houses:

S: **Las vendo.**

T: **Las vendo.** Good. The reason why we're looking at this with objects is because many people, when they're learning Spanish, they remember to change gender for people, but they kind of put all things in with **lo** and **los** and we kind of want to get out of that habit before it starts. So we imagine the houses, we refer to them as **las**.

S: Is there a rule for which objects are female and which are not?

T: Well remember it's not strictly the object that has the gender, but the word, the noun in itself. So feminine words end in *a*. Words that end in *a*, with a few exceptions, are feminine words. So *casa* is feminine: *la casa*. And it takes *la*. Then there are other feminine endings. So *-ión* is a feminine ending. *The administration* is **la administración**. All of these words are going to be *la*.

*The opinion* is?

S: **La opinión.**

T: **La opinión.** *The association:*

S: **La asociación.**

T: Good. *The celebration:*

S: **La celebración.**

T: **La celebración.** Good. If a word ends in *-ity* in English, it's going to be **-idad** in Spanish most of the time. This **-idad** is a feminine ending as well. So that shows us that all of these words are feminine words. So for example you have *diversity*. You change that *-ity* to **-idad**. **-idad**.

S: **Diversidad.**

T: Good. **Diversidad.** *The diversity:*

S: **La diversidad.**

T: **La diversidad.** Good. *The nationality:*

S: **La nacionalidad.**

T: **La nacionalidad.** The same happens with the *-tion*, it becomes like an *s* or a */th/* in most of Spain.

La *na/s/ionalidad*, la *na/th/ionalidad*, you could hear either. *The creativity:*

S: **La creatividad.**

T: Very well pronounced. You thought of the vowels very well. **La creatividad.** *The electricity:*

S: **La electricidad.**

T: **La electricidad.** These words are very nice as well for guessing other words. Because if you have this rule, *electricity* becomes **electricidad**, you can assume that *electric* is probably the same in Spanish as well, just sounding more Spanish or having a small change. Even though there's no rule for that, you can assume it. So how do you think you would say electric?

S: **ElecTRIC.**

T: Does it sound Spanish enough yet?

S: **ElecTRico.**

T: Yeah **eLECtrico.**

S: **Eléctrico.**

T: **Eléctrico.** How would you say *generosity*?

S: **Generosidad.**

T: Very good. **Generosidad.** How do you think you will say *generous*? Have a play with it.

S: **Gener...**

T: Have a play with it and see what sits nice.

S: **Generoso.**

T: Yes. **Generoso. Generoso.** For males. For females what do you think it would become?

S: **Generosa.**

T: **Generosa.** Exactly. How **lo** becomes **la**, **generoso** becomes **generosa**. It also can become plural as well if we're talking about more than one person, male or mixed group, how would it sound?

S: **Generosos.**

T: Good. And if I was just speaking about females?

S: **Generosas.**

T: Very good. *Community:*

S: **Comunidad.**

T: *The community:*

S: **La comunidad.**

T: **La comunidad.** Feminine word, feminine ending. How do you think you would say *common*?

*Common* comes from *community*, by the way.

S: Is it **cómo**no? **Comono.**

T: **Común.**

S: Ah.

T: So there's no way to know that.

S: **Comuno** or **Común**?

T: **Común.**

S: **Común.**

T: **Común**, with the accent on the end. So there's no way to know that. You will get-

S: It's irregular?

T: There's no rule here so there's no irregularity. So maybe you will take **comuno** and somebody would give you that feedback of **común**. And then you would realize. But if you didn't take that guess, you wouldn't get the word. We will learn a lot of vocabulary very quickly this way.

How would you say *opportunity*?

S: **Oportunidad.**

T: **Oportunidad.** How do you think you would say *opportune*? *Opportune*, you know we use this word in English like *timely* or *convenient*. *Opportune*:

S: **Oportuna?**

T: **Oportuno.** Or if you are talking about a feminine thing, **oportuna**. *Clarity*:

S: **Claridad.**

T: **Claridad.** And *clear* comes from *clarity*. So you can look at **claridad** and you can probably guess how to say *clear*.

S: **Clear?**

T: But look at the Spanish word. **Claridad.**

S: **Clarido.**

T: And the **-idad** is the ending isn't it?

S: Oh yes, **claro**.

T: Yes, **claro**. So this is another good skill. When you're guessing, you want to get rid of the ending. This ending **-idad** is what's making it a noun. **La claridad. Claro.** And **claro** is used a lot conversationally. Other than meaning "clear" as an adjective, it can also be used like "of course". **Claro, claro, claro.** You will hear this a lot in conversation to show agreement or understanding of what you've said. **Claro.** *Personality*:

S: **Personalidad.**

T: **Personalidad.** So we can assume that *person* is probably the same in Spanish as well. When I say "the same", I mean similar.

S: So again it's guessing. It could be -



T: Exactly. So what do you think it sounds like? You will develop an intuition, especially through listening. This is why listening is important as well because this is what will really develop your intuition. Because you might have heard it before and not realized it.

S: I've heard of **persona**, so I'm guessing it's **persono**.

T: It's **persona**.

S: Oh **persona**.

T: It's **persona**. It's a feminine word. So remember it's the word that's feminine or masculine, not the thing. So I am a **persona**, even though I am a man. The word is feminine, not me. *Sincerity*:

S: **Sinceridad**.

T: **Sinceridad**. *Sincere*:

S: **Sencero**.

T: **Sincero**.

S: **Sincero**.

T: **Sincero**. So that's another example of a feminine ending. If it ends **-idad**, it's a feminine ending. All of these words without exception are **la**. If it ends **-ión**, that's a feminine ending. All of these words without exceptions go with **la**. Back to **vender**. How was *I sell*?

S: **Vendo**.

T: *I want to sell*:

S: **Quiero vender**.

T: **Quiero vender**. Good. *I want to sell it*:

S: **Quiero venderlo**.

T: **Quiero venderlo**. Where else could we put that **lo**?

S: **Lo quiero vender**.

T: Good. The -er/-ir verbs use as their principal sound /e/. So whilst -ar verbs use the principle sound /a/, and we got **organizar** and then **organiza**, for - what does that mean, **organiza**?

S: *He/she* or *it* or *you* (formal).

T: Good. So **organiza**, /a/ is a principal sound. **Organizan** means? When we add an *n* what does it mean?

S: *They*.

T: *They organize*. Or?

S: *You* (plural).

T: *You* (plural). So we add the *n* and we get *they* and *you guys*. **Organizan**. We add the *s* and we get *you* (informal), **organizas**. So /a/ is our key sound for -ar verbs, and for -er/-ir verbs, our key sound is /e/. So to get *he/she/it* and *you* formal, we'll take off our ending and put on /e/. *He sells, she sells, it sells, you* (formal) *sell*:

S: **Vende**.

T: **Vende**. How would you say *he sells it* or *she sells it*?

S: **Lo vende**.

T: Good. **Lo vende**. **Lo vende**. We said that the word for something was **algo**, **algo**. So you can say *he's selling something, she's selling something, you're selling something*.

S: **Vende algo**.

T: Good. **Vende algo**. Good. What do you think we would add on to **vende** to get the *they* form or the *you* (plural) form?

S: **Venden**.

T: So we're doing actually the same. So we have a key vowel sound, which is /e/. But then the rest, we're doing the same what we did with the -ar verbs. **Venden**. *They sell. They're not selling*:

S: **No venden**.

T: *They're not selling it*:

S: **No lo venden.**

T: *Why aren't they selling it?:*

S: **¿Por qué no lo venden?**

T: Good. **¿Por qué no lo venden?** *Why aren't they selling it to me?*, you just say *why aren't they selling me it?* You put the personal one, *me*, first. The one that refers to the person it goes first.

You just say *why aren't they selling me it?* So *they are selling*. How is *they are selling?*

S: **Venden.**

T: **Venden.** *They are selling it:*

S: **Lo venden.**

T: Good. *They are selling me it.* So they come together and the personal one comes first.

S: **Me lo venden.**

T: **Me lo venden.** So whilst we have this complicated stuff happening in English, *they sell it to me*, no, in Spanish we're just going to identify it's *it* and it's *me*, *me* is the personal one so it's going to come first, **me lo venden.** *They're selling it to me. They're not selling it to me, or they don't sell it to me:*

S: **No me lo venden.**

T: **No me lo venden.** *Why don't they sell it to me?*

S: **¿Por qué no me lo venden?**

T: Very good. The word for *us* is **nos**. **Nos**, the word for *us*. So how would you say *they are selling us something?* So *something*, you know **algo**, is not one of these little words like **me**, **lo**, **nos**. It's going to come afterwards. So *they are selling us something:*

S: **Nos venden algo.**

T: Very good. **Nos venden algo.** But if instead of saying *they're selling us something* and you just wanted to say *they're selling us it, they're selling it to us, they're selling us it.* How would it be?

S: **Nos lo venden.**

T: Good. **Nos lo venden.** Good. So there you have an *us*, you have an *it*, you have a *they*. It could be like hugely complicated, no, if you just took that all as a package and tried to translate it. But thinking about the verb first and then you're thinking about the other bits you need to put, then you get the sentence that you want, confident that you have the sentence that you want. How would you say *they're not selling it to us*?

S: **No nos lo venden.**

T: Good. **No nos lo venden.** *Why don't they sell it to us?*

S: **¿Por qué no nos lo venden?**

T: Good. **¿Por qué no nos lo venden?** Very good.

## Track 13

T: *To do*, or *to make* in Spanish is **hacer**. And it has a silent *h*. It's *h-a-c-e-r*. So in most of Spain actually that would sound **ha/th/er**. But **ha/s/er** in most of the Spanish speaking world. What verb type is it? What is the ending?

S: *-er*.

T: *-er* verb. So actually whenever we come across a new verb, we want to make a mental note what is the ending. Or, rather than make a mental note, just process it. Remember we always want to do anything but memorize, so just looking and going “**hacer**, *-er* verb, ok”. Just to get in that habit. If we know it's an *-er* verb, we know how to work with it. So how would you say *he's doing* or *making*, *she is doing* or *making*, *you are* (formal) *doing* or *making*?

S: **Hace**.

T: **Hace**. Good. *You're doing it*:

S: **Lo hace**.

T: **Lo hace**. How would you say *they're doing it* or *you guys are doing it*?

S: **Los hacen. Lo hacen**.

T: Very good. Very good. **Lo hacen**. *You* (informal) *are doing it*. So what is the sound for informal you?

S: **Hacen**.

T: So for informal *you* we add on an *s* to the *he/she/it* version. So we get:

S: **Haces**.

T: *You're doing it*:

S: **Lo haces**.

T: Good. The word for *what* in Spanish is **qué**. How do you say *what are you doing*?

S: **¿Qué haces?**

T: ¿**Qué haces?** And this is a way of saying *how are you* as well. ¿**Qué haces?**, *what are you doing?*, *what are you up to?* Good. So we see that for *-ar* verbs, we have the principle sound of /a/, and then we add our *n* or *s*, *n* for *they* or *you* (plural), and *s* for informal *you*. And for *-er/-ir* verbs we have the key sound /e/, and we're adding on *s* for informal *you*, *n* for *they*, *you* (plural). Now these associations between *s* and informal *you*, and *n* and *they* or *you guys*, we're going to see all throughout the Spanish verb structure.

S: So this confuses me a little bit; isn't this also a memorization? Having to remember which ending goes with what people?

T: There's a difference between memorization and remembering, ah? We can remember through not actively trying to memorize. So not telling you you shouldn't remember anything, you need to remember Spanish. I'm telling you that you're going to remember it much easier without the active process of trying to memorize anything, which blocks whichever processes we need for remembering. I like to describe it in this way: that you borrow information when you memorize it, but when you are applying it practically in this construction of these sentences, when you're looking from many different angles at the elements that we are looking at in Spanish, then you are internalizing it. Then it's really yours, you're not borrowing it. **Puedo** in Spanish means *I can, I am able*. **Puedo**.

S: **Puedo**.

T: Good. *P-u-e-d-o*. **Puedo**.

S: **Puedo**.

T: You're probably noticing as well that the *d* is quite soft when it comes in the middle of a word in Spanish, rather than a hard /d/. **Puedo**.

S: **Puedo**.

T: So **puedo** means *I can*, or *I am able*, and the "to" form of the verb is an *-er* verb. So **puedo** is an *-er* verb. So how would you say *he can* or *she can* or *it can* or *you (formal) can*?

S: **Puede**.

T: And how would you say informally *you can*?

S: **Puedes.**

T: Good. Now in English, we don't say *can you to come?*, but it's what we mean. Now this is an English problem; the English is taking the *to* away here; it does it sometimes. You don't say *I must to come*, you say *I must come*, no? It's like *I am able to come*. You can think of it this way as we thought of *I must come* as *I owe to come*. So how would you say *can you come?* Talking informally?

S: **Puede** - sorry, informal. **¿Puedes venir?**

T: **¿Puedes venir?** So this is what we're going to be using to talk with friends, no, this *s*. We're going to be hearing it a lot. If it helps you make the association, you might have heard **¿cómo estás?**, *how are you?* The *s* on the end of **estás** there is this informal *s*. **Puedes**. So, *can't you come?*:

S: **¿No puedes venir?**

T: **¿No puedes venir?** *Why can't you come?:*

S: **¿Por qué no puedes venir?**

T: **¿Por qué no puedes venir?** *I want to know why you can't come:*

S: **Quiero** - oh to know. Ok I'm going *know* and *knowledge* and that's not taking me anywhere.

T: Boy's got *savvy*...

S: Ah, yes.

T: So *I want to know:*

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: **Quiero saber.** *Why:*

S: **Por qué.**

T: *You can't come:*

S: **No puedes venir.**

T: Very good. Very good. If you address each part, part by part, and apply all of our mental energy just to the part we need and then forget it. **Quiero saber por qué no puedes venir.** Very good.

So to recap, we have *-ar* verbs and we have *-er/-ir* verbs. For all of the verbs, we take off the ending, *-ar*, *-er*, *-ir*, and we put *-o* for the “I” version. So **vender** is *to sell* and *I sell* is:

S: **Vendo.**

T: **Vendo. Comprar** is *to buy* and *I buy* is:

S: **Compro.**

T: **Compro.** Good. **Llegar** is *to arrive*. **Llegar.** And *I arrive* is:

S: **Llegaro...oh llego.**

T: **Llego.** Good. So with this rule we can take any verb and we can do this if it's regular. Maybe it's irregular and we try it and we make a mistake. So for example, **salir** is *to leave* or *to go out*. If we apply this rule, what are we going to come up with?

S: **Salo.**

T: But it's wrong; it's **salgo**. So it's one of those **-go** instead of **-o** like **vengo**, *I'm coming*:

S: **Tengo.**

T: **Tengo**, *I have*; **salgo**, *I leave, I'm going out*. The quite common verbs, we tend to find in all languages that the most common verbs are the most irregular. **Esperar**, **esperar**, means *to wait* and *to hope*. Which is interesting and it's accurate enough. I mean you're not doing much more than waiting when you hope. We have it in the word *desperate* actually. *Des-* is *un-*, and you're hopeless when you're desperate. So **esperar** is *to wait* or *to hope*. How do you say *I'm waiting*, or *I'm hoping*, or *I wait*, or *I hope*?

S: **Espero.**

T: **Espero.** Now how do you say *he waits*?

S: **Espere.**



T: I'm really glad you made that mistake actually. Because it's a wonderful point to elaborate on. Before we touch a verb, we want to take one split-second to go **esperar**: *-ar* verb. Otherwise what happens? Our brain hears /e/-/e/ from **esperar**, and it wants to put an /e/. What your mind is doing there, putting an *e* because you have **espe-** and it fits better, is actually even ingrained in other languages. For example, in Turkish you have something called vowel harmony. And when you're adding on suffixes, there's like two or four, depending on the suffix, two or four different versions of that suffix that you can add on so it can agree with the vowel before. So there's something in your mind that would prefer an *e* there. Of course because it's **espe-** and like I said you even see this formalized in other languages, like in this phenomenon of vowel harmony. So to stop that process from happening, you must run back to the "to" form and then you take control.

S: **Espera.**

T: **Espera.** And **espera** means *he/she/it/you* (formal) *wait* or *are waiting, is waiting*. We can build the rest. So how do you say *they wait*?

S: **Esperan.**

T: If you want to say *they're waiting for me*, we don't need the word for *for*, it's just like *they await me*. We don't need the word for *for*. So how do you say *they await me*?

S: **Esperanme** - sorry, **me esperan.**

T: The only option there because it's a changed verb. **Me esperan.** *They're not waiting for me:*

S: **No me esperan.**

T: Good. **No me esperan.** *I want to know why they're not waiting for me. I want to know:*

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: *Why:*

S: **Por qué no me esperan.**

T: Very good. **Quiero saber por qué no me esperan.** Well done.

S: I was just very happy that I remembered **saver** finally.

T: Ah good. **Saber** though with a *b*.

S: **Saber**, ah.

T: Good.

S: Isn't it from *savvy*?

T: Yeah there is a grey area between *v* and *b*. So it will change between languages. Actually a very nice example of this is the word for *vocabulary*. *Vocabulary* in Spanish is **vocabulario**. **Vocabulario**. It's spelled with a *v*. But the word for *mouth* in Spanish is **boca**, spelled with a *b*. Now of course **vocabulario** is coming from **boca**. Your vocabulary is your "mouth-ulary". This gives us another rule, actually. Words ending *-ary* will become **-ario**. So *necessary*:

S: **Necesario**.

T: *Contrary*:

S: **Contrario**.

T: Good.

## Track 14

T: What was *to know*?

S: **Saber.**

T: **Saber.** Good. What would *I know* be, if it follows our rules?

S: **Sabo.**

T: But it's not. It's **sé**. So it's an exception. *S-e, sé*. You might have heard **lo sé, lo sé** - literally *I know it*. Because **sé** by itself is a bit short, so you often hear people saying **lo sé, lo sé** - *I know it*, rather than **sé, sé, sé**. So this is irregular, very irregular. *S-e*. But the rest of the versions of **saber** are regular. So how would you say *he knows* or *she knows* or *it knows* or *you (formal) know*?

S: **Sabe.**

T: Good. So *I don't know*:

S: **No sé.**

T: **No sé.** We said that **quiero** was *I want*, and **quiero** actually is an *-er* verb so how would you say *I don't know what he wants*? What is *what*?

S: **Qué. No sé qué lo quiere.**

T: Why **lo**?

S: *He.*

T: Firstly, you're not using the word for *he*, you're just saying *he wants* and that's contained in the verb. But **lo** is not *he*, it's *him*. Not **he**. We didn't learn yet the word for *he*. On purpose actually we haven't been learning these words so that we can just use the verb for now.

S: Ok.

T: So try again: *I don't know what he wants*.

S: **No sé qué quiere.**

T: Good, you must feel comfortable with two words becoming one. *I don't know what he wants*, **no sé qué quiere**. Good. The word for *he* is **él, él**. *E-l*. If you want to be emphatic: *I don't know what HE wants*, or if you want to show or clarify who you're talking about, you can add that. So how would you do that? *I don't know what he wants*:

S: **No sé qué él quiere**.

T: Good. **No sé qué él quiere**. Or you can say **no sé qué quiere él**. You can do either; one sounds more emphatic than the other, and this is much better understood in live practice. Because the emphasis isn't just in the sentence, it's with the hands and facial expression and tone of voice. So it's something much better to get live. **No sé qué él quiere, no sé qué quiere él**.

The word for *she*, what is the word for *her* first? We want to differentiate. What is the word for *her*, like in *I want to see her*? How would you say *I want to see, to view, her*?

S: **Quiero verla**.

T: Good. **Quiero verla**. But if you want to say *she sees*, it's not *her*, *I want to see her*, it's *she*. And the word for *she* is **ella**. **Ella**.

S: **Ella**.

T: Now this is spelled *e-l-l-a*. Double *l* in Spanish is pronounced /yuh/. **Ella**. So if you want to say *she sees, to see* is a verb, what type of verb is it? *-ar* verb, *-ir* verb, *-er* verb?

S: **Ver**. It's an *-er*.

T: An *-er* verb. It seems too obvious to us.

S: Sorry I thought you might be asking something more complicated.

T: No. This is an *-er* verb. So how do I say *she sees*?

S: **Ella ve**.

T: **Ella ve**. And if I know who I'm talking about I can just say **ve**. Maybe when we are contrasting in the sentence we have a special desire to use these words. When I say contrasting, I mean in the sense maybe I say *I want to invite him, but she doesn't want to invite him*. So even if we know who I'm talking about, there I will probably use the word for *she* because I'm making that contrast.

Again these are things you just do very naturally without realizing it once you get practicing. Also because your native language probably does the same thing as well. Even if you don't have the choice whether or not to put *she* - like in English you always put it - you will stress it with your voice. *I don't want to invite him, but SHE does.* So because you are stressing that with your voice in English, that's also going to carry over. Many things are going to carry over that are positive language transfer that we might not necessarily address specifically. So how would you say that? *I don't want to invite him, but she does want to invite him. So, I don't want:*

S: **No quiero.**

T: *To invite him:*

S: **Invitarlo.**

T: Good. **No quiero invitarlo. But:**

S: **Pero.**

T: **Pero.** *She does.* So actually we can just say *but she yes.* What was the word for *yes*?

S: **Sí.**

T: **Sí.** So we can just say *but she yes.* How would you do that?

S: **Pero ella sí.**

T: Good. **No quiero invitarlo, pero ella sí.** Or maybe I even use the word for *I* there to be emphatic.

**Yo no quiero invitarlo. Yo: y-o. Yo no quiero invitarlo, pero ella sí.**

So we said that **salir** was *to leave* or *to go out*. Now, *I leave* or *I go out* is **salgo**. It's irregular, has the /g/ sound popping up. **Salgo**. But the rest of the versions are regular, so let's make them. How do you say *he goes out* or *he leaves*?

S: **Sele?**

T: Again you're making some Turkish vowel harmony here.

S: Sorry, what's the *to*?

T: **Salir.**

S: So it's **seli**- No

T: **Salir**.

S: **Sale**.

T: **Sale**. Good. So that **sele** you put before is because it just sounds better. The mind has some kind of desire for this vowel harmony. It's very interesting. **Sale**. Now you can make me the rest.

*They, or you (plural), you guys:*

S: **Salen**.

T: And *you* (informal):

S: **Sales**.

T: **Sales**. Good. Now if you want to say *I'm going out to eat*, how is *I'm going out* again? So it should be **sallo** but it was:

S: **Sango?**

T: **Salgo**.

S: **Salgo**.

T: **Salgo**. So the irregularity is the same as the other ones that we saw: **tener, tengo**: *to have, I have*; **venir, vengo**: *to come, I come*; **salir, salgo**. So how do you say *I'm going out to eat*?

S: I'm not sure of the word *out*.

T: This is the verb. The verb is *to leave* or *to go out*.

S: Oh, **salgo**. Right.

T: So you don't need the word for *out*.

S: Ok. **Salgo comer. Salgo a comer**.

T: Why did you think of the **a**? I think you felt it. You felt that sense of movement. Good. So **salgo a comer**, it's a verb of movement. Good. **Voy a comer**, *I'm going to eat*. **Salgo a comer**, *I'm going out to eat*. Very good. What was *I have*?

S: **Tengo.**

T: **Tengo.** *I have it:*

S: **Lo tengo.**

T: **Lo tengo.** Good. *I have them:*

S: **Los tengo.**

T: **Los tengo.** Good. If we add on **que** to **tengo**, and there's not really any comfortable translation for this, but if we add on **que** we get *I have to*, in the sense of *must, have to*. So for example if you say **tengo que comer** you get *I have to eat*. So we change the meaning of **tengo**: like *have*, which is just possession, to *have to* by adding **que**. Like I said there is no comfortable translation. **Que** is *what* or *that*, it's also used as *that*. We're going to use it like this later, but again it's still very uncomfortable to translate. So we will just say we add **que** and we get the meaning of *have to*. So how would you say *I have to do it?* What was *to do?* Begins with a silent *h*:

S: **Hacer.**

T: **Hacer.** So *I have to do it:*

S: **Tengo que hacer. Hacerlo.**

T: Good. **Tengo que hacerlo, lo tengo que hacer**, you have the option. So we've seen a few verbs with this **-go** business. **Vengo**, *I'm coming*; **tengo**, *I have*; **salgo**, *I leave*; and we've seen that the **-go** just pops up for the "I" version. It doesn't pop up for the other versions, this *g*. So, **tiene** for example is *he has*. **Tiene**. How would you say *they have?*

S: **Tienen.**

T: **Tienen.** And how would you say *you have*, speaking informally?

S: **Tienes.**

T: **Tienes.** Good. So if I give you the version for *he comes* it's **viene**. So how would you say *you come?*

S: Informal?

T: Yes.

S: **Vienes.**

T: **Vienes.** The word for *when* is **cuándo. Cuándo.**

S: **Cuándo.**

T: *When are you coming?:*

S: Informal, **vienes.**

T: It's the English that's confusing you.

S: **¿Cuándo vienes?**

T: Exactly. So don't let that English *are you coming* confuse you. There's a lot we're doing in English there that we don't need to worry about for Spanish. **¿Cuándo vienes?** *When are you coming to eat?:*

S: **¿Cuándo vienes a comer?**

T: **A comer**, very nice. **¿Cuándo vienes a comer?** *When are you coming to eat?* **Tiene**, what does **tiene** mean?

S: *Have.*

T: But I need you to be more specific. I'm giving you more information than just *have*. **Tiene:**

S: *He/it/she* or formal *you*.

T: Very good. **Ella tiene. Ella tiene:**

S: *She has.*

T: Good. **Quiero saber qué tiene.**

S: *I want to know what you have.*

T: *What you have, or she, or it.* Very good. We said that a very interesting detail about **tener** is that you can also translate it as *-tain*, when this *-tain* forms part of another verb in English. So *contain* becomes **contener**. So how was *it has* or *she has*? *He has*?



S: **Tiene.**

T: Yes. We saw that it was **tiene**. We haven't looked at why yet, but we've seen that it's a little bit irregular. In Spanish you can generalize this irregularity. How is *I have*?

S: **Tengo.**

T: **Tengo.** *I obtain:*

S: **Obtengo.**

T: **Obtengo.** Sounds rather formal in English, but in Spanish you might use it like *get*. *I get it, lo obtengo.* *I obtain it.* *To put* in Spanish is **poner**. **Poner.**

S: **Poner.**

T: That means *to put*. And *I put* you have the same business with this *g* popping up, so how do you think it sounds, *I put*?

S: **Pongo.**

T: **Pongo.** And **poner** is interesting like **tener**, because when we have *-pose* inside of a verb in English we can turn that *-pose* into **poner**, and we get the verb in Spanish. So the example would be *compose* becomes **componer**. So *to compose* is **componer**. How would *to suppose* be?

S: **Suposer.**

T: So *compose* is **componer**. *Suppose* is:

S: **Suponer.**

T: **Suponer.** And how do you think you would say *I suppose*? We want to generalize our irregularities in Spanish. So how was *I put*? How was that? *I put*:

S: **Pongo.**

T: **Pongo.** So **suponer**, *to suppose*, becomes, for *I suppose*:

S: **Supongo.**

T: Yeah. **Supongo**. And you will hear **supongo que sí**, *I suppose that yes*. I said that **que** can also mean *that*. *I suppose so*, we say in English. In Spanish you say *I suppose that yes*. **Supongo que sí**. You will hear that. So we had **componer**, *to compose*; **suponer**, *to suppose*. How would you say *to impose*?

S: **Imponer**.

T: **Imponer**. *To expose*:

S: **Exponer**.

T: *To oppose*:

S: **Oponer**.

T: Yes. *I oppose it*. *I oppose it*:

S: **Lo opongo**.

T: **Lo opongo**. *I oppose it*. Good. And *I have*:

S: **Tengo**.

T: **Tengo**. And we said we can add on **que** to get the meaning of *have to*. So if you want to say *I have to see her*, how would you say *I have to see her*?

S: **Tengo que verla**.

T: Good. We can say **la tengo que ver** or **tengo que verla**. Both are fine. How would you say *I must see her*, *I owe to see her*?

S: **Debo verla**.

T: **Debo verla**. Or where else would you put that **la**?

S: **La debo ver**.

T: Good. **La debo ver**. The difference between **tengo que** and **debo** is exactly like English. We use *must* when it's a bit more serious: *I must see her*. And we say *have to* like an everyday kind of thing. The way you use it in English and Spanish is exactly the same. So **debo** is a little bit more

severe, a little bit more serious, and **tener que**, *to have to* with **que**, is more everyday. **Tengo que comer ahora**. What does that mean? **Tengo que comer ahora**:

S: *I have to eat now*.

T: Good. *I have to eat now*. What does it mean if I say **voy a intentar comer más tarde**? **Voy a intentar comer más tarde**:

S: **Voy** is *I'm going*.

T: Yes.

S: **Intentar**? Can you say the whole sentence again?

T: **Voy a intentar comer más tarde**.

S: It sounds odd, because it sounds like *I'm going* with the intention to eat later.

T: Good, but it's not a noun. It's not the intention. It's not **la intención**, it's **intentar**. And when you hear that *-ar* on the end, you can suspect that it's a verb. Most of the time it's going to be. So you want *to* something. **Voy a intentar**:

S: *I'm going to intend-*

T: *I'm going to try*.

S: Ah.

T: *I'm going to try*:

S: *To eat later*.

T: Exactly. *I'm going to try to eat later*. Good. So let's make a very short recap on these useful verbs that tend to have verbs coming after them in this way, like **voy a**. So we had **voy a**: *I'm going to*. *I can*? It might help to know that the word *power* is related to this word in Spanish. Of course when you *can*, when you're *able* to, you have the *power* to. So it's related and it begins with *p*. *I can*:

S: **Puedo**.

T: **Puedo**. Good. **Voy a comer**: *I'm going to eat*. **Puedo comer** - what does that mean?

S: *I can eat.*

T: Yes. **Tengo que comer:**

S: *I have to eat.*

T: **Debo comer:**

S: *I must eat.*

T: **Quiero comer:**

S: *I want to eat.*

T: Good. So these verbs: **quiero, voy a, tengo que, puedo, debo**, they're very useful because we can just put the "to" form after.

## Track 15

T: What was the word for *what*?

S: **Qué.**

T: And do you remember how was *to pass*?

S: **Pasar.**

T: **Pasar.** And this can also mean like *to happen*. *To pass* in the sense of *to occur*. How do you say *he passes*?

S: **Pasa.**

T: Good. And *she passes*:

S: **Pasa.**

T: And *it passes*:

S: **Pasa.**

T: Good. And if you want to say *what passes*, meaning *what happens*, *what's going on*, *what is happening*?:

S: I remembered it now. I went through the whole process and I remember people saying **¿qué pasó?**

T: This is the past. We said that when you emphasize that *-o* on the end it's actually the version for *he/she/it* in the past, so **¿qué pasó?** is *what happened?*, and we will look at this later. But what is *what's happening?* *What is happening*?:

S: **¿Qué pasa?**

T: Good. So if you want to say *I want to know what's going on*, *I want to know what's happening*, *I want to know what's passing*:

S: **Quiero saber qué pasa.**

T: **Quiero saber qué pasa.** *I want to know what's happening.* Good. There's one more thing we need to know about the present, and it's gonna fill in, happily, a grey area for us which you might be

wondering already: how did we get **tiene** *he/she/it/you* (formal) *has* or *have*, and then the other versions **tienen**, **tienen**, from **tener**? *To want* is **querer**. What is *I want*?

S: **Quiero**.

T: **Quiero**. So how does **querer** become **quiero**? So there's something else we need to know about the present to understand this, and then we can manage the present completely. So what's happening is that when we have an *e* in the “to” form of the verb like in **tener**: *to have*, like in **querer**: *to want*; when we have an *e* inside of the verb it's part of the root, not part of the ending. Not that *-er*, that doesn't count. But the */e/* in *ten-* and the */e/* in *quer-* of **querer**. When we stress it, when we emphasize it, it often splits; most of the time, it splits into an *ie* under the stress of that accent, under the stress when we say **querer** we have the accent on the end, we have the accent on the ending. Then when we take off that *-er* we put *-o*, we would have **quero** but when we stress down that *e* it splits and it becomes **quiero**. The same for **tener**: we would have **tene** for *he has*, but when we stress down on that *e* it splits and it becomes **tiene**. The same for *come*. We have **venir**. But when we say *he comes, she comes, it comes, you* (formal) *come*, it would be **vene**, but it becomes **viene**. Now it's not happening with **tengo**, **vengo**, because we can say the *n* and the *g* kind of hold it up. So this is probably why it got saved. But otherwise it splits. Now, this might seem quite an abstract thing to get your head around, but what is very helpful is that we have these between words in English and Spanish. We can identify these between words in English and Spanish. For example, we have a word that we use for time in English, but only in music. Do you know what is this word? A word we use for time but only in music. When you speak about the time, the rhythm of music, you talk about its:

S: *Beat*.

T: Not *beat* but *tempo*. Now, *time* in Spanish is **tiempo**. You see the difference between *tempo* and **tiempo**, other than the Spanish pronunciation, is that the *e* has split into *ie*. So you can even see it between words in English and Spanish. *Concert* in Spanish is - try and do the same thing.

S: **Concierto**.

T: **Concierto**. Good. You stuck in an *o* to make it sound more Spanish and you split that *e*. **Concierto**. *November* is **Noviembre**. So this will help us remember. So this happens most of the time. We already saw places that it doesn't happen; we saw very briefly the verb **llegar**, which was *to arrive*

and we said **llego**, *I arrive*. We saw **esperar**, which was *to wait* or *to hope*, **espero**. It's not happening. But most of the time it's going to happen. We saw it happening with **tener** which became **tiene**, *he/she/it/you* (formal), **tienen**, *they* or *you* (plural), **tienen**, *you* (informal).

We saw it happening with **venir**, *to come*: **viene**, **vienes**, **vienen**. Another verb that we see this way is **pensar**. what do you think **pensar** means?

S: *Thoughtful*.

T: But it is a verb. There is no verb *to thoughtful*, is there?

S: Well, *to think*.

T: Yes that's it, *to think*. It's very useful for us to group words into families. So “verb” is a family. So when you decide what type of word it is, then you narrow down the possible behaviors of that word, and you manage to manage it much easier. And making that very clearly - that connection - is really really helpful for you. *To think*, **pensar**. So if you say *I think*, how is it going to be?

S: **Pienso**.

T: Good. It would be **penso** but you stress down on that *e* and it splits into *ie* and you get **pienso**.

How is *he thinks* or *she thinks* or *it thinks* or *you* (formal)?

S: **Piense**.

T: This sounds like vowel harmony. I mean it sounds nice, **piense**, because we have *ie* and then we want to put an *e* next to it because it matches. But that's Turkish grammar. You must know where you are with any verb. And to know where you are you must go back to the “to” form. Then you are confident.

S: So it's **piensar**.

T: **Pensar**.

S: **Pensar**, not **penser**.

T: No, **pensar**. So you must go back there and then you feel confident. Otherwise the base is going to effect what vowel you want to put on.

S: **Piensa.**

T: **Piensa.** *You* (informal):

S: **Piensas.**

T: Good. *What do you think?:*

S: **¿Qué piensas?**

T: Yeah. **¿Qué piensas?** This is a useful verb as well actually. Because if you say *I think to eat* it means *I plan on eating*. You can say *I think to eat*, that simple. *I think to eat*: how would it sound?

S: **Pienso comer.**

T: **Pienso comer.** *I think to eat later* is *I plan on eating later*. So how would you say *I plan on eating later*?

S: **Pienso comer tarde.**

T: That means *I plan on eating late*, which is fine, but *later* is *more late*. And *more* is related to *massive*.

S: **Más tarde.**

T: Good. **Pienso comer más tarde.** *I plan on eating later*. So you can use it like that as well. We saw **venir** also splits with the exception of **vengo**. *He comes, she comes, you* (formal) - how would that be?

S: **Viene.**

T: **Viene.** *They*:

S: **Vienen.**

T: **Vienen.** *You* (informal):

S: **Vienes.**

T: Good. Do you remember how was *when*?

S: **Cuando.**



T: **Cuándo.** *When are you coming?:*

S: **¿Cuándo vienes?**

T: **¿Cuándo vienes? Entender** means *to understand*. You can use **comprender** if you forget it, but **entender** is better. It's more common. But **comprender** is easier because it sounds like *comprehend*, and also in **comprender** the *e* doesn't split. *I understand* is **comprendo**. But with **entender** it does split. So you can use **comprender**, but most common in Spanish is **entender** for understand. And here the *e* does split. So how would you say *I understand*?

S: **Entiendo.**

T: **Entiendo.** How would you say *he understands*?

S: **Entiende.**

T: **Entiende.** Good. *They:*

S: **Entienden.**

T: **Entienden. Perder** means *to lose*. It's kind of related to *perish*, there is a connection there, or perishable food. You know, food that rots, or real food. **Perder**, *to lose. I lose:*

S: **Pierdo.**

T: **Pierdo.** Good. The process is **perder-perdo**, maybe it splits: **pierdo**. Good. *I lose it:*

S: **Lo pierdo.**

T: **Lo pierdo.** Good. *I lose them:*

S: **Los pierdo.**

T: **Los pierdo.** Good.

## Track 16

T: **Comenzar**, what do you think that means? **Comenzar**:

S: *To commence.*

T: *To commence.* Or?

S: *To start.*

T: *To start.* Again this exists and you can use it and it's probably easier because it sounds like commence so it's easier to remember. But there's another verb which is more common, which is **empezar**. **Empezar** This is a z so that's going to sound /th/ in Spain, **empe/th/ar** in most of Spain.

**Empezar.**

S: **Empezar.**

T: Practice with this one for now. This is *to start*. How do you say *I start*?

S: **Empezo.**

T: Good that's what it should be, but what might happen?

S: **Empiezo.**

T: **Empiezo.** *He starts:*

S: **Empieze.**

T: What must you do before you make that decision? What must you do? You must go back to the "to" form. It's a very important habit.

S: It's **empezar**. **Empeza.**

T: Good. And then what might be the next step after **empeza**?

S: **Empieza.**

T: **Empieza.** So this is the process we want to take. It's essential for us to get into that habit of going back to the "to" form and then we know where we are. Otherwise it's guesswork. **Empieza: empezar-empieza.** *They start:*

S: **Empiezan.**

T: **Empiezan.** Good. *You* (informal):

S: **Empiezas.**

T: Good. *When are you starting?:*

S: **¿Cuándo empiezas?**

T: **¿Cuándo empiezas?** Very good. So the *e* can split to *ie*; that's something we need to know about the present and it's something we need to be on top of. Now it's in the present that this happens because, as we know, one of the fundamental elements of the present tense is to have that accent on the penultimate syllable. So it's having that accent on the penultimate syllable that makes that *e* vulnerable to splitting. The *e* might split to *ie*, or the *o* might split to *ue*. We know this already actually because we have **puedo**, and this is a split *o*. *To be able*, or "to can", of course there is no "to can" in English, *to be able* we say is **poder**. Here actually you can see closer that connection with *power*. Before, I said that the word is related to the word *power* in English. **El poder** - **el** is the masculine *the* - we also saw it's the word for *he*, it's also the word for *the* for masculine words. **El poder** is *the power*. So here it's a noun. It looks like a verb, but if it has *the* in front of it, we know it's a noun. **El poder** - *the power*. **Poder** - *to be able*. When you take off your ending and you change it for present tense, and you stress that *o*, it splits into *ue*, and you get **puedo**. Again we can see the same phenomenon happening between words in English and Spanish. So, for example, we have the word *port* in English, but we say **Puerto Rico**. **Puerto Rico** means "the rich port". **Rico** means *rich* or *nice* or *tasty* or *sweet*. So *port* becomes **puerto**. We see the *o* is splitting into *ue*. We have the word *force* in English, in Spanish this is **fuerza**. We have the word *school*, in Spanish this is **escuela**. We have *corp* in like *corporate*, which means *body*. If *Corp* means *body* in *corporate*, how do you think it is in Spanish?

S: **Cuerpo.**

T: **Cuerpo.** Good. We have *innovative*, and this *nov* in *innovative* means *new*. When you do something innovative, you do something new. And the word for *new* in Spanish is **nuevo**. So you saw the *o* splitting there. You might have heard **pueblo** before. **Pueblo** means a *village* or a *people*. *Population* in Spanish is one of these exceptions. It's not **populación**, it's **población**. And you can

see the connection between **población** and **pueblo**, which means *village* or *people*. A *people*. You can see the *o* in *pob-* splitting into *ue* in **pueblo**. *Mortgage*, by the way, actually means "death pact". You have *mort-*, which is the Latin root for *death*, and *-gage*, which means *pact*. The word for *dead* in Spanish is - have a guess.

S: **Muerto** or **muerte**.

T: Well actually, here, one you have the noun, **la muerte** is *the death*. So the noun is the word you put *the* in front of. In school they tell you that it's the thing, the object. But this is not an object. We would think of it, we put *the* in front of it, it's a noun. **La muerte**. But then the adjective, which is describing, it's **muerto** or **muerta**. Or **muertos** or **muertas**. So you can see in those words between English and Spanish this phenomenon of this *o* splitting into *ue* when it takes the stress. So this is useful for us for present tense. We need to know this for present tense because if we have a verb like **dormir**, for example, that has an *o* in the root, when we stress it, it might split. What do you think **dormir** means?

S: *Staying still* or *dormant*?

T: Yeah, what does *dormant* mean? A dormant volcano. It actually means it's a sleeping volcano. Or *dormitory*, this is a nice connection to make as well. So **dormir** means *to sleep*. How do you say *I sleep*?

S: **Duermo**.

T: **Duermo**. Good. In Spanish if you want to say *I fall asleep*, you can say *I sleep myself*. So how would that sound?

S: **Me duermo**.

T: **Me duermo**. Which means *I fall asleep*, rather than **duermo**, *I sleep*. So you can say *I'm falling asleep*, **me duermo**. It's so boring, **me duermo**. *He sleeps*:

S: **Duerme**.

T: **Duerme**. Good. *They sleep*:

S: **Duermen**.

T: **Duermen.** What do you think **encontrar** means? **Encontrar:**

S: *To encounter.*

T: Good. Which probably means:

S: *To meet.*

T: Oh it does, it means that as well, but there's a more usual meaning as well.

S: *To find?*

T: Yes. So *I'm finding it* or *I find it*, how would you say that?

S: **Lo**, is it **encuentro**?

T: Yes it is.

S: **Lo encuentro.**

T: Good. Something useful to bear in mind is that different versions of the verb, either the "to" form or some other version, might be the noun. So you mustn't assume always that it's a verb. If you see **un encuentro** - *an encounter* - this is now a noun. *An encounter.* Whatever we can put *a* or *the* in front of is a noun. So, many times some version of the verb will be the noun. **Un encuentro** is *an encounter* but **encuentro**, *I encounter.*

**Demostrar** was *to demonstrate*, and if we get rid of this *de-*, we get **mostrar** which means *to show*.

**Mostrar.** So how would you say: *I show?*

S: **Mostro.**

T: It would be **mostro-**

S: **Muestro?**

T: **Muestro.** Good. *He shows:*

S: **Muestre**, wait. **Mostrar. Muestra.**

T: Good. **Muestra**. We don't need to roll the *r* here because it's just one *r*. **Muestra**. Good. And **una muestra** actually is a sample. So there is a noun there that shares that version. **Muestra**: *he shows, it shows, she shows, you (formal) show*. But **una muestra** is *a sample*. *They show*:

S: **Muestran**.

T: **Muestran**. Good.

## Track 17

T: So we've seen how two sounds in the verbs in the present tense might split when we put pressure on them. We've seen how *e* might become *ie*, so for example we have **querer** which means *to want*, but *I want* is:

S: **Quiero.**

T: **Quiero.** So we stress down on that *e* and it splits into *ie*. And this will happen for the other versions that we learned as well. So how do you say *he wants* or *she wants* or *you* (formal) *want*?

S: **Quiere.**

T: **Quiere.** *They want:*

S: **Quieren.**

T: **Quieren.** Good. And *you* (informal):

S: **Quieres.**

T: Good. *What do you want?:*

S: **¿Qué quieres?**

T: Yeah. **¿Qué quieres?** Good. So another example where this will happen is with the verb **perder**, which means *to lose*. It's related to *perish*. So how would you say: *I lose*?

S: **Pierdo.**

T: **Pierdo.** And *he loses*, *she loses*:

S: **Pierde.**

T: **Pierde.** *They:*

S: **Pierden.**

T: Good. And *you* (informal):

S: **Pierdes.**

T: **Pierdes.** Good. So we saw that the *e* can split into *ie*, and we also saw that an *o* in the base of the verb can split into *ue*. So we saw, for example, **poder** is *to be able*. And then we have **puedo**, *I can, I am able*. We had **dormir**, what did **dormir** mean?

S: *To sleep.*

T: Good. And **duermo**:

S: *I sleep.*

T: Good. What changed when we added **me**? **Me duermo**:

S: I think it's *I fall asleep*.

T: Yes. *I sleep myself, I fall asleep*. Good. So we can expect to see these *o*'s split, but not always.

For example, *to eat* was? *To eat*:

S: **Comer.**

T: **Comer.** And *I eat*:

S: **Como.**

T: **Como.** So it didn't split there. So there's no way to know where it will, where it won't. Most of the time it will and you just have to kind of experiment and see what happens. And you will always get the feedback when you try to see if it splits or not. You'll also develop an intuition of where you should do it. So **colgar**, for example, is *to hang*. So if you want to say *I hang*:

S: **Cuelgo.**

T: **Cuelgo.** Good. *He hangs*:

S: **Cuelge**, no it's **colgar**, so it's **cuelga**.

T: **Cuelga.** Why do you think you said **cuelge** first?

S: Well the reason you explained before with the- because it has an /e/ sound before, it seems to go more.



T: Exactly, it fits more. So you will find yourself doing that. How do you get out of doing that, how do you stop that happening?

S: By going back to the “to” version of the verb.

T: Exactly, and then you're in control. **Colgar**, -ar verb, **cuelga**. Good. *They hang*:

S: **Cuelgan**.

T: Good. *They hang it*:

S: **Lo cuelgan**.

T: **Lo cuelgan**. *They hang them*:

S: **Los cuelgan**.

T: Good. *She hangs them*:

S: **Los cuelga**.

T: Good. **Los cuelga**. Words in English that begin *al-*, so not end *-al* like *normal*, **normal**, *metal*, **metal**, they begin *al-*, they come from Arabic. This *al-* means *the* in Arabic. And in Arabic it's written with the word. It's written as one word. It's all stuck together. So when words came in from Arabic they kind of came in most of the time with this *al-*, which meant *the*. So for example, *alcohol*, and when we say *the alcohol*, we are actually saying something like “the the alcohol”, something like this. The verb to take is **tomar**. **Tomar**. *T-o-m-a-r*.

S: **Tomar**.

T: **Tomar**. And this is also used like *to drink*. So it's used like *take* generically, generally, but also *to drink*. How would you say: *I don't drink alcohol*, *I don't take alcohol*?

S: **No tomo alcohol**.

T: Good. **No tomo alcohol**. *Sugar* in Spanish is **azucar**.

S: **Azucar**.

T: **Azucar**. Or in Spain because we have a *z* here, it will be */athucar/* in most of Spain. Now, this is also an Arabic word, and it's the same word as *sugar* in English. Might not look like it. What's

happened here? In Arabic, the *l* of *al* - the word for *the* - assimilates, changes to match the next letter if the next letter is kind of close to it. It does this with about half the letters. So in Arabic actually, instead of **alzucar**, you say **azucar**. And this passed into Spanish. But in English we got the word without the *the* at the beginning this time. This time *sugar* came in without the *the* at the beginning. So they look kind of different, and sound rather different: *sugar*, **azucar**. But again they're the same word. So how would you say: *I don't take sugar?*

S: **No tomo azucar.**

T: Good. **No tomo azucar. Arroz**, *rice*, is also an Arabic word. It's actually **al ruz**, *the rice*. But again in Spanish, the *l* assimilated to the next *r*, as it does in Arabic and instead of **al ruz** like in arabic, **arruz**, we ended up with **arroz**.

S: So it's two *r*'s?

T: Two *r*'s.

S: So is **azucar** with two *s*'s?

T: Nope. It's with a *z* here because two *s*'s are not a combination you find in Spanish. So for example, in the word *possible*, we have two *s*'s there in English. But in Spanish when we write **posible**, we write one *s*. The same with *passion*; we write one *s* in Spanish, **pasión**. So you don't get two *s*'s together in Spanish. But you do get two *r*'s together to differentiate between the normal *r* and the rolling *r*. So in Spanish we have *a-r-r-o-z*. It's just assimilation of **al ruz: arruz**, to Spanish **arroz**. And it's the same word that's in English, *rice*. So how do you say: *I want rice?*

S: **Quiero arroz.**

T: **Quiero arroz.** Good. *Algebra*. How would that be in Spanish?

S: **Algebra?**

T: /Al-juh-

bra/ S:

**Algebra.**

T: **Algebra.** Good. Spanish has a lot more Arabic than English. The south of Spain was part of the Muslim world for 800 years, so the languages had a lot of contact. And you get more words in

Spanish that you don't have in English that are from Arabic. So for example, **aceite**, *oil*. In Arabic this is **zet**. **Aceite**. **Aceituna**, *olive*, **zetun** in Arabic. **Alfombra**, which means *carpet*, **almohada**, which means *pillow*, all of these words they came in from Arabic. When you find *al-* at the beginning, with maybe a couple of exceptions, it's from Arabic. So we said *I take* is **tomo**.

How is: *he takes, she takes, it takes, you (formal) take?*

S: **Toma**.

T: **Toma**. Good. *You* (informal)? Talking to a friend:

S: **Tomas**.

T: Good. How would you say *what are you taking?* This could be a way to ask *what do you want to drink?*

S: ¿**Qué tomas?**

T: ¿**Qué tomas?** *To drink* exists. It's **beber**, **beber**. And the word *drink*, the noun: **una bebida**, *a drink*. **Una**, we have *a* for feminine words - **una bebida** or **la bebida**, *the drink*, comes from **beber**. But **tomar**, *to take*, is extremely common. *They take*:

S: **Toman**.

T: **Toman**. Good. Now there's one more version of the verbs that we didn't learn yet, which was the “we” version. We didn't learn how to say *we want* or *we have*. Now *we take* is **tomamos**. Explain to me what I did then to get *we take*. If I go from **tomar** to **tomamos** what am I doing?

S: You took out the *-r* and put a *-mos* at the end.

T: But to make it fit in with your-

S: Well you took out the *-ar*, the *-ar* sound, and you put in the *-amos* sound.

T: Good. This is very nice to think about it this way because then you fit it in with what you've been doing up until now. Taking off the *-ar*, *a-r*, and putting in your ending. So you take off *-ar* and you put on *-amos* and you get the “we” form. So, how is: *to speak?*

S: **Hablar**.

T: **Hablar.** And *we speak*:

S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** Good. So with *-amos* we're adding on two syllables, and the accent is going on the second last syllable. So it's in a different position, that accent, to the other versions. If we look at **tomo, toma, toman, tomas, tomamos**, the accent is moving. Again, *to speak*:

S: **Hablar.**

T: *I speak*:

S: **Hablo.**

T: *She speaks*:

S: **Habla.**

T: **Habla.** *They speak*:

S: **Hablan.**

T: *You (informal)*:

S: **Hablas.**

T: *We*:

S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** Good. So this affects the split of the *e* or the *o* in the root of the verb. Because we said that it splits because you stress it. But in the “we” form we don't actually stress it. So let's look at this. What was *to find* or *to encounter*?

S: **Encontrar.**

T: **Encontrar.** *I find*:

S: **Encuentro.**

T: **Encuentro.** *I find* or *I'm finding*. *He finds*:

S: **Encuentra.**

T: **Encuentra.** Good. You went back to the "to" form, right?

S: Yep.

T: *They*:

S: **Encuentran.**

T: Good. And *you* (informal):

S: **Encuentras.**

T: Good. Now *we*. You're not stressing that *o* anymore so it's safe. It's not going to split.

S: **Encontramos.**

T: Very good. **Encontramos.** We don't stress it, so it doesn't split. What was *demonstration*?

S: **Demonstración. Demostración.**

T: **Demostración.** So how would you say: *to demonstrate*?

S: **Demostrar.**

T: **Demostrar.** If you take away this *de-*, which actually means *of* in Spanish. If you get rid of it you're left with **mostrar** and what does **mostrar** mean?

S: *To show.*

T: *To show. I show or I'm showing:*

S: **Mostro.**

T: It should be **mostro**, but-

S: **Muestro.**

T: Good. **Muestro.** And *he*, or *she/it/you* (formal):

S: **Muestra.**

T: Good. *They* or *you guys*:

S: **Muestran.**

T: **Muestran.** *You* (informal):

S: **Muestras.**

T: *We*:

S: **Mostramos.**

T: Very good. **Mostramos.** You're not accenting anymore that *o*, so it doesn't split. **Mostramos.**

How do you say *to think*? And we said it's related to the word *pensive*.

S: **Pensar.**

T: **Pensar.** Good. *I think*:

S: **Pienso.**

T: **Pienso.** There the *e* splits when we stress it. If you want to say *I think so*, you can just say *I think that yes. I think that yes. That* is the same as what?

S: **Que. Pienso que sí.**

T: **Pienso que sí.** *I think so*, **pienso que sí.** Good. *He thinks* or *she thinks*, *you* (formal) *think*:

S: **Piensa.**

T: Good. **Piensa.** *They*:

S: **Piensan.**

T: *You* (informal):

S: **Piensas.**

T: *What do you think?*:

S: **¿Qué piensas?**

T: Good. If you say *what do you think to do*, we said that this means *what do you plan on doing*. You can just say *what do you think to do*. What was *to do*? *To do* or *to make* which begins with a silent *h*:

S: **Hacer.**

T: **Hacer.** Good. *So what do you think to do, what do you plan on doing?:*

S: **Qué-** You informal? **Qué piensas hacer.**

T: Good. **Qué piensas hacer.** Now how would you say: *we think?*

S: **Pensamos.**

T: Good. **Pensamos.** So you're not splitting there. **Pensamos.** The verb *to close, to close*, is **cerrar**.  
*c-e-r-r-a-r. Cerrar.*

S: **Cerrar.**

T: Good. Or in most of Spain, */therrar/*. How would you say: *I close?*

S: **Cierro.**

T: **Cierro.** Good. *She closes, he closes, you (formal) close:*

S: **Cierra.**

T: **Cierra.** Good. So how would you say: *we close?*

S: **Cerramos.**

T: Good. So we're seeing that really this issue of the *e*'s and the *o*'s splitting is an issue about stress, and it's only when we stress them down that they split under that pressure. When we don't, they are intact.

## Track 18

T: So for *-ar* verbs, we have *-amos* in the present for *we*. Now for *-er* verbs, we have *-emos* for the *we*, and for *-ir* verbs we have *-imos*. This is the only time in the whole language that we find a difference between *-er* and *-ir* verbs. They're one group, but here - and it's the only time in the entire language - we have a difference between the two of them; in the present for *we*. For *-ir* verbs we have *-imos* and for *-er* verbs we have *-emos*. So **preferir**. What do you think that means, **preferir**?

S: *Prefer*.

T: Good. *To prefer*. *To prefer*. We want to think with the "to" whenever the verb ends in an *r* it's going to help us just to think of that as "to". *To prefer*. **Preferir**. So how would you say: *I prefer*?

S: **Prefero**.

T: Good. It should be **prefero**.

S: **Prefiero**.

T: **Prefiero**. It splits. **Prefiero**. *He prefers*:

S: **Prefiere**.

T: **Prefiere**. *They* or *you* (plural):

S: **Prefieren**.

T: Good. How would you say *we prefer* (and **preferir** has an *-ir* ending)?

S: **Preferimos**.

T: **Preferimos**. So there the *-er* doesn't split, and also the *i* of *-ir* is appearing in the endings for the first time in the present tense. **Preferimos**. Good.

What was *to come*? It had something to do with *convenient*, when things "with-come".

S: **Venir**.

T: **Venir**. And how would you say: *we come* or *we're coming*?



S: **Venimos.**

T: **Venimos.** Good. *To live* in Spanish is **vivir**. *V-i-v-i-r*.

S: **Vivir.**

T: You might know this from **viva la revolución**, you might have heard that somewhere. *Long live the revolution: viva la revolución*. Or you might have even heard **viva Las Vegas**: *long live Las Vegas*. **Vivir**: *to live*. How do you say: *I live*?

S: **Vivo.**

T: **Vivo.** *Here* in Spanish is **aquí** or **acá**. **Aquí** in Spain, and **acá** in Latin America. Everybody understands both. It's an extremely common word so you don't have to worry **aquí** or **acá**. So *I live here*:

S: **Vivo aquí.**

T: **Vivo aquí, Vivo acá.** Good. *I don't live here*:

S: **No vivo aquí.**

T: Good. *But he lives here*. And let's stress that because we're contrasting. *But HE lives here*:

S: **Pero él?**

T: Yes.

S: **Vive aquí.**

T: Good. Let's make it all together. *I don't live here, but he lives here*:

S: **No vivo aquí, pero él vive aquí.**

T: Good. And don't be afraid to try the soft *b*. If it's too difficult then it's not a problem that you pronounce the */vuh/*. Maybe you want to pronounce the */vuh/* at the beginning and then see what happens. But the more you pronounce like how people are speaking around you, the more you understand. *To know* is:

S: **Saver.**

T: **Saber.** This is a *b*.

S: It's a *b*, **saber**.

T: **Saber.** This is a *b* so you're not going to pronounce a *v*. **Saber.** So we have **vivir**, *to live*. And we need to open up the association of the letter *v* to include that soft *b*. Maybe you look up the word in the dictionary for summer which is **verano** or */berano/*. Now if you just program your mind with **verano** maybe you won't get it when you hear */berano/*. So it always makes sense to pronounce the words the way people around you are pronouncing. So if you are practicing Spanish with Colombians, take their accent. If you are practicing with people from Rio de la Plata, Buenos Aires, Montevideo, who have kind of a particular accent, take that accent as well. If you're practicing with people from Madrid, take their accent. The more you speak like the people you're listening to, the easier you understand. **Vivir**, *to live*. How is: *we live*?

S: **Vivimos.**

T: **Vivimos.** There we have the *i* popping up: **vivimos**. But for the other versions, we're going to have the */e/*. So *he lives*:

S: **Veve.**

T: Some vowel harmony you're making there, **Vivir**? The */e/* is correct but you changed the beginning to match that */e/*.

S: **Vive.**

T: Good. **Vive.** Before you said **veve**. This is vowel harmony again. So you must consciously take off that ending, see what you're left with, **vivir** - **viv**, and put on your ending: **vive** - *e*. Good.

*They live, or you guys:*

S: **Viven.**

T: **Viven.** *They live here:*

S: **Viven aquí.**

T: **Viven aquí, viven acá.** The word for *where* is **dónde, dónde**. So how would you say: *¿where do they live?:*

S: **¿Dónde viven?**

T: *I want to know where they live:*

S: **Quiero saber dónde viven.**

T: Good. **Quiero saber dónde viven.** Good. **Entender** is *to understand*. **Entender**. We said we can use **comprender** as well, which might be easy to remember, but **entender** is much more common. How do you say: *I understand?*

S: **Entiendo.**

T: **Entiendo.** Good. The *e* splits: **entender-entiendo**. *He understands:*

S: **Entiende.**

T: **Entiende.** *He doesn't understand:*

S: **No entiende.**

T: *Why doesn't he understand?*

S: **¿Por qué no entiende?**

T: **¿Por qué no entiende?** Good. *I want to know why he doesn't understand:*

S: **Quiero saber por qué no entiende.**

T: **Quiero saber por qué no entiende.** How do you think you would say: *we understand?*

S: **Entendemos.**

T: Good. So for *-er* verbs we have *-emos*. So this is the only difference in the entire language between *-er* verbs and *-ir* verbs. For everything else they are exactly the same. But for *we* in the present tense, we get *-imos* and *-emos*. **Vivir-vivimos**, **venir-venimos**, **preferir-preferimos**, and then for *-er* verbs *-emos*. **Entender-entendemos**. **Perder**, which we said was *to lose*. So how do you say: *we lose?*

S: **Perdemos.**

T: **Perdemos.** Good. The word for *always* in Spanish is **siempre**. So how would you say: *we always lose?* (You can put the **siempre** before or afterwards.)

S: **Siempre perdemos.**

T: **Siempre perdemos.** *We always lose.* Or **perdemos siempre.**

## Track 19

T: We said that the word for *always* was **siempre**.

S: **Siempre**.

T: Good. Now if you know Italian or some other Latin language, maybe you have something like **sempre** in that language, and you can see again that the *e* is splitting between **sempre** and **siempre**. So if you know one of these other languages, or have studied them, it can be useful just to notice that. And just noticing that helps you internalize this new word. So for example, *well* in Spanish is **bien** like in the beginning of *welcome*, **bienvenido**. This in Italian is **bene**. We see that we get rid of the *e*, the last *e*, and the *e* in the middle splits. You have from French **bon** for *good*. What do you think *good* might be in Spanish? What do you think you will do to make that more Spanish?

S: **Bueno**.

T: **Bueno**. We also said that **vamos** meant *we are going* or *let's go*, and it's something you're gonna hear all the time. **Vamos, vamos, let's go**.

Now, another useful skill that we want in language learning is to work backwards, not just to work from the “to” form, take off the *-ar* or the *-er* or *-ir* and add bits on. But we want to get in the habit of also working backwards, because maybe we see or hear somewhere a word like **vamos**, and we want to be able to work backwards from **vamos** to get the other versions. Taking off the ending which is for *we*, and putting our other bits on. So could you work out from **vamos** how it would be *he goes* or *is going*, *she goes* or *is going*, *you (formal) go* or *are going*?

S: The thing is you don't know the ending of the “to” form.

T: If you have *-amos*, you know which is your vowel, no?

S: */a/*.

T: */a/*. So, work backwards.

S: Ah, yes, okay, so **va**?

T: **Va**. What does that mean? **Va**:

S: *He/she/it or you (formal) are going.*

T: Good. **Va.** How would you make that *you* (informal)?

S: **Vas.**

T: **Vas.** Good. If you want to say *where are you going*, you will hear *to where are you going?* What was the word for *to*?

S: **A.**

T: **A.** So how would you say *To where are you going?*:

S: **¿A dónde vas?**

T: **¿A dónde vas?** What would be *they go*? Or *you* (plural) *go*:

S: **Van.**

T: **Van. Van.** Good. So we can work backwards. **Vamos-va-vas-van.** What was the *I* version? It was irregular and we remembered it by thinking *I'm going on a voyage*:

S: **Voy.**

T: Now the “to” form *to go* is **ir**. *I-r* all by itself: **ir**. This is *to go*. So it's very irregular. And this is actually because this verb is two verbs that kind of stuck together to form one verb over time. So in French you have like **aller**, which means *going*, and in English we get *alleyway* from this. An *alleyway* is like a road, no? And this is related to **ir**. So **ir** comes from one verb, historically. And then the versions of **ir** actually come from a different verb. So they kind of stuck together over time and they give us this very irregular situation. That's just for interest, we don't need to know any of this. All we need to know is **voy** from *voyage* and **vamos** and we can work backwards from **vamos** and there we have the complete set. **Voy, vamos, va, vas, van.** But *to go* is **ir**. they are coming from two different verbs historically, which is why we have **ir**, which is an *-ir* verb, but *a* coming up for all of the different versions. So how would you say *I want to go*?

S: **Quiero ir.**

T: Good. *I can go. I have the power to go*:

S: **Puedo ir.**

T: Good. *I must go*:

S: **Debo ir.**

T: **Debo ir.** *I have to go.* So not *I must go*, **debo ir**; *I have to go.* What is *I have* from **tener**?

S: **Tengo.**

T: **Tengo.** And what do we add to that to get the meaning of *have to*?

S: **A?**

T: **Que.** Like I said there's no comfortable translation for it, but we add on **que** to **tengo** and we get the feeling of "have to" rather than the feeling of possession. So *I have to go*:

S: **Tengo que ir.**

T: **Tengo que ir.** *I have to go now*:

S: **Tengo que ir ahora.**

T: Good. The word for *tonight* is *this night*: **esta noche. Esta noche.** So *I have to go tonight, I have to go this night*:

S: **Tengo que ir esta noche.**

T: Now **noche** is feminine. We know this because **esta**, the word for *this*, is ending in an *a*. So how would you say: *the night*?

S: **La noche.**

T: **La noche.** So we said that words ending *a* are feminine, or there are feminine endings like *-ión* or *-idad*. **La opinión, la oportunidad.** If it ends in an *e*, there's actually no way of knowing whether it's masculine or feminine by the word. You have to look up what's around it, or in the dictionary it will tell you. But if you hear it in conversation, you have a look at what's around it, **esta noche**, and then you can go oh okay, so **noche** is feminine. Another example of a feminine word that ends in an *e* is **carne, carne.** What do you think **carne** means? It's not at all obvious. You have *carnage* in English. It was just *carnage*. **Carne** is *meat. Meat.* And it's a feminine word. So *the meat*:

S: **La carne.**

T: **La carne.** *I don't eat meat:*

S: **No como carne.**

T: **No como carne.** The word for *and* in Spanish is **y**. And it's just spelt with a y by itself. **Y**.

S: **Y.**

T: *I don't eat meat and I don't drink, or I don't take, alcohol.* So **tomar** was *to take*, **tomar**. And **comer**, *to eat*. So how would you say *I don't eat meat, and I don't take alcohol? I don't drink alcohol.*

S: **No como carne.**

T: *And:*

S: **Y.**

T: *I don't drink alcohol:*

S: **No tomo alcohol - alcohol.**

T: **Alcohol.** Good. Because we don't pronounce *h* in Spanish, do we? **No como carne y no tomo alcohol.** Or If you wanted to say *I eat meat, and I take alcohol; I eat meat, and I drink alcohol,* how would that be?

S: **Como carne y tomo alcohol.**

T: Good.



## Track 20

T: We mentioned that with future context we can talk about the future using the present. For example, we had *tomorrow* which was:

S: **Mañana.**

T: **Mañana.** Good. We had *later*, or *more late*, which was:

S: **Más tarde.**

T: **Más tarde.** We had *tonight*, or *this night*:

S: **Esta noche.**

T: **Esta noche.** Good. Another one is **pronto**. What do you think **pronto** means?

S: *Now.*

T: **Ahora** was *now*, no?

S: *Soon?*

T: *Soon.* Yeah. You hear in English sometimes *get here pronto*. It's *get here soon*. So **pronto** is also future context. What was the verb *to see*, or *to view*?

S: **Ver.**

T: *He sees:*

S: **Ve.**

T: Good. *They:*

S: **Ven.**

T: *You* (informal):

S: **Ves.**

T: *We:*

S: **Vemos.**

T: Very good. The *I* version is a tiny bit irregular, it's **veo**. So you have *v-e-o*. So it's not **vo** as it should be, or */bo/*. It was too short; it became **veo**.

S: **Veo**.

T: *V-e-o. /beo/ or /veo/*. How would you say: *I'm seeing her later?*

S: **Veo ella más tarde**.

T: That means *I see she later*.

S: It's not **la**?

T: It is.

S: Oh so it's **la veo**.

T: **La veo**. Good.

S: **La veo más tarde**.

T: **La veo más tarde**. *I'm seeing her tonight:*

S: **La veo esta noche**.

T: Good. **La veo esta noche**. *We are seeing her soon. We are seeing her soon:*

S: **La venemos pronto**.

T: What is: *to see?*

S: Sorry it should be **vemos?**

T: Yes. So no guessing. No guessing at all. It's the only rule.

S: **La vemos pronto**.

T: Good. **La vemos pronto**. What if we say *we're seeing, we will see, them soon* but with this *them* we mean a female group? *We're seeing them soon:*

S: **Las vemos pronto**.

T: Good. **Las vemos pronto.** *He is seeing them soon.* And this *them*, they are still females. *He is seeing them soon:*

S: **Las ve pronto.**

T: Good. And *you* (informal):

S: **La ves pronto.**

T: *Them soon. You're seeing them:*

S: **Las ves pronto.**

T: Good. I'll make it a question: *are you seeing them soon?* The female *them*.

S: ¿**Las ves pronto?**

T: ¿**Las ves pronto?** *Aren't you seeing them soon?:*

S: ¿**No las ves pronto?**

T: ¿**No las ves pronto?** *Why aren't you seeing them soon?:*

S: ¿**Por qué no las ves pronto?**

T: Good. ¿**Por qué no las ves pronto?** Very good. So we saw that with future context, we don't need the future. If we don't have future context, we can still use the present to talk about the future using this *I go* or *I'm going*, which is present, but we can use it to talk about the future in Spanish as we do in English. *I'm going to see her*, and you're talking about the future. *We're going to see her*. So let's practice that - how would you say: *we're going to see her?*

S: **Vamos a verla.**

T: *Are you going to see him soon?* Speaking informally. *Are you going to see him soon?* So you can't work with **ir**, which is *to go*. You should probably work with **vamos** and work backwards.

S: **Vas. ¿Vas a verlo pronto?**

T: Good. ¿**Vas a verlo pronto?** The word for *us* is **nos**. **Nos**. So how would you say *are you going to see us soon?* *Are you going to see us soon?* And we're still speaking informally.

S: **¿Vas a vernos pronto?**

T: Very good. **¿Vas a vernos pronto?** Where else could that **nos** go?

S: At the beginning.

T: Before the changed verb.

S: **¿Nos vas a ver pronto?**

T: Very good. **¿Nos vas a ver pronto?** *Aren't you going to see us soon?*

S: **¿No vas a ver pronto- nos pronto?**

T: Good. **¿No vas a vernos pronto?** Or **¿No nos vas a ver pronto?** Either way. *Why aren't you going to see us soon?*

S: **¿Por qué no vas a vernos pronto?**

T: Good. So we've seen that we can use the present to talk about the future using “going to”, or also using future context. A word like *tomorrow, next week; next week* is “the week that comes”. And *the week* is **la semana. La semana.** How would you say *the week that comes*? So what is the word for *that*, which is the same as *what*?

S: **Que.**

T: **Que. La semana que,** *the week that, the week which, comes.* And here we mean *the week comes.* So it's *it comes.* So what is: *it comes*?

S: **Vene. Viene.**

T: Good. So next week is **la semana que viene.** *The week that comes. La semana que viene.* So you could say *let's speak,* and to say *let's speak* we know from **vamos** you can just use the “we” form. So *to speak* is:

S: **Hablar.**

T: **Hablar.** *We speak:*

S: **Hablamos.**

T: *Let's speak next week. Let's speak the week that comes.*

S: **Hablamos la semana que-** And now I've forgotten *come*.

T: It's okay. Okay. If we forgot it, we need to find it again. That's not any problem. Every time we do find it, we strengthen that process. And that's what we need, not to remember the word. The process we need to strengthen. I want you to know how to find *to come* and then to go from there. *It comes*. Take your time to find *it comes*.

S: **Vene.**

T: It would be **vene** but:

S: **Viene.**

T: *Let's speak the coming week:*

S: **Hablamos que-**

T: At the moment you have the whole sentence in your mind and you want to translate it. Now this process works when you're memorizing. But we're not memorizing. We're doing something else; we're building. So we must reduce it down to the smallest piece we could possibly think about, think about that piece, get it out, and then forget it. So the first bit is *we speak/let's speak*:

S: **Hablamos.**

T: *The week:*

S: **La semana.**

T: *Which, or that, comes.*

S: **Que vene- viene.**

T: **Viene.** Good. **Hablamos la semana que viene.** What was *to see*, or *to view*?

S: **Ver.**

T: **Ver.** What is *we see*?

S: **Vemos.**

T: **Vemos.** If you want to say *we see each other*, you say *we see us*. **Nos** can mean *us, ourselves, each other*, it can mean all of that. **Nos.** So how do you say: *we see ourselves*?

S: **Nos vemos.**

T: **Nos vemos.** This is a way of saying goodbye in Spanish. **Nos vemos**, *we see each other*. Now the future context here is the fact that you're saying goodbye. But we're using present because we know when we say **nos vemos** we don't mean we're seeing each other right now, we mean *we will see each other again*. We're not even mentioning that future context, but it's working. It's allowing us to use the present there. **Nos vemos, ciao.** Or you might want to say, *we will see each other next week*. How would you say that? So piece by piece. *We see each other*. I want all of your mental energy on that, and not thinking yet about *next week*, how you will say that. What you're worried about right now in this moment is how you're going to say *we see ourselves*. And even before that, just *we see*:

S: So it's **vemos**. And it's **nos vemos**.

T: Good. *The week that comes. So the week*:

S: **La semana que viene.**

T: Good. **Nos vemos la semana que viene.** So you see it's not important to remember **viene**. We don't want to remember **viene**, this is useless. In fact, if we memorize **viene**, we're just going to be glazing over the problem. What we want to internalize is the process of "how do I find this". So, we've seen that we can use the present to talk about the future using either **ir a**: *to go to*; **voy a**, **vamos a**, **va a**; or using some future context.

## Track 21

T: So, we have seen how we can use the present to talk about the future in Spanish using **voy a, vamos a**, or using some future context (**pronto-** *soon*, **mañana-** *tomorrow*, **la semana que viene-** *the week that comes- next week*).

But we can also use the present in Spanish to talk about the past, just as we can in English. In English and in Spanish we have three ways to talk about the past, or three main ways to talk about the past. We can say, for example: *I ate*. We can say: *I was eating*. And we can say: *I have eaten*.

Now, when we say *I have eaten*, we are using *I have*, which is the present, and then *eaten* is like a version of the verb which is kind of complicated in English. You say *I have eaten, I have gone, I have wanted. Wanted, eaten, gone*, they are all very different. So that is kind of complicated in English, how to build that. But in Spanish it is very simple.

So, we have: *I ate, I was eating, and I have eaten*. This *I have eaten* is going to be the first past that we learn. And we are actually using the present. Now, this *have* is not **tener**. **Tener** we use for possession, and we use with the combination of **que** to give this meaning of "have to". Now, the verb that we use for *have* in the sense of *I have eaten, I have gone*, in Spanish it's **haber**.

**Haber:** *h-a-b-e-r*. And of course we have the silent *h* there, in **haber**. **Haber** is *to have* in the sense of *I have eaten*. But **haber** is extremely irregular, there is no "habo", it is extremely irregular. But there is a very easy way we can remember all of the versions of **haber**, even though it is very irregular.

What are the two vowel sounds that we have inside of the verb **haber**?

S: /a/ and /e/.

T: Good, we have /a/ and /e/ inside the word **haber**, and we are going to use that to help us remember the versions. Let's start with **he**.

S: **He**.

T: All by itself, it means *I have*. It is spelled *h-e*. And of course, we have the silent *h* there from **haber** in **he** (*h-e*). *I have*. We actually saw already one other verb that forms its *I* version in this way. What was *to know*?

S: **Saber.**

T: **Saber.** And *I know* is?

S: **Sé.**

T: **Sé.** *I have* from **haber** is spelled *h-e*, just like **sé** from **saber** is spelled *s-e*. They are the only two verbs that form the *I* version in this way, in this very irregular way. So you get **sé** from **saber**, and you get **he** from **haber**. Different from **saber**, all of the versions of **haber** are irregular.

Now, *I* and *we* are connected. We can see how *we* is the plural of *I*. *I*, and then when I include *you* and I say *we*, it is like the plural of *I*. So, *I* and *we* are connected. So, just knowing that, if you had to guess what is *we have*, knowing that *I have* is **he**, what do you think you would guess?

S: Hes?

T: This works with nouns and adjectives. So, it is a very good example of why, whilst we are avoiding grammatical terminology, we want to know what type of word we are dealing with, because different words behave in different ways. Nouns, words you can put *the* or *a* in front of: **la semana**, **una semana**- *the week, a week*; and adjectives, words that describe, that you can put *is* in front of: *is red, is tall*: these words use *-s* for plural. But we have never seen the verb do that, have we? What does the verb use for *we*?

S: **-amos.**

T: Or?

S: **-emos.**

T: Or?

S: **-imos.**

T: And what do they have in common, *-amos, -emos, -imos*?

S: The *-mos*.

T: Good, ok. So if **he** is *I have* (*h-e*), how do you think it might be *we have*?

S: **Hemos.**



T: **Hemos.** Good. So, from **haber** you get **he** and **hemos**, no? And we don't want to memorise this, like we said we can think just this thought, just the thought "What vowels do we have in **haber**? /a/ and /e/. Ok: **he**. **He** by itself is *I*, it is connected to *we*: **he** and **hemos**."

Now we go to the other vowel /a/. *H-a* all by itself (*h-a*) **ha** means *she has, it has, he has, you (formal) have*. Now I am sure you can tell me the rest of them. What are the other versions? What is *they have*?

S: **Han.**

T: Good. So, we start with this base of **he** and **ha**, and we can remember that just by looking at the vowels that are inside **haber**. And then, we can add on what we need. So, we have **he** for *I have*, **hemos** for *we have*, we have **ha** (*h-a*) for *he/she/it/you (formal) have or has*, you added an *-n* and what did you get?

S: **Han.**

T: And what does that mean?

S: *They have.*

T: Or?

S: *You guys have.*

T: Good. And how would you say *you have* informally?

S: **Has.**

T: **Has.** Good. And that is your set: **he-hemos, ha-has-han**. So you have two key vowel sounds /e/ and /a/. **He-hemos** for *I* and for *we* (for *I* and the plural of *I* which is *we*). And then you have **ha** for *he-she-it*, **han** for *they*, **has** for *you (informal)*. Now we need to learn how to make *eaten*, how to make *gone*, how to make *wanted*, if we want to say *I have eaten, I have gone, I have wanted*. This is very simple in Spanish. *-ar* verbs will lose their *-ar*, they will lose their final *-ar*, and they will put *-ado* on the end. So for example, we have *to speak* which is **hablar**. If you want to build *spoken*, you take off that *-ar* and you put on *-ado*.

S: **Hablado.**

T: **Hablado.** Now we can speak about the past. Now we can say *I have spoken*, and we need to think about the two bits separately. *I have spoken*:

S: Is it **he**? **He hablado.**

T: Very good. **He hablado.** *I haven't spoken.* Where do you think the *no* is going to go? *I haven't spoken*:

S: In the beginning.

T: Good.

S: **No he hablado.**

T: Very good. **No he hablado.** *I haven't spoken. We have spoken?*

S: **Hemos hablado.**

T: **Hemos hablado.** *He has spoken*:

S: **Ha hablado.**

T: Good. *She has spoken?*

S: **Ha hablado.**

T: Good. *They?*

S: **Han hablado.**

T: *You (informal)?*

S: **Has hablado.**

T: Perfect, well done. Now, this is actually more useful, this past, than what you might think it is, because this is used even more in Spanish than it is in English. So maybe you want the past *I spoke*, but you can use, for now, *I have spoken*. This "have past" is very popular and used much more than in English. So, how would you say *anticipation*?

S: **Anticipación.**

T: Good, and *to anticipate*?

S: **Anticipar.**

T: Good. How would you say *we have anticipated it*? So, there is a few things you have to think about. Think about them separately, then put them together. *We have anticipated it.*

S: **Hemos anticiparlo.**

T: So, to get *anticipated* you take away the *-ar*, and you put *-ado*.

S: Ah! Yes. **Hemos anticipado lo.**

T: And where does that **lo** go? Because **anticipado** is not like-

S: Ah! It has changed now, so it is in the beginning.

T: Yes.

S: So, **lo hemos anticipado.**

T: Good. **Lo hemos anticipado.** The word for *for*, like in time, *we have anticipated it for a long time* for example, is **por**. **Por.**

S: **Por.**

T: You might know **por favor**, which means *please* in Spanish. Which means "for a favour". **Por favor**, "for a favour". So this **por** is also *for*, in the sense of "for periods of time." So, if you want to say *we have anticipated it for a long time*, we will just say *we have anticipated it for much time*. And maybe there are some bits in there that you think you don't know. But we will see when we get to them. So, the first bit is *we have anticipated it*.

S: **Lo hemos anticipado.**

T: Good. *For*:

S: **Por.**

T: *A lot or much*:

S: **Mucho.**

T: *Time*. We saw briefly before that we have a word in English that we use for *time*, that we only use with music. What was that word?

S: *Tempo*.

T: *Tempo*. And how did it change in Spanish?

S: **Tiempo?**

T: **Tiempo**, yes! The *e* split. So: *we have anticipated it for a long time*.

S: **Lo hemos anticipado por mucho tiempo**.

T: Good. **Lo hemos anticipado por mucho tiempo**. Very good. Maybe you want to ask somebody *Did you celebrate?* And you think "oh, I don't know *did* yet in Spanish". You can just say: *Have you celebrated?* And that is fine. Like I said, it is used even more in Spanish than in English.

So, some certain situations it might sound a little bit uncomfortable the translation into English. But in Spanish, most of the time, it is going to be fine. So, *have you celebrated?* Let's speak informally.

S: **Has – celebración... celebrar... celebrado**.

T: Good, good.

S: So, **¿has celebrado?**

T: Good, **¿has celebrado?** *Haven't you celebrated?*

S: **¿No has celebrado?**

T: *Why haven't you celebrated?*

S: **¿Por qué no has celebrado?**

T: Good. What was the word for *where*?

S: **Dónde**.

T: **Dónde**. *Where have you celebrated?*

S: **¿Dónde has celebrado?**

T: Good. *Where have you celebrated it?*

S: ¿**Dónde lo has celebrado**?

T: Good. So, *-ar* verbs, we take away the *-ar* and we put *-ado*. And we get this version of the verb that we need after **haber**, which in English has many different forms. Like I said: *you have gone, wanted, eaten...* it changes a lot. But in Spanish we get rid of the *-ar* and we put *-ado*. We said that *to take*, and also sometimes *to drink*, is **tomar**. **Tomar**.

S: **Tomar**.

T: So how would you say *I have taken*?

S: **He tomado**.

T: **He tomado**. Good. *We have taken*:

S: **Hemos tomado**.

T: Good. *Has she taken it? Has she taken it?*

S: ¿**Han lo tomado**?

T: That is a guess, you are looking at me like it is a guess - I want you to establish your own thought process of how you are going to find it. So what is the first bit you need to think about? *Has she taken it?*

S: *Has she*.

T: Good. What is that?

S: Ok, so it is **he** and **hemos** for *I* and *we*.

T: Yes.

S: So it is.. oh! It is **ha!** It is just **ha**.

T: Yes. So, *has she taken it?*

S: ¿**Lo ha tomado**?

T: Sometimes I am going to build you up step by step, sometimes I am just going to give you the sentence and you need to deconstruct what thoughts you need to have first, and to divide it up into various thoughts to get the sentence, resisting any temptation to guess or to say something that we are not sure of. You can be sure and be wrong, there is no problem there, eh? But we want to think about it, dividing the sentence up into each individual thing we need to think about. First, *she has*, **ha**. *She has taken*, **ha tomado**. *She has taken it*. *It is lo*, where do I put the **lo**? Before the changed verb. **Lo ha tomado**.

## Track 22

T: So, we were learning how we can use the present to talk about the past, using **haber**, which is *to have*, in sentences like *I have gone*, *I have eaten*. What do you think **terminar** means?

**Terminar:**

S: *To terminate.*

T: And what, what verb would we use more commonly in English?

S: *Finish?*

T: *Finish.* **Terminar** is *to finish*. Do you remember how to say *I have* from **haber**? We can look at the two vowels we have in **haber**, and this will set us off.

S: Ah, yes.

T: Ok. So, *I have*:

S: Is it **he** or **ha**?

T: It's **he**. Good. So, *we have*:

S: **Hemos**.

T: Good. How do you spell **he**?

S: *H-e.*

T: *H-e.* Good. And that *h* comes from **haber**, that silent *h* that you have there. Good. So, how would you say *I have finished*? Firstly, how do you make *finished*? How do you get the word *finished* from **terminar**?

S: *-ado?*

T: Good. So, you have all the information, now you can build the sentence. *I have finished*:

S: **He terminado.**

T: Good. **He terminado.** And *I have finished it? I have finished it*:

S: **He lo terminado.**

T: What is the rule about where this **lo, la, me, te,** can go?

S: It's in the beginning of the sentence, actually, isn't it?

T: This would be a simplification of the rule that you might find unhelpful.

S: Well, if it was in the "to" form it would be at the end.

T: So, after the "to" form or:

S: Or before everything, everything else?

T: Before the changed verb. So this is the way you want to think about it. If we simplify the thought to "at the beginning or at the end", when there is other words there, we might be really confused about where we can put it. So, we must think "after the complete verb", the "to" form, or "before the changed verb". So if you say **he lo terminado**, you've actually got it after a changed verb, you put it after **he**. So, this is a very rare situation in Spanish, where we have two changed verbs together: **he terminado**. We see, usually after a changed verb we get a complete verb: **quiero terminar**, *I want to finish*; **puedo terminar**, *I can to finish*; **debo terminar**, *I must/I owe to finish*. So, here we have two changed verbs together, **he terminado**, weird situation, which means there is only one place it can go.

S: Before the **he**.

T: Yes.

S: It's **lo he terminado**.

T: Good. **Lo he terminado**. And *I have finished them*:

S: **Los he terminado**.

T: **Los he terminado**. So, with *-ar* verbs, we take off the *-ar* and we put *-ado*. With *-er/-ir* verbs, we take away the *-er* or the *-ir* and we put *-ido* to get this form of the verb that we need after **haber**.

S: Whether it is an *-e* - there is no *-edo*?



T: No. Like I said, there is only one difference between *-er* and *-ir* verbs, in all of the Spanish language, only one occasion where they are doing things differently and that was in the present for *we*. So, for example, we have **vender**, which means *to sell*, and how do you say *we sell*?

S: **Vendemos.**

T: Good. And we had **venir**, *to come*, and how do you say *we come*?

S: **Venimos.**

T: **Venimos.** So, we had *-emos* and *-imos*. This is the only time in the whole Spanish language that these two verbs are doing something differently. To get this form of the verb that we need after **haber** everything goes to *-ido*. So **vender** becomes?

S: **Vendido.**

T: **Vendido.** And **venir** becomes?

S: **Venido.**

T: **Venido.** Now we understand where is **bienvenido** from, *well-come*. **Perder**, which was *to lose*, becomes?

S: **Perdido.**

T: **Perdido.** Good. Now we can make some sentences. How do you say *I have lost*?

S: **He perdido.**

T: **He perdido.** What if you wanted to be emphatic and used the word for *I* to emphasize?

S: **Yo he perdido.**

T: Good. **Yo he perdido.** And, we said that there was a connection between *I* and *we*, that *we* is the plural of *I*, so this can help us remember that there is a little connection between **he** for *I have* and *we have*, which is?

S: **Hemos.**

T: **Hemos.** They both use */e/*: **he, hemos.** Good. So how do you say *we have lost*?

S: **Hemos perdido.**

T: **Hemos perdido. Nosotros.** **Nosotros** is the word for *we*, for a male or mixed group. If you are just females, what do you think you might say?

S: **Nosotras.**

T: **Nosotras.** Good. You pronounced an *s* there, which was very good, most English speakers find themselves accidentally saying /*nozotros*/, with a *z*. Not /*nozotros*/, but **nosotros**. It is an *s*.

**Nosotros.** Or **nosotras**. So how would you say *we have lost*, emphasizing?

S: **Nosotras-** sorry, **nosotros**.

T: Well, it could be.

S: **Hemos perdido.**

T: Good. **Nosotros** or **nosotras** (if you are all females) **hemos perdido**. Good. So, we had **he** and **hemos**, and then for the rest of the versions we go to the other vowel which was in this word **haber**.

So, give me the other versions. Firstly *he/she/it/you* (formal) *have/has*:

S: **Ha.**

T: So, let's start with that one, how would you say *he has lost*?

S: **Ha perdido.**

T: Good, and if you wanted to clarify or emphasize that it was *he* and not *she*, for example?

S: **Él?**

T: Close, **él**.

S: Sorry, **él**.

T: Good.

S: **Él ha perdido.**

T: **Él ha perdido.** And *she*?

S: **La?**

T: So, you must differentiate between *she* and *her*, don't just let that feminine idea come in your mind and pick one of these. You must take the time to decide which one is it. Is it *she* or is it *her*?

S: **Ella.**

T: Good. So *she has lost*:

S: **Ella ha perdido.**

T: Good. *You have lost*, informally:

S: **Has perdido.**

T: Good. Now, if you want to emphasize, if you want to say *YOU have lost*, the word for *you*, for informal, is **tú** (*t-ú*). **Tú.**

S: **Tú has perdido.**

T: Good. **Tú has perdido.** What was *I love you*?

S: **Te quiero.**

T: **Te quiero.** So, what is the difference between **tú** and **te**? It is the same as the difference between *she* and *her*, and *he* and *him*, only in English we don't have two separate words for *you* and *you* in those two different positions. *He sees, I see him.* So, *he sees*, we use *he*. Then *I see him*, we use *him*. This is very intuitive to us in English, we don't think about it. *She sees, I see her.* There we have the same change. But *you* doesn't change, *you see, I see you.* So, that might confuse us in Spanish because in English it doesn't change, but all we need to understand is that **tú** goes in the group of **él, ella, yo: tú** (*you*); and **te** is in the group of those little words, **lo, la, me: te**. So, let's practise this. What was *to see* or *to view*?

S: **Ver?**

T: **Ver.** And *I see* is a little bit irregular, do you remember how it was?

S: **Veo.**

T: So, how would you say *I see it, I see him* or *I see you* (formal)?

S: **Lo veo.**

T: **Lo veo.** Good. *I see her* or *I see it* (feminine thing) or *I see you* speaking formally to a female?

S: **La veo.**

T: **La veo.** Or how would you say *I see them* (females) or *I see you* (plural, all females) or *I see them* (feminine objects)?

S: **Las veo.**

T: Good. And what if they were masculine or mixed objects or people?

S: **Los veo.**

T: Good. One set of words - we have **me** for *me*, we have **te** for *you* (informal), we have **lo** for *he*, for masculine object, *you* (formal) or even for neuter, which kind of just means when something doesn't have gender, maybe you'd say *I want to see it* and that *it* refers to a situation or something like this, you will use a lot, and then from this the other ones come, but building from **lo**, so you change the *o* to *a*, to make it feminine, and you add your *-s* for plural. Which means one sound is left in this little set which is *us*, do you remember how is *us*?

S: **Nos.**

T: **Nos.** Good. So this is one set. Now lets practice the other set. How do you say *he sees*?

S: Is it **ve**?

T: Good. And what if you want to clarify or emphasize?

S: **Él ve.**

T: **Él ve.** Good. *She sees*:

S: **Ella ve.**

T: **Ella ve.** Good. *I see*:

S: **Yo veo.**

T: Good. Now we said the word for *we* is **nosotros**, not *us*, *us* is **nos**. *We* is **nosotros**. So *we see*:

S: **Nosotros vemos.**

T: **Nosotros vemos.** Good. We said that *you* (informal) was **tú. Tú.** The *you* in *you see*, **tú ves.**

Which means that we have also the formal *you* to learn, which is **usted. Usted.**

S: **Usted.**

T: **Usted.** Which is the formal *you*, it is actually a contraction of **vuestra merced**, which means *your honour*. Something like this contracted to **usted.** So this is the formal *you*. So how would you say *you see* talking formally?

S: **Usted ve.**

T: Good. *You see it* (talking formally):

S: **Lo ve usted?**

T: Or **usted lo ve.** It can be either way. The word order in Spanish is much more flexible than in English. **Lo ve usted. Usted lo ve.** Either way. How would you say *you see them* (still talking formally)?

S: **Usted ve los.**

T: Ok..

S: Sorry! **Los ve.**

T: Good. **Usted los ve.** Good. So, **usted** is flexible. **Los** is not flexible. **Usted los ve. Los ve usted.** Now, the word for *they*, the word for *they* is **ellos** (*e-l-l-o-s*, and this *l-l* in most Spanish dialects makes a /y/ sound. You might hear /ezhos/ around Río de la Plata in Buenos Aires of Argentina; Montevideo, Uruguay. You might hear like a /j/ kind of sound in Colombia /ejos/. But in the great majority of the Spanish speaking world double *l* and *y* make /y/: /eyos/ or /eyas/. I am sure you can work out the difference between the two. What is the difference between **ellos** and **ellas**?

S: **Ellos** is for males, or mixed group, and **ellas** is for females.

T: Good. So, how would you say *they see* emphasizing or clarifying that it's *they*?

S: **Ellos is it ven?**

T: Yes! **Ellos ven.** *They see them:*

S: **Ellos los ven.**

T: **Ellos los ven.** Good. Or we could have had any combination of gender: **ellas los ven, ellas las ven, ellos las ven,** etc. How would you say: *they see me?*

S: **Ellos me ven.**

T: Good. **Ellos me ven.** So we are understanding that we have two separate groups of very important words. The set of: **yo, él, ella, ellos, ellas, nosotros, tú,** and **usted. Yo veo. Tú ves. Usted/él/ella ve. Ellos or ellas ven.** And **nosotros vemos.** Then we have the other set of words - **me, lo, la, los, las, nos, te.**

## Track 23

T: So, I want us to run through the forms of **haber**, this *to have* that we use to go into the past. We said that we can remember them by looking at the two vowel sounds that we have inside the word **haber**. So give me *I have* and *we have*:

S: **He** and **hemos**.

T: Good. And give me the rest of the versions.

S: **Ha, has, han**.

T: Good. We said that nouns ending *a* are feminine nouns. So, for example, *the house* - **la casa**. So, words ending *a* are feminine. But, words ending *ma* are masculine. There's a small group of words that end *ma*, which are masculine words. For example, *the problem* in Spanish is **el problema**.

S: **El problema**.

T: Good. How would you say *Have you understood the problem? Have you understood the problem? What was to understand?*

S: **Comprender**.

T: **Comprender**, good. We can use **comprender** or we can use **entender**. But **comprender** is perfect here as well. *Have you understood the problem?* And let's talk formally, to **usted**.

S: ¿**Ha entendido el problema?**

T: Good. ¿**Ha entendido el problema?** Good. So, a very common error for people learning Spanish is to say **la problema**. Now, if we look at why these words ending *ma* are actually masculine, it's going to help us internalize it. So these words that end *ma* actually come from Greek. **Problema** in Greek is **provlima**. *System* in Greek is **systema**. In Spanish, it's **sistema**. So how would you say *the system*?

S: **El sistema**.

T: **El sistema**. So it's **el**. Now in Greek, these words are neuter words. In Greek, you have masculine, feminine, and neuter. And neuter words in Greek look like masculine words. They have a similar

word for *the*. They look kind of like masculine words. So when they went into Spanish, or into Latin, they got mistaken as masculine words. So if we can identify them, there's a key group of words we can avoid committing this error with. If it ends *ma*, it's probably from Greek and probably masculine. So how would you say *the system* again?

S: **El sistema.**

T: **El sistema.** How would you say *Have you understood the system?* (talking informally) *Have you understood the system?:*

S: **¿Has entendido el sistema?**

T: Good. **¿Has entendido el sistema?** Good. **Sentir**, in Spanish, **sentir** is *to feel*, related to sensation. So **sentir**, *to feel*. And you can also use it like *to perceive*, in the sense of smell. So, if you wanted to ask, for example, *Have you felt the aroma?* it would be a way of asking *Have you smelt the aroma? Have you felt it?* So how would you say that? *Have you felt the aroma?:*

S: **¿Has sentido el aroma?**

T: Good. **¿Has sentido el aroma?** Good. So **el** again. So we have **el: el problema, el sistema, el programa, el aroma, el panorama. El clima**, which is a little bit different in English, which means *climate*, **el clima**. And some others. *Have you understood the program?:*

S: **¿Has entendido el programa?**

T: Good. Again, how was *to lose?* (Perishable)

S: Perdir.

T: Close.

S: **Perder.**

T: **Perder.** Good. So how would you say *I have lost?*

S: **He perdido.**

T: Good. Now what if you wanted to emphasize **I** *have lost?*

S: **Yo he perdido.**



T: Good. Now if you want to say *I have got lost, I have got lost*, you can just say *I have lost myself*. We said that *I get ready* is *I prepare myself*. **Me preparo**. We don't use this in Spanish, *I get ready*. You say *I ready myself*. **Me preparo**. So you don't say *I get lost* or *I have got lost*. You say *I have lost myself*. So how would you say that?

S: **Me he perdido**.

T: Again

S: **Me he perdido**.

T: Yes. When you say it fluently, it doesn't actually sound any different. Which is why I asked for it again, to make sure that you were putting it. Because the /e/ of **me** and the /e/ of **he** will blend together. **Me he perdido**. Ahh. So that means *I have lost myself*, or *I have got lost*. Now what if you wanted to be emphatic as well and say *I have lost myself*?

S: **Yo me he perdido**.

T: Good. **Yo me he perdido**. How is *you have lost* (speaking informally)?

S: **Has perdido**.

T: Good. **Has perdido**. We said that the word for *you* in the sense of *you lose, you see*, not *I see you*, but *you see*, is **tú** for informal *you*: **tú**, *t-u*.

S: **Tú**.

T: So how would you say *YOU have lost*, being emphatic?

S: **Tú ha perdido**.

T: There's a bit of a contradiction there.

S: **Tú has perdido**.

T: Good. **Tú has perdido**. Good. So just as **me** can mean *me*, or *myself*, **te** can mean *you* or *yourself*. So how would you say *you have got lost, you have lost yourself*?

S: **Te has perdido**.

T: Good. **Te has perdido. Te has perdido**. And what if you wanted to be emphatic as well?

S: **Tú te has perdido.**

T: Good. **Tú te has perdido.** Very good. What was *we have*, from **haber**?

S: **Hemos.**

T: **Hemos.** Good. How would you say *we have lost it? We have lost it:*

S: **Lo hemos perdido.**

T: **Lo hemos perdido.** Now how would you say *we have lost ourselves, or we've got lost?*

S: **Nos hemos perdido.**

T: Good. **Nos hemos perdido.** And what if you wanted to say *WE have got lost, WE have lost ourselves?*

S: **Nosotros nos hemos perdido.**

T: Good. **Nosotros nos hemos perdido.** Good.

## Track 24

T: The word *to give* in Spanish is **dar**. *D-a-r*, **dar**.

S: **Dar**.

T: **Dar**. Good. *I give* is **doy**. So it's like *boy* ending *-oy*. **Doy**.

S: **Doy**.

T: Good. *I give it*:

S: **Lo doy**.

T: Good. *I give them*:

S: **Los doy**.

T: Good. And what if they were feminine things that you are giving?

S: **Las doy**.

T: Good. How would you say *he gives*?

S: **Da**.

T: **Da**. *He gives*, emphasizing *he*:

S: **Él da**.

T: **Él da**. Good. And *she gives*:

S: **Ella da**.

T: Good. How do you say *they give*?

S: **Ellos dan**.

T: Good! **Ellos dan** or **ellas** for feminine. **Ellas dan**. Good. *You (informal) give*?

S: **Das**.

T: **Das**. And if you wanted to emphasize this *you*?

S: **Tú das.**

T: Good. The word for *something* we said was **algo**. **Algo**. So how would you say *he is giving me something? He is giving me something*:

S: **Él me da algo.**

T: Good! **Él me da algo**. *They give me something*:

S: **Me dan algo.**

T: Good. **Me dan algo**. Now if you want to say *they give it to me, they give it to me*, in Spanish you would just say *they give me it*. The personal word **me** is going to come first and then *it* is going to come and the position where they go we know this already. So how would you say *they give me it? They give it to me*:

S: **Me lo dan.**

T: Very good. **Me lo dan**. Now emphasize or clarify.

S: **Ellos me lo dan.**

T: **Ellos me lo dan**. Good. Or **ellas** if they were female *they*. **Ellas me lo dan**. Good. We said that with some future context we don't need to use the future. So if you want to say *I will give it to you tomorrow*, you could just say *I give it to you tomorrow*. Lets talk informally, so informally how will you say *I give you it tomorrow*?

S: **Te lo doy mañana.**

T: **Te lo doy mañana**. Very common, very Spanish sounding sentence. **Te lo doy mañana**, *I give you it tomorrow*, sounds strange in English but perfect Spanish. **Te lo doy mañana**. How would you say *are you giving it to me tomorrow*? And let's speak formally, so complicated sentence in English. *Are you giving it to me tomorrow*? What we have to do in Spanish is just work out who is doing what. You work out who is doing what and to who and we build that, it's very simple in Spanish. Complicated sentence in English but not in Spanish. Talking formally, *are you giving it to me tomorrow*?:

S: Well it's **da**.

T: That's the first thing you should work out, good.

S: ¿**Me lo da mañana?**

T: Good. Now what if you wanted to emphasize *you*. Are **YOU** giving it to me tomorrow?:

S: And **usted** can come in the beginning or the end?

T: Yeah.

S: So ¿**usted me lo da mañana?**

T: ¿**Usted me lo da mañana?** ¿**Me lo da usted mañana?** ¿**Me lo da mañana usted?** These words **usted, yo, él, ella** are extremely flexible for different emphasis. Again it's not something we want to teach here, because those nuances of emphasis change depending on the dialect, and it's something that you pick up in real life because where people move it around is accompanied with a change in the voice and hand expressions and you understand in this case intuitively which is emphatic. *You guys* is **usted** but plural. Now if the word ends in a consonant in Spanish, you don't just add *-s*, you add *-es*. So how would it sound, *you guys*?

S: **Ustedes.**

T: **Ustedes.** Good. So now let's say *will you guys give it to us tomorrow?* So again we just wanna work out who is doing and to who or to what are they doing and then we can construct it. So, *are you guys giving it to us tomorrow?:*

S: So it's **dan**.

T: Yes.

S: It's **nos** and it's still **lo**.

T: Good.

S: ¿**Nos lo dan mañana?**

T: Good. Now this could mean *you guys* or *they give it to us tomorrow*. Now what if you wanted to clarify that it was *you guys*?

S: ¿**Ustedes nos lo dan mañana?**

T: Good. ¿Ustedes nos lo dan mañana? ¿Nos lo dan mañana ustedes? ¿Nos lo dan ustedes mañana? How do you say *I want to give? I want to give:*

S: **Quiero dar.**

T: Good. *I want to give you it*, talking informally. Informally, *I want to give it to you:*

S: **Quiero das.**

T: Work out the verbs first. *I want to give*, work that out first.

S: Oh! **Quiero dar.**

T: Good, *to give you* is something else, it's not *you give*. *I want to give*, **quiero dar**, *it to you:*

S: So it's **lo** and it's **te**.

T: Good. And in what order do they come?

S: It's **te lo quiero dar**.

T: Good.

## Track 25

T: So we've seen how **me** can mean *me, to me* or *myself* and **te** can mean *you, to you* or *yourself*. And **nos** can mean *us, to us* or *ourselves*. So we want to resist the temptation to translate this *to*. So for example: *he speaks to me*, we don't need this *to* because *me, me*, can mean *me, to me* or *myself*. So we want to resist the temptation to translate that *to*. So how do you say: *he speaks to me* or *he is speaking to me*?

S: **Habla me. Sorry, me habla.**

T: Yeah, don't let that *to* confuse you about the position it should go. It's still going before, **me habla**.  
*They speak to me:*

S: **Me hablan.**

T: Good! If you want to say *they speak to me about it*, you can just say *they speak me it* in Spanish.

S: **Me lo hablan.**

T: **Me lo hablan.** Very good. *They are speaking to me about it*. So this *to* and this *about* we notice Spanish tends not to need these words as much as English does. For example *to buy* was **comprar**, **comprar**.

S: **Comprar.**

T: Good. So this **me** other than *to me* can be *for me, from me*, we don't really need these words. So for example, if we want to say *he buys it for me* we can just say *he buys me it*. So **comprar** is *to buy*. *He buys it for me, he buys me it:*

S: **Me lo compra.**

T: Good. **Me lo compra.** So here we see **me** is like *for me* here but it's just **me**, we are just using **me**.  
*I buy it for you, speaking informally. I buy it for you:*

S: **Te lo compro.**

T: Good. **Te lo compro**. Now, if you want to say *shall I buy it for you*, *shall* in English, all it's doing really is just making it a question. *Shall I buy it for you?* So in Spanish just make it sound like a question.

S: ¿**Te lo compro**?

T: Yeah! ¿**Te lo compro**? *Shall I buy it for you?* Now this could actually even mean *from you*. Shall I buy it from you? So by the context we will understand the difference. Maybe you will hear if you travel to a Spanish speaking country people say “buy me”, selling things in the street. “Buy me something” is what you will hear. And they are probably not asking you to buy them something but to buy something from them. And it's understood and we don't really need to use these words like *from* or *for* most of the time. *To do* was **hacer, hacer**. How would you say *do you want to do* (speaking informally)?

S: **Hacer** is an irregular verb.

T: It doesn't matter, does it? *Do you want to do?*:

S: Ah! ¿**Quieres hacer**?

T: Good. *Do you want to do it?*

S: ¿**Quieres hacerlo**?

T: Good. ¿**Quieres hacerlo**? Now how do you think you would say: *do you want to do it for me?*:

S: ¿**Me lo quieres hacer**?

T: Yes. ¿**Me lo quieres hacer**? So, we are not using the word for *for*. We don't need it in Spanish, it's understood. Do you want to do it for me? ¿**Me lo quieres hacer**? ¿**Quieres hacérmelo**? Good. *The kitchen* in Spanish is **la cocina**, /la cosina/, or in most of Spain, /la cothina/. **La cocina**.

S: **La cocina**.

T: And *to cook* is **cocinar**. You just make a verb from **cocina, cocinar**. Actually this is where we get *concoction, concoction* from in English, “with cooking”. So how would you say *I cook* from **cocinar**?

S: **Cocino**.



T: Good. How do you say *he cooks* or *she cooks* or *it cooks* or **usted**, *you (formal) cook*?

S: **Cocina.**

T: Good. *You (informal)*?

S: **Cocinas.**

T: Good. And with emphasis or clarification if you want to use the word for *you*?

S: **Usted.**

T: But this is informal, **cocinas**.

S: Ah sorry! **Tú cocinas.**

T: **Tú cocinas.** Good. *They cook* or *you guys*?

S: **Cocinan.**

T: Good. What if you wanted to use the word for *they*, to emphasize or to clarify?

S: **Ellos cocinan.**

T: **Ellos cocinan.** Good. Or **ellas** if it's a female group. Or if you wanted to say *you guys are cooking* with the emphasis or the clarification?

S: **Ustedes cocinan.**

T: Good. **Ustedes cocinan.** And *we cook*? What is *we cook*?

S: **Cocinamos.**

T: Good. And with the emphasis or the clarification?

S: **Nosotros cocinamos.**

T: Good. **Nosotros cocinamos.** Good. How would you say *I can*? How is *I can*, related to *power*?

S: **Puedo.**

T: **Puedo.** Good. And *he can*:

S: **Puede.**

T: Good. **Puede**. And *you can* (informal):

S: **Puedes**.

T: Good. *Can you cook?:*

S: ¿**Puedes cocinar?**

T: Good. *Can you cook something for me?* So what was the word for *something*?

S: **Algo**.

T: Good. How do you think you are gonna say this in Spanish? *Can you cook something for me?:*

S: ¿**Me puedes cocinar algo?**

T: Good. ¿**Me puedes cocinar algo?** ¿**Puedes cocinarme algo?** Either way. So how would you say *I have cooked? I have cooked:*

S: **He cocinado**.

T: **He cocinado**. Good. So we said that this tense of *have cooked, I have cooked* instead of *I cooked*, we can use it more in Spanish than in English. So for example in English it sounds much more natural to say *I cooked at 6 o'clock*, but in Spanish it's not a problem to say *I have cooked at 6 o'clock*. So, *at 6 o'clock* is **a las seis**. What you actually mean when you say **a las seis** is **a las seis horas**. "At the six hours". A little bit like in English when you say "at sixteen hundred hours". **A las seis**. So how would you say *I have cooked at 6 o'clock? I cooked at 6 o'clock:*

S: **He cocinado a las seis**.

T: Good. **He cocinado a las seis**. *I have cooked at six o'clock. I cooked at six o'clock*. Good. The word for *eight* in Spanish is **ocho**. **Ocho**.

S: **Ocho**.

T: **Ocho**. We have this similar root in *octagon*, you know, a shape with eight sides. Or *octopus*, which has eight legs. Or in *October*, which, well now it's the tenth month, in the Roman calendar there were only ten months and October was month number eight. So, **ocho**, *eight*. How would you say *we have cooked at eight o'clock? We have cooked at eight o'clock:*

S: **Hemos cocinado a las ocho.**

T: Good. **Hemos cocinado a las ocho.** The word for *nine* in Spanish is **nueve**.

S: **Nueve.**

T: We can see in *November*, which used to be the ninth month. The *o* splits into *ue*, **nueve**. And we have the same with *ten*. *Ten* is **diez** or */dieth/* in most of Spain. **Diez**. What does that sound like, if you go back to our calendar?

S: *December?*

T: *December*, which used to be the tenth month and of course again an example of splitting. *Dec* to **diez**. **Quedar** in Spanish, **quedar**, means *to remain*, or *to be left over* and it actually has quite a few other meanings as well, it's quite a flexible verb, **quedar**. But for now, *to remain* or *to be left over*. *Q-u-e-d-a-r*. **Quedar**. And *q-u* in Spanish is always a *k* sound. You must resist any temptation to pronounce */qwedar/*, if you were to read this. The word **que**, the word for *what* that we learned is spelled *q-u-e*. **Quiero** is spelled *q-u-i-e-r-o*. So *q-u* this combination is always a *k*. **Quedar** means *to remain*. So in Spanish if you want to say *I stay* actually you say *I remain myself*. This is the way you say *I stay* in Spanish. So we start with *remain* which is **quedar**. So how do you say *I remain*?

S: **Quiedo.**

T: It doesn't split here but good for trying.

S: **Quedo?**

T: **Quedo.** *I remain myself?*

S: **Me quedo.**

T: **Me quedo.** This means *I stay*. **Me quedo.** *Until, until* in Spanish is **hasta**. **Hasta.** *H-a-s-t-a*. You may have heard **hasta la vista**. *Until the view*, literally *until the seeing, until we see each other*. **Hasta la vista**. So now you can say *I am staying here until ten o'clock*. So let's divide it up. *I am staying here, I remain myself here:*

S: **Me quedo aquí.**

T: *Until?*

S: **Hasta.**

T: *Ten o'clock. So-*

S: **Las diez.**

T: Yes. **Las diez.** It's literally like **las diez horas**, but you don't say **horas**. Maybe historically people said it, but not anymore. **Me quedo aquí**, or **acá, hasta las diez.** Good. *I am staying until ten o'clock.* So if **me quedo**, *I remain myself* is *I am staying*, how do you think you would say *we are staying?*

S: **Nos quedemos.**

T: Good, but now you have some vowel harmony popping in because we were concentrating on the other bit, so this mistake managed to come back.

S: **Quedamos?**

T: Good! Because it's **quedar**. No? **Nos quedamos.** *We remain ourselves. We stay. So we are staying until nine o'clock:*

S: **Nos quedamos hasta las nueve.**

T: Good. **Nos quedamos hasta las nueve.** Very good. Very good. *You stay or you remain yourself* (speaking informally):

S: **Te quedas.**

T: Good. **Te quedas.** *You are staying here:*

S: **Te quedas aquí.**

T: **Te quedas aquí.** *Are you staying here?:*

S: **¿Te quedas aquí?**

T: Good. **¿Te quedas aquí?** How would you make it emphatic now? *Are YOU staying here?*

Because this **te** is not emphatic, it is not optional. You have to put this **me** in **me quedo** to get the

meaning of *stay* and we have to put this **te** in **te quedas** to get the meaning of *stay*. But if we want to make it emphatic, what do we add?

S: **Tú te quedas?**

T: Good. *I am staying*, emphatic.

S: **Yo me quedo.**

T: Good. **Yo me quedo.** Good. *We are staying*:

S: **Nos quedamos.**

T: **Nos quedamos.** Good. *WE are staying*:

S: **Nosotros nos quedamos.**

T: **Nosotros nos quedamos.** Very good.

## Track 26

T: So again, *You're staying here*. Let's make that. *You're staying here*, informal.

S: **Te quedas aquí.**

T: Good. **Te quedas aquí.** *You're not staying here:*

S: **No te quedas aquí.**

T: **No te quedas aquí.** Or **acá**. Now, if you want to make that a question, *Aren't you staying here?:*

S: **¿No te quedas aquí?**

T: Good. **¿No te quedas aquí?** *Why aren't you staying here?:*

S: **¿Por qué no te quedas aquí?**

T: Very good. What was *I go* or *I'm going*? (I'm going on a voyage.)

S: **Voy.**

T: **Voy.** Good. So, how do you think you would say *I'm going to stay*, *I'm going to remain myself*?

S: **Voy a quedarme.**

T: Good. *Until seven, until seven o'clock.* Seven is **siete**, similar to the beginning of *September*. *September* in Spanish actually is either **Septiembre** or **Setiembre**. You have two versions of it in Spanish, **Septiembre** with the *p*, or without the *p*, **Setiembre**. And you can see how **siete** is like the beginning "set" with the split of the *e*. So, *I'm going to stay*, *I'm going to remain myself until seven o'clock.* *I'm going to stay until seven o'clock:*

S: **Voy a quedarme hasta las siete.**

T: Good. **Voy a quedarme hasta las siete.** Very good. How do you say *I want to stay*?

S: **Quiero quedarme.**

T: Good. **Quiero quedarme.** *Do you want to stay?* Let's talk informally. *Do you want to stay?:*

S: **¿Quieres quedarte?**

T: Good. Very good. ¿**Quieres quedarte**? *Do you want to remain yourself?* What was *I must* or *I owe*?

S: **Debo.**

T: **Debo.** Good. What is *we owe* or *we must*? And the "to" form is **deber**. **Deber**, *to owe*. So *we*:

S: **Debemos.**

T: Good. *We must stay*. So, *We owe to remain ourselves*. *We must stay*:

S: **Debemos quedarme, quedarnos.**

T: Good. **Debemos quedarnos**. Of course this **nos** or **me** or **te** can come at the beginning as well.

**Nos debemos quedar, debemos quedarnos.** Good. What was *I have*, in the sense of possession?

So not **haber**, the other "have"?

S: **Tengo.**

T: **Tengo.** So, if we add on **que** to **tengo**, we get the meaning of *have to*, which is just like **debo**, but less serious sounding. Just like in English. *I must stay* sounds a little bit more serious than *I have to stay*. And that difference in register, how it feels, is the same in Spanish. So how do you say *I have to stay*?

S: **Tengo que quedarme.**

T: Good. And how would you say **You have to stay**, speaking informally?

S: **Tienes que quedarte.**

T: **Tienes que quedarte.** Good. *You have to stay here*, informally still:

S: **Tienes que quedarte aquí.**

T: Good. *I want to know why you have to stay here*. *I want to know*. First bit: don't think about the whole sentence, just think of *I want*:

S: **Quiero saber.**

T: Good. **Quiero saber.** Now forget that bit. *Why*:

S: **Por qué.**

T: *You have to stay here:*

S: **Tienes que quedarte aquí.**

T: Good. Very good. **Quiero saber por qué tienes que quedarte aquí.** Good. What was *I can*, or *I have the power to*?

S: **Puedo.**

T: **Puedo.** Good. *I can stay:*

S: **Puedo quedarme.**

T: Good. **Puedo quedarme.** *I can't stay:*

S: **No puedo quedarme.**

T: Good. **No puedo quedarme.** Do you remember how to say *tonight*, or *this night*?

S: **Esta noche.**

T: **Esta noche.** Good. *I can't stay tonight:*

S: **No puedo quedarme esta noche.**

T: Good. **No puedo quedarme esta noche.** The "to" form of *can* is **poder, poder**. And this *o* is splitting when we stress it and say **puedo. Poder**. So how would you say *we can* or *we are able*?

S: **Podemos.**

T: **Podemos.** Very good. *We can stay:*

S: **Podemos quedarnos.**

T: **Podemos quedarnos.** *We can't stay tonight:*

S: **No podemos quedarnos esta noche.**

T: Good. **No podemos quedarnos esta noche.** What was *to think* or *to be pensive*? *To think:*

S: **Pensar.**



T: Good. **Pensar**. *We think*:

S: **Pensamos**.

T: Good. *You think* (informal):

S: **Pensas**.

T: Good, it should be **pensas**, should-

S: **Piensas**.

T: Good. **Piensas**. *What do you think?*:

S: ¿**Qué piensas?**

T: ¿**Qué piensas?** Good. Now, if we want to say *Do you plan on staying here tonight?* we can just say *Do you think to stay here tonight?* Ah? *Do you think to stay here tonight?* So how would we say this, informally?

S: ¿**Piensas quedarte aquí esta noche?**

T: Good. ¿**Piensas quedarte aquí esta noche?** Very good. Now how would you say *I have stayed?*

*I have stayed, or I have remained myself, I have stayed:*

S: **He quedado me, He me quedado**

T: I don't want you to guess and see what feels good. So with logic you want to place it. And if you're wrong, it's fine, because if you got there through a fault of logic, you'll change the logic through that mistake. So tell me the rule about where that **me** can go.

S: It goes after the "to" form.

T: Mmm.

S: And before everything else.

T: Before the changed verb. It's very important the way we instruct ourselves. Now I'm giving you always the simplest way that we can instruct ourselves accurately. If I tell you "before the verb" and you tell yourself "at the beginning", you lose something. Ah, you lose a certain clarity.

S: Because nouns might come into the sentence and then-

T: Exactly. *We have stayed, we have remained ourselves:*

S: **Nos hemos quedado.**

T: Very good. **Nos hemos quedado.** *We haven't stayed:*

S: **No nos hemos quedado.**

T: Very good. **No nos hemos quedado.** *You have stayed (informal). You have stayed:*

S: **Te has quedado.**

T: Good. **Te has quedado.** Make it a question, *Have you stayed?:*

S: **¿Te has quedado?**

T: Good. And let's be emphatic now, let's say the word for *you*.

S: **¿Tú te has quedado?**

T: Good. **¿Tú te has quedado?** Let's make it negative now. *Haven't you stayed?:*

S: **¿Tú no te has quedado?**

T: Good. **¿Tú no te has quedado?** Good. **Lllamar**, in Spanish, is *to call, or to phone, to telephone, llamar. l-l*, which we said is pronounced like *y* in most of the Spanish speaking world. *To call.*

S: **Lllamar.**

T: How do you say *I call*?

S: **Llamo.**

T: **Llamo.** If you want to introduce yourself, instead of saying *My name is*, in Spanish it's much more common to say *I call myself*.

S: **Me llamo.**

T: **Me llamo.** And then you can introduce yourself. **Me llamo Mihalis**, for example. How would you say *You call yourself* (informal)?

S: **Te llamas.**

T: Good. **Te llamas.** If you want to ask the name, you will say *How do you call yourself?* And the word for *how* is **cómo. Cómo.**

S: **Cómo.**

T: So how do you say *How do you call yourself?*:

S: **¿Cómo te llamas?**

T: Good. **¿Cómo te llamas?** You might have heard this around and not understood actually how it's being constructed. Now we understand it. It's *How do you call yourself?* **¿Cómo te llamas?**

## Track 27

T: How would you say *the situation* in Spanish?

S: **La situación.**

T: Good. *-ión* is a feminine ending, so the word takes **la** for *the*. **La situación.** Good. Now in Spanish, adjectives are describing words. Adjectives are words that describe, like *big* or *yellow* or *happy*. Words that we can put *is* in front of are adjectives, describing words. These words come after the noun they describe in Spanish. So instead of saying, "the global situation" for example, you say "the situation global". There's a bit of flexibility for emphasis as well, but the normal standard position is to come after the noun. So how would you say *the global situation*?

S: **La situación global.**

T: Good. **La situación global.** How would you say *digital camera*? *Digital camera*:

S: **Cámara digital.**

T: Yeah. **Cámara digital.** Good. **Cámara** is feminine, so *a digital camera* is **una cámara digital.**

So we have **la** for *the*, and **una** for *a*. So how would you say, *I want to buy a digital camera*? What was the verb *to buy*?

S: **Comprar.**

T: Good. So *I want to buy a digital camera*:

S: **Quiero comprar una cámara digital.**

T: Good. **Quiero comprar una cámara digital.** How would you say *I want to buy the digital camera*?

S: **Quiero comprar la cámara digital.**

T: Good. **Quiero comprar la cámara digital.** What if you wanted to say, *I want to buy it* and with the *it*, you meant the digital camera?

S: **Quiero comprarla.**

T: Good. So this **la** is *it*. There's a lot of words in Spanish for *car* depending on where you are. It's one of the words that changes a lot between the dialects, but I think everybody understands all of the words that are heard. You might hear **coche**, which is related to *coach*; **carro**, which of course is *car*, **carro**, so we have two *r*'s in **carro**, that's why we have this rolling *r*. You might hear **auto**, where do you think **auto** comes from?

S: *Automobile.*

T: Of course, and it exists: **automóvil**. But people will say **auto**. You might even hear **máquina**, which means *machine*. So *machine, the car*, **máquina**. This is another example of the *q-u* spelling producing *k* sound. *M-a-q-u-i-n-a. Máquina.*

S: **Máquina.**

T: Good. So there's a few words there for *car*, and you might hear others as well. **Coche** is masculine, so how would you say *the car*?

S: **El coche.**

T: Good. A for masculine words is **un**. *U-n. Un. So, a car:*

S: **Un coche.**

T: *The machine?* Does **máquina** look masculine or feminine?

S: Feminine.

T: Good. So *the machine:*

S: **La máquina.**

T: **La máquina.** *A machine:*

S: **Una máquina.**

T: Good. And does **carro** look masculine or feminine?

S: Masculine.

T: Good. So *the car:*

S: **El carro.**

T: **El carro.** *A car:*

S: **Un carro.**

T: **Un carro.** Good. So it's the noun that has the gender, not the object. Of course it's not the car that is masculine or feminine, it's the noun, it's the word itself. So even though all of these words refer to *car*, some are masculine and some are feminine. *Big*, in Spanish, is **grande, grande**. Of course we can relate this to *grand* in English, **grande**. So using any of these words that you like, how would you say, *the big car*?

S: **La máquina grande.**

T: Good. **La máquina grande.** So **la máquina grande, el auto grande**. Now if you say *the big cars*, this adjective is also going to become plural. How do you say *the house*?

S: **La casa.**

T: Good. And how was *the houses*?

S: **Las casas.**

T: Good, so **la** also became plural. So **las casas**, if you say *the big houses*, *big* is also going to become plural.

S: **Grandes.**

T: So how would you say *the big houses*?

S: **Las casas grandes.**

T: Good. **Las casas grandes.** *The big car*, using **auto**:

S: **El auto grande.**

S: Good. **El auto grande.** *The cars*, using **auto**, so a masculine word, you say **los autos**. So **el** becomes **los** in plural. So how would you say *the big cars*?

S: **Los autos grandes.**

T: **Los autos grandes. Los carros grandes.** Good. If you want to say *Can you see the big car?* you can say, *can you see?*, or in Spanish you can just say, *do you see?* We kind of overuse this *can* a lot in English. So, *Do you see the big car?:*

S: You informal? **¿Ves el coche grande?**

T: Good. You needed some time there to look at **ves**. And this was the more common way actually, of saying it in Spanish: **¿Ves el auto grande?** But, if you didn't have that time to think about it, even though it's more natural to say it like this it really doesn't matter; you can say *can you see...* Now you would probably be quicker at building *can you see* than *you see* because *can* is something very common that you're going to be using all the time. So in conversation, where you just want to get the meaning across, you might want to use this. So how would you say *can you see the big car?:*

S: **¿Puedes ver el coche grande?**

T: Good. So **puedo, quiero, tengo que, debo**, these verbs that are followed by two versions that you're going to be using a lot, even though the sentence is longer, they are short cuts. They are short cuts in thought. And once you become very confident with that, you're going to start noticing that people say things differently to you. So instead of *I can't find it, I don't find it*. You will notice that yourself and your speech will adjust, but in the beginning what you're trying to do is to be conversational and correct structurally. Once you get over that hurdle of being communicative, you're going to start noticing that people say things differently to you. So instead of *I can't find it, I don't find it*. So you could say, *I can't find it*. How would you say *I can't find it?* What was *to find*, or *to encounter?*

S: **Encontrar.**

T: **Encontrar.** So say *I can't find it:*

S: **No puedo encontrarlo.**

T: Good. **No puedo encontrarlo.** This would be the short cut even though it's longer, it's much easier to build **no puedo encontrarlo** because **puedo** is something you're going to be using all the time, and **encontrar** is in the "to" form. *I don't find it*, how would that be?

S: **No lo encuentro.**

T: **No lo encuentro.** Good. So it's very useful to bear in mind these verbs like **puedo, debo**, which we can use with "to" forms which give us a short cut and allow us to get conversational very quickly. What was *to remain*?

S: **Quedar.**

T: **Quedar.** Good. And *I remain myself* is how we get the meaning of *I stay*. So how do you say *I stay*?

S: **Quedarme.**

T: *I remain myself. I remain myself.* What's *to remain*?

S: **Quedar.**

T: What's *I remain*?

S: **Quedo.**

T: Uh-huh. What's *I remain myself*?

S: **Me quedo.**

T: What was happening?

S: I was thinking "okay the **me** should go first, but it can't go first because the verb is in the 'to' form". And I just got stuck.

T: Well you start when you're building the sentence with the verb. With who's doing that. So if you start with that, then it's not in the "to" form anymore. The order of thought is very important; the verb is the backbone. That's the first place you want to go: **quedo. I remain myself: me quedo.** So **me quedo** is *I stay*. The word for *red* in Spanish is **rojo. Rojo.** This is spelled *r-o-j-o*. And *j*'s in Spanish are pronounced /kh/. Like this, **rojo.**

S: **Rojo.**

T: And we have the initial *r*, so if you can do it, it will be the rolling *r*. **Rojo.**

S: **Rojo.**



T: Good. So how would you say *I'm staying in the red car?* *I'm staying in the car red.* The word for *in* is **en**. *E-n*. So let's divide it up: *I'm staying*, only think about that bit. *I'm staying, I remain myself*:

S: **Me quedo.**

T: *In*:

S: **En.**

T: *The red car, the car red.* And let's use the word **auto** for *car* for now. So *I'm staying in the red car, the car red*:

S: **Me quedo en el auto rojo.**

T: Good. **Me quedo en el auto rojo.** Good. How would you say *I have stayed in the red car?* *I have stayed, I have remained myself in the red car.* Again we want to divide it up. *I have remained myself.* There's a lot to think about there, in that first bit.

S: **Me he quedado.**

T: Uh-huh. *In the red car*:

S: **En el auto rojo.**

T: Good. How would you say *I have bought a red car?* What is the verb *to buy*?

S: **Comprer.**

T: **Comprar.**

S: **Comprar. Comprar.**

T: **Comprar.**

T: So *I have bought a red car*, and let's use **auto**. *I have bought a red car*:

S: **He comprado un auto rojo.**

T: Good. **He comprado un**, (masculine word), **un, un auto rojo**. How would you say *I have bought myself a red car?*

S: **Me he comprado un auto rojo.**

T: **Me he comprado un auto rojo.** *I have bought myself a red car.* Very good.

## Track 28

T: Spanish dialects don't change very much. Slang changes a lot, but Spanish is pretty standard. It's not like Arabic for example, where you have such a different Arabic in Morocco to Egypt, for example. All of the different Spanishes are completely mutually intelligible. But in slang, you get many different terms and words and *car* is one of these words that have different versions. *Money* is another one. You might hear **dinero**, which is like the standard word; you might hear **plata**, which actually means silver; **pasta** you might hear **pasta**, that's one they use that in Spain. So we had a few words for *car*. Do you remember any of them?

S: **Máquina, auto, caro.**

T: **Carro.** Two *r*'s. Let's stay with **carro**. How would you say *the car*?

S: **El carro.**

T: **El carro.** And how would you say, *a car*?

S: **Un carro.**

T: **Un carro.** Good. So it's a masculine word, and we use **el** for *the*, and **un** for *a*. What if we say, *the cars*?

S: **Los carros.**

T: Good. **Los carros.** So the plural of **el** is **los**. It's a little bit different, **el** to **los**. The word for *expensive* is **caro**. So it's like **carro**, but with one *r*. **Caro.**

S: **Caro.**

T: So again it's a nice bit to feel the difference between having the single *r* and the double *r*, just as we saw in **pero**, meaning *but* and **perro** meaning *dog*. So how would you say, *the car is expensive*?

S: **El carro es caro.**

T: Good. **El carro es caro.** Good. So **es** we said was *it is, she is, he is* or just *is*. Or *you are*, talking to **usted**. Talking formally. So if you just wanted to say *it is expensive*:

S: **Es caro.**

T: Good. And what if you were talking about a feminine thing?

S: **Es cara.**

T: **Es cara.** And when I say feminine thing I really mean a feminine noun. If you're referring in your mind to a feminine noun, because if you, in your country, call cars **máquinas**, then you're going to say **es cara**. But if you call them **autos**, then you're going to say **es caro**. So it refers to the word more than the object, to the noun, the gender of the noun. So **es** we have for *is*, and for *they are*, or *you guys are* - we know they always come together - we have **son**. Son. *S-o-n*.

S: **Son.**

T: **Son.** So if you want to say *the cars are expensive*, and we will use **carro** again. So *the cars are expensive*:

S: **Los carros son caro- caros.**

T: Good. **Los carros son caros.** Good. What if you use a feminine word like **máquina**, how's it going to be? *The cars are expensive*:

S: **Las máquinas son caras.**

T: Good. **Las máquinas son caras.** And *the car is expensive*: Using again **máquina**.

S: **La máquina es caro - cara.**

T: Good. **La máquina es cara.** The word *teacher* in Spanish is *professor*. **Profesor.**

S: **Profesor.**

T: **Profesor.** So how would you say, *he is a professor*? And we don't need to say "a", we can just say *he is professor*.

S: **Es profesor.**

T: Good. **Es profesor.** What if you wanted to say, *she is a professor*? What do you think might happen?

S: **Es profesora?**

T: Good. **Es profesora**. What if you wanted to say, *they are teachers*, and you mean a group of females?

S: **Son profesoras**.

T: **Son profesoras**. Good. So, this is a noun, **profesor**. It's a word you can put *the* or *a* in front of. Now, we said that adjectives, they change for gender if they end in *-o*. If they don't, they don't.

For example, *the global situation* was:

S: **La global situación**.

T: Where does that **global** go?

S: **La situación global**.

T: **La situación global**. So **situación** is feminine, but we're not saying "**globala**". Adjectives, these describing words that we can put *is* in front of, they only change if they end in *-o*. But nouns, they can change to feminine like **profesor/profesora** to differentiate. So this is why it's important to know what type of word we're dealing with. We're doing this already, but we don't even realize it. The moment we come in contact with a verb, we know exactly what to do. We know it's a verb, and we know how to manage it. We don't start trying to make a verb masculine or feminine, for example. So we are already making this differentiation, but we want to do it more consciously to get more control. So this is a noun. **Doctor**, what do you think that means?

S: *Doctor*.

T: Good. Is it a noun, is it an adjective, is it a verb? What is it?

S: Noun.

T: Noun. So how do you think feminine, a female doctor, will be?

S: **Doctora**?

T: Good. **Doctora**. We just stick an *a*. Good. So how would you say *he is a doctor*?

S: **Es doctor**.

T: Good. *She is a doctor*:

S: **Es doctora.**

T: Good. Now, if you want to get the plural of *professor*, **profesor**, or *doctor*, **doctor**, or any other word in Spanish that ends in a consonant, you don't add *s*; you add *-es*. so how do you think it would sound, the plural of **profesor**?

S: **Profesores.**

T: Good. **Profesores.** So this is the plural for masculine or for mixed. The plural for feminine:

S: **Profesoras.**

T: Good. So how would you say *they are professors*? And you mean a masculine or mixed group.

S: **Son profesores.**

T: Good. **Son profesores.** And if they were all female?

S: **Son profesoras.**

T: Good. *They are doctors*: mixed or masculine:

S: **Son doctores.**

T: Good. **Son doctores.** What if they were females?

S: **Son doctoras.**

T: Good. **Son doctoras.** Good. Words ending *-ive* in English, *i-v-e*, tend to become *-ivo*, *i-v-o* for masculine singular. This is the one we always start from though and build from, this masculine singular, or neuter let's say. So for example *addictive* becomes **adictivo**. Now when I say neuter, we don't really have a neuter in Spanish, we have masculine and feminine. But the concept of neuter exists. For example, if I say *it's addictive*, and I'm referring to living in the mountains, *is addictive*; *eating healthily is addictive* or something like this, then I use the masculine singular.

So how would you say *it's addictive*?

S: **Es adictivo.**

T: Good. **Es adictivo.** How would you say *he is positive*?

S: **Es positivo.**

T: Good. And you pronounced an *s* where most English speakers will probably find themselves pronouncing a *z* there because in English we have *positive*, so that would probably transfer into Spanish to /pozitivo/ and we want to be careful not to do that. **Positivo** with an *s*. **Positivo.** *She is positive:*

S: **Es positiva.**

T: Good. *They are positive:*

S: **Son positivos.**

T: Good. *They are intuitive:*

S: **Son intuitivos.**

T: Good. **Son intuitivos.** What if you meant women?

S: **Intuitivas.**

T: Good. **Son intuitivas.** *She is very attractive:* The word for very is **muy**, and it's spelled *m-u-y*.

The *y* you can imagine it like an *i*. **Muy.**

S: **Muy.**

T: Good. So *she is very attractive:*

S: **Es muy atractivo- oh, atractiva.**

T: **Atractiva.**

S: **Es muy atractiva.**

T: Good. **Atractiva** is showing us that it refers to a female. So this would probably help us work out who we are talking about. But, maybe we would want to say, to clarify or to emphasize or to contrast. So how would you say that, using the word for *she*? *She is very attractive:*

S: I always get confused on that, if it's **el** or if it's **la** or **ella**.

T: So I want you to spend some time to think about it, and not guess. Think about which is which, make a decision.

S: *Her* is **la**.

T: Good.

S: **Ella es muy atractiva**.

T: Good. **Ella es muy atractiva**. How would you say, *she is very creative*?

S: **Ella es muy creativa**.

T: *But, she's aggressive*:

S: **Pero, es**, is it “agressiva”? I was thinking of the double *g*, does it stay?

T: Well these random double letters that we don't need in English really, they just become single letters in Spanish. So I think there's a double *s* there as well in English, well that would also become singular. The only double letters that cross over are the *r*'s and the *n*'s. Like **connotación**.

S: Oh double **n**'s.

T: “Con-notación”. If you get a double *f*, double *s*, double *g*, these random double letters you get in English; they don't cross over into Spanish.

How would you say, *they are aggressive*, talking about a masculine or mixed group?

S: **Son agresivos**.

T: Good. And what if you wanted to use the word for *they*?

S: **Ellos son agresivos**.

T: Good. How would you say, *he is negative*?

S: **Es negativo**.

T: Good, and if you use the word for *he*?

S: **Él es negativo**.

T: Good. *He is very negative*:



S: **Es muy negativo.**

T: How would you say, *It's intensive?*

S: **Es intensivo.**

T: Good. So we use the neuter there, we don't know what we're talking about. So we can just use the masculine singular, which is also like neuter. **Es intensivo.** How would you say, *they are natives?*

S: **Son nativos.**

T: Good. **Son nativos.** And what if it was a female group?

S: **Son nativas.**

T: Very good.

## Track 29

T: So I want to talk about something now that's different in Spanish. And first I want to speak about what this means; rather than an obstacle to learning, it's part of the experience of learning a new language which can make you realize that in your own language you are both permitted and obliged to perceive and express the world in a certain way. There's two important, kind of contradictory concepts here almost. It permits you and obliges you, it allows you and requires you, to perceive and to express the world in a certain way. So, in Spanish we have two verbs for *to be*. So remember *to be* is *is, am, are*; we get all of this from *to be*. We don't say *I be*; we say *I am*. So we have **ser**. This is where **es** comes from; this is where **son** comes from. And **ser** is about characteristics. When we refer to the characteristics of something. Actually **un ser** is *a being*. We said that some form of the verb is often the noun; here it's the complete form. **Un ser** is *a being*. **Un ser humano** is what?

S: *A human being*.

T: *A human being*. And we could have found **humano**, even though there's no rule to find **humano**, that word, we have *humanity*. The words with *-ity* end how in Spanish?

S: **Humanidad**.

T: **Humanidad**. And then we can probably guess then that *human* is **humano**. **Un ser humano** is *a human being*. So **ser** refers to things that are characteristic of something. Then **estar**, which is the other *to be*, **estar**, refers to states - states we are in. The word *state* is related to **estar**. So Spanish permits us, allows us, but also obliges us, when we are perceiving and expressing the world around us, to make a decision and to think about something. Is this a state, or is it a characteristic? So this kind of sounds very abstract right now, so let's look at some examples. To be tired: do you think this is a state? Or do you think it's a characteristic of you, to be tired? Is it a state you're in, or is it a characteristic of you?

S: It's a state.

T: Good. Where you are: is it a state you are in or is it a characteristic of you? Where you are.

S: A state.

T: A state. To be a good or a bad person: do you think this is a characteristic of you or a state?

S: Characteristic.

T: Characteristic. So it's very very important to kind of snub out now any temptation that you might have to simplify this to temporary and permanent. This is what most learners do, and actually what many teachers do: simplify this concept to temporary and permanent. Which, if you think about it this way, will work most of the time, but not all of the time. We want to think in this way, is it a state or is it a characteristic? For example if I say *I am a student*, it's not very permanent is it? But is it a state or a characteristic? My profession or my occupation.

S: It should be a state you're in.

T: It's temporary but that doesn't make it a state. Your profession, according to Spanish, is characteristic of you. Even if you do it for five minutes.

S: I guess it's the same, for example, as you said before with the word *aggressive*. Someone can be aggressive and they can change, so that stops it from being permanent. But it's still a characteristic.

T: Exactly. And we will see actually some adjectives we can use with both **ser** and **estar** to give different meanings. But the great bulk of them go with one or the other. This is Spanish conceptually deciding whether it's a characteristic or a state; forcing us to make this differentiation and to express it. Let's look at the forms, let's look at the forms of **estar** to begin. Now *I am* from **estar** is **estoy**. **Estoy**. So it ends *-oy*. We already saw another verb that ends *-oy* which is **voy**: *I go* or *I'm going*. **Estoy**.

S: **Estoy**.

T: **Estoy**. Now *to be* is a very irregular verb in most languages. Look at English: from *to be* we get *am, is, are, was*. But this is actually not so irregular. We have this little irregularity *-oy*, **estoy**.

S: **Estoy**.

T: And the other irregularity that we have is that this verb is the only verb in the entire Spanish language that doesn't have the accent on the penultimate syllable in the present tense. So it's not "éstay" it's **estoy**; the accent is on the ending. This hasn't happened until now, and it won't happen again. So we have **estar** and from **estar** we have **estoy**. Now, all of the other forms are regular. We build them how we would expect to, with the exception that the accent will be on the last

syllable. And it's the only verb in the entire present tense that has this characteristic. So how would you say *he is / she is / it is / you are*, from **estar**, using **estar**?

S: **Está.**

T: **Está.** *They* or for *you guys*:

S: **Están.**

T: Good. And make it for *you* (informal):

S: **Estás.**

T: Good. And for the “*we*” version, the accent is where it should be because we're adding two syllables. So give me the “*we*” version.

S: **Estamos.**

T: **Estamos.** So that's it, that's your set. **Estoy, está, están, estás, estamos.** The word for *tired* is **cansado, cansado.**

S: **Cansado.**

T: C-a-n-s-a-d-o. **Cansado.**

S: **Cansado.**

T: Good. So how would you say, *I am tired*? This is a state.

S: **Estoy cansada.**

T: Good.

S: **Estoy cansada.**

T: **Estoy cansada.** Good. *We are tired*, talking about a mixed or a masculine group?

S: **Estamos cansados.**

T: Good. **Estamos cansados.** What if you are an all female group?

S: **Estamos cansadas.**

T: Good. Now the word for *always* we said was **siempre**. **Siempre**. Now if you say, *I'm always tired*, because *tired* as an adjective, as an idea, is a state, not a characteristic, because we are looking at that whether it's a state or a characteristic, rather than is it permanent or is it temporary, we're using **estar**. So even if you say *I'm always tired* it doesn't matter, you still use **estar**. So **siempre** is very flexible in this sentence, you can put it anywhere. The emphasis is going to change when you move it, but it's legal anywhere. So how would you say, *I'm always tired*?

S: **Estoy cansada siempre.**

T: Good. **Estoy cansada siempre. Estoy siempre cansada. Siempre estoy cansada.** Or I would say **cansado**. Good. So we want to resist the temptation to simplify this concept to “temporary” and “permanent”. We want to ask ourselves “is it a state, or is it a characteristic?” To be tired: is it a state or is it a characteristic? If we simplify it to temporary and permanent, most of the time it's going to work, this simplification. But many times we're going to feel frustrated, feeling like there's something we don't understand because Spanish disagrees with us. If we have the concepts of characteristic and state, the few times Spanish disagrees with what we consider a characteristic and state it's going to be an interesting point of perspective. For example, **muerto**.

Which means:

S: *Dead.*

T: *Dead.* Good. We looked at this briefly before as a part of *mortgage*, meaning death-pact. **Muerto**, in Spanish, is a state. Death is a state. So if you want to say *I'm dead*, you would use **estar**. So how would you say that?

S: **Estoy muerta.**

T: Good. **Estoy muerta.** And I would say **estoy muerto**. And you can use it to say, *I'm very tired* as well. **Estoy muerta, estoy muerto.** *I'm very tired.* Good.

## Track 30

T: The word for *how* in Spanish is **cómo**.

S: **Cómo**.

T: **Cómo**. How do you think you would say, *how are you?*, talking informally?

S: **¿Cómo estás?**

T: **¿Cómo estás?** Because when you ask somebody how they are, you're referring to their state.  
**¿Cómo estás?** And formally, how would you ask?

S: **¿Cómo está?**

T: Good. And if you're asking more than one person?

S: **¿Cómo están?**

T: Very nice. The word for *where* is **dónde**. So how would you say, *where are you?*, talking informally?

S: **¿Dónde estás?**

T: **¿Dónde estás?** *I don't know where we are*. So what was *I don't know?*

S: **No sé?**

T: **No sé**. Good. *I don't know where we are*:

S: So **no sé donde estamos**.

T: Good. **No sé donde estamos**. Good. How would you say, *I am here?*

S: **Estoy aquí**.

T: **Estoy aquí, Estoy acá**. How would you say, *I want to be here?*

S: **Quiero estar aquí**.

T: Good. **Quiero estar aquí**. Good. How would you say, *I'm going to be here later?* What was the word for *late*?

S: **Tarde.**

T: **Tarde.** Good. And *later* or *more late*?

S: **Más tarde.**

T: Good. So *I'm going to be here later*:

S: **Voy a estar aquí más tarde.**

T: Good. **Voy a estar aquí más tarde.** **Voy** is *I go* or *I'm going*. How do you say *you go* or *you are going*, speaking informally?

S: **Vas.**

T: **Vas.** Good. So how would you say, *where are you going to be*? So break it up: *where are you going to be*?:

S: **¿Dónde vas a estar?**

T: Yes. **¿Dónde vas a estar?** *Where are you going to be*? Good. So let's run through the forms again, and let's use the words for emphasis just to practice them. So *I am* is:

S: **Yo estoy.**

T: Good. **Yo estoy.** *He is*:

S: **Él está.**

T: Good. **Él está.** *She is*:

S: **Ella está.**

T: Good. And *you* (talking formally) *are*:

S: **Usted está.**

T: **Usted está.** Good. *They are*, using the word for *they*:

S: **Ellos están.**

T: **Ellos están.** Or for feminine:

S: **Ellas están.**

T: Good. What is *we are*?

S: **Nosotros estamos.**

T: Good. And for feminine:

S: **Nosotros, nosotras estamos.**

T: Good. So **nosotros** changes to **nosotras**. *You are*, talking informally:

S: **Estás.**

T: Good. And if we used the word for *you*:

S: **Tú estás.**

T: Good. **Tú estás. Tú estás.** Good. How would you ask more than one person, *where do you have to be later?* So the first bit is *where*.

S: **Dónde.**

T: *Do you have?*, and we are talking to *you* (plural), which is the same as *they*. *Do you have?* Yeah, what's *to have*?

S: **Tener.**

T: **Tener.** Good. And we have it as *-tain* in words like *maintain-mantener*, *contain-contener*, *sustain-sostener*, *entertain-entretener*, *obtain-obtener*. That will help us. So first we want to build *you guys have* from **tener**.

S: **Tienen.**

T: Good. So *where do you have to be later*, to *you* (plural). Try it.

S: **Dónde tienen están.**

T: Slower.

S: Oh sorry, *to be*, it's in the, yes. **Dónde**, and I've forgotten the other one now.

T: It's okay, work it out again.



S: **Dónde tienen estar.**

T: There is something we need to add to **tienen** to get this meaning of *have to*, and it's not a comfortable translation.

S: **Dónde tienen que estar.**

T: *Later:*

S: **Más tarde.**

T: ¿**Dónde tienen que estar más tarde?** Good. You might want to say, *he must be here*, and you can use this in the same way as you do in English, to refer to probability. *Oh, he must be here by now*, or something like this. You have the same use in Spanish. And *must* is the same as *to owe*, which is related to *debt*. So what was *to owe*?

S: **Deber.**

T: **Deber.** Good. So *he owes* or *he must*:

S: **Debe.**

T: **Debe.** This *e* doesn't split. Good. **Debe.** So *he must be here*:

S: **Debe estar aquí.**

T: Good. And *he must be tired*:

S: **Debe estar cansado.**

T: Good. **Debe estar cansado.** *They must be tired*:

S: **Deben estar cansados.**

T: Very good. What if *they* were females?

S: **Cansadas.**

T: All together. Don't miss the fun.

S: **Deben estar cansadas.**

T: Good. **Deben estar cansadas.** *To remain* was **quedar**. **Quedar.**

S: **Quedar.**

T: And to get the meaning of *I stay*, we say, *I remain myself*. So how would that sound? *I remain myself*:

S: **Me quedo.**

T: **Me quedo.** *I am staying*. How would *we are staying*, or *we remain ourselves*, be?

S: **Nos quedamos.**

T: Good. *We are not going to stay, because we are very tired. We are not going to stay, because we are very tired.* So the first bit that needs to command all of our attention is *we are not going*:

S: **No vamos.**

T: **No vamos.** *We are not going to stay, so we are not going to remain ourselves*:

S: **No vamos a quedarnos.**

T: Good. **No vamos a quedarnos** or **no nos vamos a quedar**. You can have this as well. **No nos vamos a quedar**. *Because*, same as *why*:

S: **Porque.**

T: **Porque.** *We are very tired*. And let's be a masculine or a mixed group. *We are very tired*:

S: **Estamos muy cansados.**

T: Good, now all together and not from memory. Thinking about it again, block by block. If you rush it, you will trip and tripping is very time-consuming. So, *we are not going to remain ourselves. To stay*:

S: **No vamos a quedarnos.**

T: Good. *Because we are very tired*.

S: **Porque estamos muy cansados.**

T: Well done. **No vamos a quedarnos, no nos vamos a quedar porque, estamos muy cansados.**  
Very good.

## Track 31

T: We spoke about how we have two verbs for *to be* in Spanish, **estar** and **ser**. And we practiced with **estar**, which is the verb that we use for states. And we said that the word *state* is related to **estar**. Actually, it's like the same word. What looks most different there between *state* and **estar** is that /eh/ that you get at the beginning of **estar**. But you will find this actually with words that start *st-*, *sp-*, *s-* and consonant. You can't begin a word like this in Spanish, where you can in English. So, actually, you will find many words between English and Spanish that get like an extra *e* at the beginning in Spanish. For example, the word *Spanish* in Spanish is **Español**. Or *Spain*, which is **España**. *Student* - **estudiante**. *School* - **escuela**. There you have the *o* splitting of *school* to *ue*. **Escuela**. *Special* - **especial**. *Spatial*:

S: **Espacial**.

T: Good. **Espacial**. *Strict*: how do you think you might say *strict*, if it's the same word in English and Spanish?

S: **Estricto**.

T: **Estricto**. Good. *Spectacular*. It's the same word as well.

S: **Espectacular**.

T: Good. **Espectacular**. So this is the difference that we see between *state* and **estar**. So we said that **estar** we use with what we will consider states of being. Now with what we consider characteristics of being, we will use **ser**. And we said that **ser**, all by itself, means *being*. **Un ser** is *a being*. **Un ser humano** is *a human being*. Here, **humano** is acting like an adjective, so it's coming afterwards. But it could also be a noun. We can say *the human*. How would that be? *The human*:

S: **El humano**.

T: **El humano**. And there it's a noun. But **el ser humano**, there it's an adjective. So *I am*, from **ser**, is **soy**. **Soy**.

S: **Soy**.

T: So like **estoy** from **estar**, it ends *o-y*. There are just four verbs in the whole spanish language that use *oy* instead of *o*, for *I*. **Voy**, **doy** from **dar**, *to give*, **doy**, *I am giving*, and then **estoy** and **soy**.

So we said that *student* is **estudiante**. So if you wanted to say *I am a student*:

S: **Soy estudiante**.

T: Good. **Soy estudiante**. *It is* or *she is*, *he is*, *you are*, to **usted**. We learned it already, but we didn't learn that it was from **ser**. How would you say *It is possible*?

S: **Es posible**.

T: **Es posible**. Good. So we have **es**. **Es** is from **ser**. Now, **ser** is more irregular than **estar**. Doesn't look like **es** is from **ser**, not too much. And then we had *they are*, or *you guys are*. What was that?

S: **Son**.

T: **Son**. Good. So, we've got three of the versions now. **Soy**, **son**, and **es**. We can take **son** and we can work out the "we" form from **son**, working backwards. Now we said that working backwards means taking off the consonant that you know associates to *they*, then bumping on the ending that associates to *we*, for example. So, to go from **son**, *they are*, to *we are*. How do you think it will sound?

S: **Somos**.

T: **Somos**. Good. Which leaves one left, which is the *you* (informal). Which is **eres**. **Eres**. *E-r-e-s*.

S: **Eres**.

T: **Eres**. So let's make a recap. *To be*:

S: **Ser**.

T: *I am*:

S: **Soy**.

T: **Soy**. And if you want to use the word for *I*:

S: **Yo soy**.

T: **Yo soy.** *He is:*

S: **Es.**

T: Good. And if you want to use the word for *he*:

S: **Él es.**

T: Good. And *she is*:

S: **Ella es.**

T: *They are:*

S: **Son.**

T: **Son**, and what if you wanted to use the word for *they*? A nice way to remember *they* as well, is you can make *she* plural and you will get the feminine *they*.

S: **Ellas.**

T: So *they are*:

S: **Ellos son.**

T: Good. **Ellos son, ellas son.** Good. *You guys are.* What is *you* (formal)?

S: **Usted.**

T: Good, and *you guys* is the plural of that:

S: **Ustedes.**

T: **Ustedes.** So it's the plural of **usted**, but it's not necessarily formal. **Ustedes.** Only in some parts of Spain, which we will talk about later. But everywhere else in the Spanish speaking world, this is just how you refer to *you guys*. It doesn't sound formal any more when it becomes plural. So how would you say *you guys are*?

S: **Ustedes son.**

T: **Ustedes son.** Good. Then we have *we are*:

S: **Nosotros somos.**

T: Good. **Somos** or **nosotros somos**, or if we were an all female group?

S: **Nosotras somos**.

T: **Nosotras somos**. Good. And then we have the *you* (informal), which is **eres**, which is probably the weirdest form out of these ones. We can relate it to **es** maybe, they are similar, **es, eres**. So how would you say *you are*, using the word for *you*?

S: **Tú eres**.

T: **Tú eres**. Good. What was the word for *how*?

S: **Cómo**.

T: **Cómo**. Now if I want to say *How is he?*, *How is he doing?* I will use **estar**. So how would I say, using **estar**, *how is he, how is he doing?*:

S: **¿Cómo está?**

T: **¿Cómo está?** Good. Now if I want to ask you, *what is he like?* Maybe you tell me about your new boss or a new friend, and I ask you, *what is he like*, or *what is she like?* Am I referring to their state or to their characteristic?

S: Characteristic.

T: So how would I ask *How is he, what is he like? How is she, what is she like?*:

S: **¿Cómo es?**

T: **¿Cómo es?** Good.

## Track 32

T: The word for *boring* or *bored* is **aburrido**. **Aburrido**.

S: **Aburrido**.

T: *A-b-u-r-r-i-d-o*. **Aburrido**.

S: **Aburrido**.

T: Now this is *boring* or *bored*. One of these words in English is a characteristic and the other one is a state. Which is which? *Boring*, if I say *you are boring*, is it a state or a characteristic?

S: Characteristic.

T: And if I say *you are bored*, is it a state or a characteristic?

S: A state.

T: A state. So in English we have two different words to express this difference whereas in Spanish you will just decide whether you are going to use **ser** or **estar**. So, you will have to think about it. How will you say, *it is boring*?

S: **Es aburrido**.

T: **Es aburrido**. Good. *He is bored*, is it a characteristic or a state?

S: A state.

T: Good. So, *he is bored*:

S: **Está aburrido**.

T: **Está aburrido**. But *he is boring*:

S: **Es aburrido**.

T: Good. And *she is boring*:

S: **Es aburrido**. Oh sorry, **ella es aburrido**.

T: Spanish is more subtle than that.

S: **Es aburrida.**

T: **Es aburrida.** *They are boring:*

S: **Son aburridos.**

T: **Son aburridos.** *They are bored:*

S: **Están aburridos.**

T: Good. **Están aburridos.** So with some adjectives we get a different meaning depending on whether we use **ser** or **estar**. The word for *from* in Spanish is **de**. *From* or *of*, **de**. **De**.

S: **De.**

T: We get this forming part of many Latin-English words, for example, *deliver*. The *de-* of *deliver* is actually *from*. *-liver* is to do with freedom, like *liberation*, **liberación**. How would you say *to liberate*?

S: **Liberar.**

T: Good. **Libre** is *free* in Spanish. So again we see this grey area between *v* and *b*, between English and Spanish, between **libre** and *-liver* in *deliver* just as we did between *savvy* and **saber** for example, so *deliver* is like *from* or *of freeing*, which has much more sense if you look at the original meanings of *deliver*, like *to deliver a baby*, *deliver me from evil*, rather than *to deliver a package*, which is a much more modern meaning. You can see much more the ideology in the vocabulary with the older uses. Another interesting word that we can see this **de** in, in English, is *decipher* for example. *Decipher* is actually a combination of Arabic and Latin. You have **de** meaning *of* or *from*, and “cipher” from “sifr” which means *zero* in Arabic. So *to decipher* is *to go from zero*, or something like this. So anyway we have **de** for *from* or *of*. Now, if I want to ask, *where is he from*? Is it a characteristic or a state, *where you are from*?

S: A characteristic.

T: Yes, it's not where you are, it's where you are from, this is characteristic of you. So in Spanish we are going to say, *from where are you*, *from where is he*, *from where is she*? This is the word order.

So, *from where* is what?



S: **De dónde.**

T: **De dónde.** *From where is he? From where are you (formal)? et cetera?*

S: **¿De dónde es?**

T: **¿De dónde es?** And *you* informal. You remember how was *you are, you* informal. It's kind of similar to **es**:

S: **¿De dónde eres?**

T: **¿De dónde eres?** So this sentence actually will help you remember this kind of irregular form **eres** because you will hear it all the time. **¿De dónde eres?** *From where are you, where are you from?* How would you say, *where are they from?*:

S: **¿De dónde son?**

T: **¿De dónde son?** But if you want to ask, *where are they?* Their location, *where are they?* How would you ask?

S: **¿Dónde están?**

T: Good, **¿Dónde están?** Because now we refer to a state. Good. So, we have this adjective as well, **libre**, like in *deliver* and *liberation*, **libre**, which means *free*. Again, we might mean a state or we might mean a characteristic. Now sometimes, to show the difference, we might not just use **ser** and **estar**, we might actually also change the way we say it. So for example, if you want to say *I am free*, and you mean from your exams, from work, do you think you mean a state or a characteristic?

S: A state.

T: A state. So how would you say that, *I am free?*

S: **Estoy libre.**

T: Good. **Estoy libre.** And **libre** does not change for masculine and feminine because it ends *e*. Only adjectives ending *o* will change. **Estoy libre.** Good. Now if you mean as a characteristic, as a characteristic of your personality, *you are a free person*, then you might say:

S: **Soy libre.**

T: **Soy libre.** You might also say, *I am a free person.* So *person* is **persona**, and you could say, *I am a* - what's a *person*?

S: **Una persona.**

T: Good. *I am a free person:*

S: **Soy una persona libre.**

T: Good. **Soy una persona libre.** **Persona** is feminine, not because of you, because the word is feminine. So I, as a male, would also say, **soy una persona libre.** So it's the noun in itself, **persona**, that is feminine. So in this case, with **libre**, there's no problem to move between **ser** and **estar**. You can use **libre** with **ser** or with **estar** to give slightly different meanings. So some adjectives you will be able to move between **ser** and **estar** and others you won't. If you want to get around that uncertainty, instead of trying out **soy libre** you could just say **soy una persona libre**, and then because **persona** is going with **soy**, because what you are saying in fact is, *I am a person*, **soy una persona**, then you know you are safe. Also, different Spanish dialects can have different ideas about what should go with **ser** and what should go with **estar**. So for example, **casado**, which means *married*, not **cansado**, **casado**, comes from **casa**, which literally means *housed*. When you are *married* you are *housed*. **Casado**, in some places they use with **ser** and in some places they use with **estar**. They can't agree on whether being married is a characteristic or a state. If you want to avoid this insecurity about it you can say, **soy una persona casada**, and then you know that **persona** is going with **soy**, so whatever then describes **persona** is not important. **Persona** goes with **soy**. When you say *I am a person*, then that is characteristic. Let's explore this idea a little more. *Busy* in Spanish is *occupied*, **ocupado**. **Ocupado**.

S: **Ocupado.**

T: Good. How do you say, *I am busy*?

S: **Estoy ocupada.**

T: **Estoy ocupada.** Or I would say, **estoy ocupado**. Now, if I want to say, *I am a busy person*, then with this adjective, actually, I can't switch to **soy**, and say **soy ocupado**. That's bad Spanish. But you as a Spanish learner, how are you supposed to know that? So, you can use **persona** as a safety

net, in the sense of *I am a busy person*, and then you're sure it's perfect Spanish. So how would you say *I am a busy person*?

S: **Soy una persona ocupada.**

T: Good. **Soy una persona ocupada.** So that's a characteristic, because what you are actually saying is, *I am a person*, and much more characteristic than that you can't get. So, **estoy ocupado**, as a state, and then **soy una persona ocupada**, characteristic, males or females would say **persona ocupada**. **Ocupada** refers to **persona**, not to the speaker, so I would also say, **soy una persona ocupada**. How would you say, *we are busy*?

S: **Estamos ocupados.**

T: **Estamos ocupados.** But if you wanted to say, *we are busy people*:

S: **Somos personas ocupadas.**

T: Good. **Somos personas ocupadas.** To be *worried* is to be *preoccupied*. So how do you think that would sound?

S: **Preocupado.**

T: **Preocupado.** *I am worried*:

S: **Estoy preocupada.**

T: Good. *He is worried*:

S: **Está preocupado.**

T: Good. *He is a worried person.* He is worried as a characteristic. *He is worryful*:

S: **Es una persona preocupada.**

T: Good. **Es una persona preocupada.**

## Track 33

T: So some adjectives will exclusively go with **estar**. Some adjectives will exclusively go with **ser**. Some adjectives can go with either **ser** or **estar**, and change their meaning, like **aburrido**, meaning *bored* as a state, or *boring* as a characteristic, just changing depending on whether it goes with **ser** or **estar**. Another example of a word like this is **listo**. **Listo**.

S: **Listo**.

T: Now **listo**, when it comes with **estar**, means *ready*. So how would you say *I am ready*?

S: **Estoy listo**, or **lista**, in my case.

T: **Estoy lista**, or **listo**. How would you say, *we are ready*?

S: **Estamos listos**.

T: Good. And what if we were a female group?

S: **Estamos listas**.

T: **Estamos listas**. And what if we wanted to emphasize *We are ready*:

S: **Somos**, no,

T: You make it a characteristic and it's more emphatic...

S: **Nosotros-**

T: It's a very interesting idea.

S: It's what you said when I go too fast. So it's **nosotros estamos listas**.

T: There's a contradiction there.

S: **Nosotras estamos listas**.

T: Yes. All-female group: **nosotras estamos listas**, or male or mixed group: **nosotros estamos listos**. So, to be **listo**, to be ready as a characteristic, means to be *smart* in Spanish. So this is one of the words that we can use with **ser** or **estar** and the meaning changes. So, **estoy listo**: *I am ready*. **Soy listo**: *I am smart*. So if you want to say, *he is smart*, *he is smart*, how would you say it?

S: **Es listo.**

T: **Es listo.** *She is smart:*

S: **Es lista.**

T: Good. *You are smart*, speaking informally, to a woman? If you forgot the *you are* you can think of *where are you from?* That might help you trigger it. **De dónde-**

S: **Eres. Eres lista.**

T: Good. *You are very smart:*

S: **Eres muy lista.**

T: Good. The word for *so*, like *I am so bored* or *I am so tired*, is **tan**. *T-a-n*. **Tan**.

S: **Tan.**

T: So how would you say, *I am so tired?*

S: **Estoy tan cansado. Cansada.**

T: Good. **Estoy tan cansado. Estoy tan cansada.** Good. How would you say, *I am so bored?*

S: **Estoy tan aburrida.**

T: Good. **Estoy tan aburrido, aburrida.** How would you say, *he is so bored?*

S: **Él está tan aburrido.**

T: Good. **Está tan aburrido**, or **Él está tan aburrido**. Now how would you say, *it is so boring, it is so boring. So boring, not bored. Boring.*

S: **Es tan aburrido.**

T: Good. **Es tan aburrido.** The word for *good* in Spanish is **bueno**. We've mentioned this before. We have in English *Bon Appetit* which is of course French, but we say it in English, and you can see the *o* of *bon appetit* splitting to become **bueno** in Spanish. Now the meaning of **bueno** changes as well between **ser** and **estar**. If you are talking about *it is*, the change is a kind of change in feeling. **Es bueno, está bueno**: a small change in feeling which really depends on dialect so we won't look

at it too much here, we'll just listen. But if you refer to people, in most dialects, if we use **ser**, we get the meaning of “to be a good person” or “to be good at something”. So if you want to say, *they are good*, and you mean “they are good people”, or that they are good at something, how would you say it?

S: **Son buenos.**

T: **Son buenos.** *He is good:*

S: **Es bueno.**

T: **Es bueno.** Now if you use **estar**, it will sound like *he is attractive. He is in good form.* So **bueno** with **estar**, if we are talking about people, then gives you this meaning. So how would you say that? *He is good, meaning attractive, in good form:*

S: **Está bueno.**

T: **Está bueno.** So, you see that you can have many different changes in shade of meaning between **ser** and **estar**. So other than the fact that we are being permitted and obliged to perceive and express the world in a certain way by Spanish, which is very interesting in itself, we also get the opportunity to use these different nuances between **ser** and **estar** and when you really get your head around it, which is just through listening and observing and seeing how people are using it, you will probably feel that it's missing in English. That sometimes in English you might want to clarify, not **estar** but **es**, and you can't do it. So you realize that Spanish gives you a tool to relate to reality that in this case, English doesn't give you. And this is one of the most fascinating and exciting things about language learning. Not an obstacle to speaking the language, we don't want to see it like this, oh every time I use *to be* I have to think about this “characteristic or state” business. No, we want to look at it from the other angle, about what it offers us. How would you say, *I want to know how he is*, and we mean, *I want to know, how is he doing?*

S: **Quiero saber cómo es.**

T: *How is he doing:*

S: Oh. **Cómo está.**

T: Good. **Quiero saber cómo está.** Now what would it mean, **quiero saber cómo es?** What would that mean?

S: *How he is. What he's like.*

T: Exactly. *I want to know what he's like.* Good. Another adjective you can use with **ser** or **estar** is **feliz**. What do you think **feliz** might mean?

S: *Happy.*

T: And how do you know that?

S: **Feliz navidad.**

T: Oh okay! *Happy Christmas.* **Feliz navidad.** But is there some connection in English that might have helped you as well? Did you hear *felicity* in English?

S: Yes.

T: How would *felicity* be in Spanish?

S: **Felicidad.**

T: **Felicidad.** Which means *happiness. Happiness.* So **feliz**, *happy.* So **feliz** can also go with **ser** or **estar** to give the meaning of *I am happy* or *I am a happy person.* So we don't need to say *I am a happy person*, we can just use **ser**. So like I said there's no real way for you to know that other than listening. If you wanted to play safe, and say, literally, *I am a happy person*, it would not be at all incorrect. So, firstly, how do you say, *I am happy*, as a state?

S: **Estoy feliz.**

T: **Estoy feliz.** Now, *I am happy*, and you mean as a characteristic:

S: **Soy feliz.**

T: **Soy feliz.** So this is fine. You can do this, but there is no real way for you to know whether **feliz** is an adjective that is flexible enough to be used with **ser** and **estar**. It really depends on the adjective itself, the word itself, rather than the meaning in many cases. So, with that insecurity, and wanting to give the meaning, you could have just said, *I am a happy person*, and then you don't have to worry about it. So how would you say that?

S: **Soy una persona feliz.**

T: Good. **Soy una persona feliz.** And that's also perfect Spanish. So there you could have said **soy feliz** or **soy una persona feliz**. So to really get our heads around **ser** and **estar** it's important to listen actively, and to notice and see how people are using **ser** and **estar**, and making our own conclusions as to why, working with this base of state and characteristic. It's a process of listening, and the more you get intimate with this idea, it offers you a great range of expression that you don't have in English and you should really enjoy it.



## Track 34

T: *To speak*. Do you remember how to say *to speak*? It begins with the silent *h*.

S: **Hablar**.

T: **Hablar**. Good. What is *I speak* or *I am speaking*?

S: **Hablo**.

T: **Hablo**. Good. And what was *to sleep*, or *to be dormant* let's say?

S: **Dormir**.

T: **Dormir**. And how do you say *I sleep*?

S: **Duermo**.

T: Good. We said also that you can get the additional meaning of *I fall asleep* by saying *I sleep myself*:

S: **Me duermo**.

T: **Me duermo**. Good. *To eat* was:

S: **Comer**.

T: **Comer**. Good. So *I eat* or *I am eating* is:

S: **Como**.

T: **Como**. So here the *o* doesn't split. Good. *To have breakfast*, *to have breakfast*, we don't say in Spanish *to have breakfast*. We have a verb *to breakfast*, let's say, and the verb *to breakfast* is **desayunar, desayunar**.

S: **Desayunar**.

T: *Breakfast* and **desayunar** are direct translations of each other in fact. I don't know if you noticed that in English *breakfast* is "break fast". When we have breakfast we break the fast. And in Spanish "des" is like *un*, **ayunar** is *to fast*. So to "un-fast". So **desayunar** is like to "un-fast", to "break fast". **Desayunar**.

S: **Desayunar**.

T: *To have breakfast. I'm having breakfast or I have breakfast:*

S: **Desayuno.**

T: **Desayuno.** And **desayuno** is also the noun. **El desayuno** is *the breakfast*. What was *to wait* or *to hope*? *Desperate* is related because again we have this “des” like in **desayunar** which is like “un-hoped” or “un-hopeful” is to be *desperate*. So *to wait* or *to hope*:

S: **Esperar.**

T: Good. **Esperar.** Good. What is *I wait* or *I am waiting* or *I hope* or *I am hoping*?

S: **Espero.**

T: **Espero.** So we've been giving the verbs two translations in the present tense. *I speak* or *I am speaking*, *I go* or *I am going*, *I wait* or *I am waiting*. This is because this *-ing* tense in English we really overuse it. For example we use this *-ing* in English to refer to the future: *He is doing it tomorrow*, whereas in Spanish we just use the present tense with that future context. **Lo hace mañana.** Which is why we need to give both translations for **hace**, for example. *He makes or does* or *he is making or doing*. And we translate **hablo** as *I speak* and *I am speaking*. But this doesn't mean that *I am speaking* doesn't exist. It does exist but we use it in Spanish only when we want to show what we are doing right now in this moment. So, beginning this structure *I am speaking*, this *I am*: do you think that you would choose **ser** for characteristics, or do you think that you would choose **estar** for states?

S: It's a state so **estoy**.

T: Good. We will use **estar** because of course what we are doing is a state. So we will always use **estar** with these structures. So the first part of this sentence is **estoy**. Now to get *speaking*, *-ing*, from *to speak* we take off *-r* and we add *-ando*, *-ando*. And we get **hablando**.

S: **Hablando.**

T: So, *I'm speaking*:

S: **Estoy hablando.**

T: **Estoy hablando.** Good. So maybe somebody interrupts you and you won't say **hablo**, you will say **estoy hablando**. How would you say *I am waiting* and you mean right now? *Right now, I am waiting here, I am waiting here:*

S: **Estoy esperando aquí.**

T: **Estoy esperando aquí.** Good. So you could say **espero aquí**. Maybe it would sound a little more like *I'll wait here* rather than *I am waiting here* but both are fine. In many situations both are fine and there will be just a slight change in meaning. **Espero aquí, estoy esperando aquí.** What you can't do is say *I am eating with her tomorrow*. The *-ing*, you need to use it just for what you are doing right now. So how was *to speak*?

S: **Hablar.**

T: And how would you say *I speak* or *I am speaking*?

S: **Hablo.**

T: **Hablo.** And what was *to prepare*? If you forgot it you can go from *preparation*.

S: **Preparación, Preparar.**

T: And *I prepare* or *I am preparing*:

S: **Preparo.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I am preparing it tomorrow*?

S: **Lo preparo mañana.**

T: **Lo preparo mañana.** So if you want to show, if you want to emphasize that we are doing something right now, *I am preparing*, firstly if we divide that up into two bits: *I am - preparing*:

S: **Estoy.**

T: **Estoy.** Good. **Preparar** becomes?

S: **Preparando.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I am preparing*?

S: **Estoy preparando.**

T: Good. **Estoy preparando.** Good. So that's if you want to say *I am preparing it right now*, you can use this structure. So how would you say *I am preparing it*?

S: **Lo estoy preparando.**

T: **Lo estoy preparando** or **Estoy preparándolo.** Even though it's a changed verb here we can have the **lo** after *-ando*. **Estoy preparándolo** or **lo estoy preparando.** We said that *to have breakfast* was **desayunar, desayunar.** So how would you say *we are having breakfast* and you mean right now?

S: **Estamos desayunando.**

T: *-ando.* Good. **Estamos desayunando.** So, for *-ar* verbs we take off the *-ar* and we put *-ando* and we get this tense to show what we are doing right now. And we are not going to use it as we do in English: *I'm finding out tomorrow* and *I'm doing it next week, I'm preparing it later.* How would you say *I'm preparing it later*?

S: **Estoy preparando-**

T: This is *not* how we use it. So in Spanish we only use it to describe what we're doing right now.

S: Right. Sorry.

T: So this is why we are giving **preparo**, for example, the translation of both *I prepare* and *I am preparing*. So that when we want to say things like *I am preparing it later*, we don't go to **estoy preparando.**

S: **Lo preparo más tarde.**

T: **Lo preparo más tarde.** Good. But if you wanted to give the meaning of *I am preparing it right now*, how would you say it?

S: **Estoy preparándolo.**

T: Good. **Estoy preparándolo** or **lo estoy preparando.** And there you get the meaning of *right now in this moment.* Good. So for *-ar* verbs we are taking off the *-ar* and we are putting *-ando* to get

this *-ing*. For *-er*, *-ir* verbs we take off the *-er* or the *-ir* and we put on *-iendo*, *-iendo*, *i-e-n-d-o*, to get this *-ing* form. So how would you get *eating* from *to eat*? How would *eating* be from **comer**?

S: **Comiendo.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I am eating*, and you mean right now?

S: **Estoy comiendo.**

T: **Estoy comiendo.** Good. *I am eating*. And how would you say *he is eating* or *she is eating* or *you* formal?

S: **Está comiendo.**

T: Good. **Está comiendo.** So maybe somebody calls you and they say *Can I speak to Pablo?*, and you say **Está comiendo**, you mean right now. What was *to sell*? You can think of *vending machine*.

S: **Vender.**

T: **Vender.** Good. How would you say: *They sell it, they sell it?*

S: **Venden. Lo venden.**

T: **Lo venden.** Good. How would you say *they are selling it tomorrow* or *they will sell it tomorrow?*

S: **Lo venden mañana.**

T: **Lo venden mañana.** Good. Now if you want to say *they are selling it right now*, and you want to give that meaning “right now” how would it be?

S: **Están vendiéndolo.**

T: Good. **Están vendiéndolo** or **lo están vendiendo.** Good.

## Track 35

T: So going back to **ser** and **estar**, and the difference between **ser** and **estar**, how would you say *sincerity* in Spanish? *Sincerity*:

S: Is it **sinceridad**?

T: It is. **Sinceridad**. So if you had to guess, what is *sincere* in Spanish, what would you guess?

S: **Sencero**.

T: **Sincero**.

S: **Sincero**.

T: **Sincero**. Good. So there's no rule for this, but if we have *sincerity* becoming **sinceridad**, we can guess that *sincere* will be very similar in Spanish and we can play around and try to find it. **Sincero**. Good. So do you think to be *sincere* is a state or a characteristic?

S: It can be both, depending on the situation.

T: Indeed, but if you look at the concept, the concept of *sincere* - because this is how Spanish decides it - the concept of *sincere*, is it a state or a characteristic to be *sincere*?

S: Well if it's, generally it's a characteristic, but if someone, we're talking about that moment that someone is saying something, then in that moment, they're being, they're in that state of being sincere.

T: You're right, and our usage, and that's what we're going to look at now, can get around that, but Spanish is not looking at the use. It's looking just at the concept by itself, so *sincerity*, is it a characteristic or is it a state?

S: It's a characteristic.

T: Good. So, it goes with **ser**. So if you want to say, *I am sincere*, how would you say it?

S: **Soy sincero, sincera**.

T: Good. **Soy sincera**. Good. And *we are sincere*:

S: **Somos sinceras**, if it's women.

T: Good.

S: Or **sinceros**.

T: Good. But, as you correctly said, you might want to say, *I am being sincere now*. So to give the meaning of *I am being sincere*, you will say, very literally, *I am being sincere*. How would you say that? *I am being sincere*:

S: **Estoy**, I forgot the word for *being*.

T: **Ser** is *to be*, in this case because it refers to **sincero**, so how would you make that *-ing*? **Vender**, **vendiendo**. **Ser**:

S: **Estoy siendo sincero**.

T: Or in your case it would be?

S: **Sincera**.

T: Good. **Estoy siendo sincera**. Or **estoy siendo sincero**.

*Honest* in Spanish is **honesto**. **Honesto**. So how would you say, *we are being honest*?

S: **Estamos siendo honestos**.

T: Good. **Estamos siendo honestos**. So *to be honest*, as an idea, is characteristic. But this doesn't restrict us in Spanish of course, if you want to say *we are being honest*, we can do that in exactly the same way as we do in English. *We are*: **estamos**, *being*: **siendo**, our characteristic to be: **honestos**. **Estamos siendo honestos**. Good! **Salir** is *to go out* or *to leave*. **Salir**. *To go out* or *to leave*, and it's irregular in that the *I* version is not "salo" but, you remember how it was?

S: **Salgo**.

T: **Salgo**. Good. **Salgo**. *I leave* or *I go out*. Good. *Soon, soon* in Spanish is **pronto**. So you can say, *I am leaving soon*. Is *soon* right now?

S: No.

T: No. So how would you say, *I am leaving soon*?

S: **Salgo pronto.**

T: Good. **Salgo pronto.** And how would you say, *I am leaving tomorrow?*

S: **Salgo mañana.**

T: Good. **Salgo mañana.** But if you want to say, *I am leaving right now*, and you mean this moment?

S: **Estoy saliendo.**

T: **Estoy saliendo.** So we need to resist the temptation of the negative language transfer from English which will make us want to put *-ing* in many places where we don't put it in Spanish, which is why we are giving usually in the present tense both translations: *I wait, I am waiting; I sell, I am selling.* *To buy* was **comprar**.

S: **Comprar.**

T: *I buy them, or I'm buying them.* How would that be?

S: **Los compro.**

T: **Los compro.** Good. *I am buying them tomorrow:*

S: **Los compro mañana.**

T: Good. *I am buying them next week. Next week is the week that comes.* **La semana** is the week.

What is *to come*?

S: **Venir.**

T: Good. So how would you say *the week that comes*? **La semana que:**

S: **Viene.**

T: So *I'm buying them next week, I'm buying them the week that comes:*

S: **Los compro la semana que viene.**

T: Good. **Los compro la semana que viene.** So again, here we would use *-ing* in English, *I am buying them next week*, but we want to resist that temptation in Spanish. **Los compro la semana que**



**viene.** If you wanted to say *right now*: so maybe you get a phone call and somebody asks you, *have you bought them yet?* And you say, *I am buying them now*, how would you say that?

**S: Estoy comprándolos ahora.**

T: Good, good. *I am buying them now.* **Los estoy comprando ahora, estoy comprándolos ahora.**

## Track 36

T: So we saw that we can use the present tense to refer to the future. For example, if we have some future context we can just use the present tense by itself. So we could say *I am having breakfast with them tomorrow*. Now in Spanish, you don't say *with them*. You say *with they*. *With they*. So how would that be, first?

S: **Con ellos.**

T: Good. And to *have breakfast*, we said, was to “un-fast”. **Desayunar**, like in English *breakfast*, “break fast”. So, *I'm having breakfast with them tomorrow*:

S: **Desayuno con ellos mañana.**

T: Good. **Desayuno con ellos mañana.** Good. And if we don't have a future context, like **mañana** or any other context showing us it's the future, we can also use *I am going* to speak about the future. So you can say *I am going to have breakfast with them*. How is that?

S: **Voy a desayunar con ellos.**

T: Good. **Voy a desayunar con ellos.** Good. And if we have the future context, it doesn't mean we have to say **desayuno con ellos mañana**. We could also say **voy a desayunar con ellos mañana**. The fact that we have future context doesn't mean we can't use **voy** anymore. So we've seen in that way we can use the present to talk about the future, but this doesn't mean that we don't have a future tense in Spanish. We do. Luckily, we don't have to learn any new sounds to master the future tense in Spanish. The future tense in Spanish is connected with the past tense that we learned of **haber**. **Haber**. This past of *I have had breakfast* or *I have eaten, I have gone*. So let's make a recap of the forms of **haber**. Now it's very irregular, **haber**, and we said that a nice trick to remember the different forms of **haber** is just looking at the two vowel sounds inside the verb **haber**. So what are those two vowel sounds?

S: /a/ and /e/.

T: Good. Let's start with /e/. What does **he** mean by itself?

S: *I have*.

T: Good. *I have* spelled *h-e*. And what other person is connected with *I*? What's the plural of *I*, let's say?

S: **Hemos.**

T: Good. *We*. So we have **he** for *I have* and **hemos** for *we have*. What is **ha** by itself? *H-a*:

S: *He, she, it, or you* (formal).

T: Good. So give me the other two versions now.

S: **Han.**

T: Good. *They* or *you guys*.

S: And **has**, which is *you* (informal).

T: Good. So that's our set. Let's practice a little bit some structures with **haber** just to recap. So what was *to sleep*? *Dormant*:

S: **Dormir.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I have slept*? Begin with *I have*:

S: **He dormido.**

T: Good. *We have slept*:

S: **Hemos dormido.**

T: *He has slept*:

S: **Ha dormido.**

T: Good. How would you say *to recommend*?

S: **Recomendación. Recomendar.**

T: Good. So how would you say *They have recommended it, they have recommended it*, and I remind you that with these structures with **haber**, the *it* has to come before **haber**. There's no option of where to put it. So *They have recommended it*:

S: **Lo han recomendado.**

T: **Lo han recomendado.** Good. So these forms that we have, these forms of haber that we have – **he, hemos, ha, has, han** – are also the endings that we have for the future tense. So like I said, we will learn the future tense now without having to learn any new sounds. Now, the interesting thing about the future tense is that we take the verb in its “to” form, where it’s an *-ar* verb, *-er* verb, or *-ir* verb, doesn’t matter, and we put the ending at the end of the “to” form. And we stress the ending. We are effectively pushing the accent into the future. For example, we have **comer**, and what was *I have* from **haber**?

S: **He.**

T: **He.** So that’s the sound, without the *h*, just the sound /e/. That’s the sound that we need for future for *I*. We add that on to **comer** and we get **comeré**, and that’s *I will eat*. Now we are pushing the accent into the future, which might just seem like a coincidence. But you can notice that it happens in other languages as well, this phenomenon. For example, in Greek part of the past tense is to pull the accent back one syllable, to pull the accent back into the past. And actually, this is so important in Greek that if there is not a syllable there to do it, you add one to pull the accent back into the past. So this is a phenomenon that you see in different languages. The accents representing somehow or reflecting somehow the concept of time and tenses. So here we have pushing the accent into the future: **comeré**. *I will eat*. You can give me the rest of the versions for the future of **comer**.

S: **Comeremos.**

T: Good. **Comeremos:** *We will eat*.

S: **Comerá.**

T: Good. *He will eat*.

S: **Comerás.**

T: *You (informal) will eat*.

S: **Comerán.**

T: Good. *They or you guys will eat*. Good. What was *to go*? We said it was very irregular. We have **voy** and **vamos** and **va**, but the verb *to go* doesn’t look anything like them.

S: **Ir.**

T: **Ir.** **Ir** in the future is regular. So we can follow these rules and get the future tenses of *to go*: *I will go, he will go*. So what is *I will go*?

S: **Iré.**

T: **Iré.** And *we will go*:

S: **Iremos.**

T: **Iremos.** *He will go*:

S: **Irá.**

T: **Irá.** *They or you guys*:

S: **Irán.**

T: **Irán.** Like the country. *They will go to Iran*:

S: **Irán a Irán.**

T: **Irán a Irán.** Good. *You (informal) will go*:

S: **Irás.**

T: Good. And what if we wanted to make it a question? *Will you go?*:

S: **¿Irás?**

T: Good. *Won't you go?*:

S: **¿No irás?**

T: *Why won't you go?*:

S: **¿Por qué no irás?**

T: Good. What was *to find* or *to encounter*?

S: **Encontrar.**

T: **Encontrar.** *I will find*:

S: **Encontraré.**

T: Good. **Encontraré.** *I will find it:*

S: **Lo encontraré.**

T: Good. **Lo encontraré.** *We will find it:*

S: **Los encontraré.**

T: That was an interesting error, because I said *we*, so I made *I* plural with *we*, and your mind made the *it* plural, ah?

S: Yeah.

T: *We will find it:*

S: **Lo encontraremos.**

T: Good. **Lo encontraremos.** *He or she or you (formal) will find it:*

S: **Lo encontraré.**

T: Good. **Lo encontraré.** *He will find them, or she will find them, or you (formal) will find them:*

S: **Los encontrarán.**

T: So you made both of them *them* or *they*.

S: You said *them*.

T: But we said *He will find them* or *she will find them*.

S: Oh sorry! **Los encontraré.**

T: Good. **Los encontraré.** So we want to think about the two things separately, ah? Who is doing the verb and who are they doing it to. Who or what are they doing it to. We said that **quedar** means *to remain*, **quedar**, and to get the meaning of *I stay* we say *I remain myself*. How was that? *I remain myself:*

S: **Me quedo.**

T: **Me quedo.** Good. How would you say *I will stay*, then? *I will remain myself.*

S: **Quedaré.**

T: Good, but **quedaré** means *I will remain* and if you want the meaning of *stay*, you must, must use-

S: **Me.**

T: Yeah.

S: **Me quedaré.**

T: **Me quedaré.** *I will remain myself or I will stay. I will stay here:*

S: **Me quedaré aquí.**

T: Good. What was *to prepare*?

S: **Preparar.**

T: Good. And *I will prepare*:

S: **Prepararé.**

T: Good. So it's very important to think out the whole verb, **preparar**, and then add on the *-e*, **prepararé**. Because a very common mistake that learners make is to say **preparé**. And they miss out the last *ar* because they don't think out the whole verb first. So we must think out the whole verb first, **preparar**, and then add on the ending, **prepararé**. What was *to wait* or *to hope*?

S: **Esperar.**

T: **Esperar.** *I will wait:*

S: **Esperaré.**

T: Good. What was *to organize*?

S: **Organizar.**

T: Good. *He will organize:*

S: **Organizará.**

T: Good. **Organizará**. So the useful thing about the accent being on this ending is that we don't have to worry about where the accent goes when we're pronouncing the whole verb, **organizará**.

On the end. **Organizará.** *They will organize:*

S: **Organizarán.**

T: Good. **Organizarán.** Good. What was *tired*?

S: **Cansado.**

T: Good. **Cansado.** So how would you say *I will be tired? I will be tired:*

S: **Seré?** Ah. **Estaré cansada.**

T: Good. **Estaré cansada.** Good. How would *it will be* be, from **ser**? *It will be*, using **ser**:

S: **Será.**

T: Good. Sound familiar from anywhere?

S: **Que será, será.**

T: Yes. So very simple, the future tense. Doesn't matter if we have *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir* verb. We are adding on these endings and these endings are the same as the different versions of **haber**. So if we forget them we can look back to **haber** and then we just add that on the end. But, in saying that, the future tense is not so often used in Spanish. Most of the time you will find yourself using present or **voy a, vamos a**. But the future tense does exist and now you know it.



## Track 37

T: What was the verb *to give*, do you remember the verb *to give*?

S: **Dar.**

T: **Dar.** Good. So how would you say *I will give*?

S: **Daré.**

T: Good. And *we will give*:

S: **Daremos.**

T: Good. And *he will give* or *she, you* (formal), *it*:

S: **Dará.**

T: Good. *They, you guys*:

S: **Darán.**

T: And *you* (informal):

S: **Darás.**

T: Good. How would you say *Will you guys give it to me*? Now, *me* – **me** – can also mean *to me*, so we don't need that *to*. And out of these little words, **me**, and what is the word for *it*?

S: **Lo.**

T: **Lo.** So out of these little words, **me** and **lo**, the personal one, the one referring to the person, comes first. *Will you guys give it to me*?:

S: ¿**Me lo darán**?

T: Good. ¿**Me lo darán**? What if this *it* was a feminine thing?

S: ¿**Me la darán**?

T: Good. ¿**Me la darán**? And I should clarify, this isn't a way of requesting, like in English, *Will you guys give it to me*?, like *Can you guys give it to me*? This is more of a literal question, *Are you*

*guys going to give it to me? Will you guys give it to me?* If you want to get this meaning of *will you like can you*, you will just use *can you* in Spanish. The word for *something* is **algo**. A-l-g-o.

S: **Algo.**

T: Good. So how would you say *They will give you something*, and we mean informal *you*? Remember the thought process. The thought process must be, first, “Who is doing the verb? Who is doing the verb?” *They will give*. That’s the first place:

S: **Darán.**

T: *You something:*

S: **Te darán algo.**

T: **Te darán algo.** Good. How would you say *They will give it to you*, still speaking informally?

*They will give it to you:*

S: **Te lo darán.**

T: Good. **Te lo darán.** *They will give it to you.* Good. How would you say *They will give it to us, they will give it to us:*

S: So it’s **Nos lo darán.**

T: Good. **Nos lo darán.** *They will not give it to us:*

S: **No nos lo darán.**

T: Good. **No nos lo darán.** So we saw that **me, te, nos** can mean *me* or *to me*, *you* or *to you*, *us* or *to us*, or even in some other circumstances *for me* or *for us*, *for you*. **Me, te, nos** can also mean *myself*, *yourself*, and *ourselves*. For example, you can say *I give myself* and you will just use **me**. So how would you say *I give myself*?

S: **Me doy?**

T: **Me doy.** If you want to say *I realize* in Spanish, you say **me doy cuenta**. **Cuenta** is something like *account, to give yourself account of, to take account of*. That’s how you say *I realize* in Spanish.

If you say **realizar** it means to *realize* like a project, to bring into fruition, no? So you say *I give myself account*, **cuenta**. So how would you say that?

S: **Me doy cuenta**.

T: **Me doy cuenta**. This means *I realize*. *You realize*, talking informally?

S: **Te das cuenta**.

T: Good. **Te das cuenta**. How would you make that a question?

S: ¿**Te das cuenta**?

T: Good. ¿**Te das cuenta**? This is used a lot conversationally. ¿**Te das cuenta**? *Do you realize? Do you know what I mean? Do you know what I'm saying?* Good. *We realize, we realize, we give ourselves account*:

S: **Nos damos cuenta**.

T: Good. **Nos damos cuenta**. So **me** can mean *to me, for me, from me*. It can mean *myself*. **Te** can mean *you* or *to you, from you, yourself*. And **nos**: *us, to us, or ourselves or each other*. We said that you might hear **nos vemos** – *we see each other* – as a way to say *ciao, goodbye*. **Nos vemos**. *We see each other later. See you later*. Now, you get all of these different meanings with **me, te,** and **nos**, but the ones beginning with *l*, so **lo, la, los, las**, they do change to get these different meanings. So when we say *to him* or *to her* or *to you* (formal) or *to them* we go from **lo** and **la** and **los** and **las** to **le** and **les**. So **lo** and **la** become **le**, and **los** and **las** become **les**. For example, **lo doy** means *I give it*. Now, if I want to say *I give him*, what I actually mean is *I give to him*, in which case here we must change to **le**. If I say *I give her*, I don't mean I'm going to pick her up and give her to somebody. I probably mean *I give to her*. In which case we're not going to use **la**, we're going to use **le**. So let's practice this a little bit. So we said **dar** is *to give*. Now, if you say *I give it*, how do you say that?

S: **Lo doy**.

T: **Lo doy**. And *I give them* and you still are talking about the things you are giving?

S: **Los doy**.

T: **Los doy.** But now if you want to say *I give them* and you mean *to them*. So remember you might not even say this *to* in English. But what you mean is *I give to them*, then this **los** is going to change.

S: **Les doy.**

T: **Les doy.** Good. The word for *something* was?

S: **Algo.**

T: **Algo.** So let's say *I'm giving them something*:

S: **Les doy algo.**

T: **Les doy algo.** Good. So this is *to them*. *To speak, to speak*, began with a silent *h*. I don't know if you remember this verb.

S: **Hablar.**

T: **Hablar.** Good. So how do you say *I speak*?

S: **Hablo.**

T: **Hablo.** How would you say *I have spoken? I have*:

S: **He.**

T: Yes. **He.** So *I have spoken*:

S: **He**, is it **hablando**?

T: No. This is *speaking* and *spoken* is very similar.

S: **He hablado.**

T: **He hablado.** Good. *I have spoken to him*:

S: **Le he hablado.**

T: Good. **Le he hablado.** *I have spoken to him or to her*. Could be either. Now what if you wanted to say *We have spoken to him*?

S: **Le hemos hablado.**

T: Good. **Le hemos hablado.** So this **le**, it could be the **lo** to **le**, or the **la** to **le**. So many meanings are included here. It could be *We have spoken to him*, *We have spoken to her*, *We have spoken to you* (formal), speaking to male or female. **Le hemos hablado.** How was *he has*? Or *she has* or *it has*, from **haber**?

S: **Ha.**

T: **Ha.** Good. *H-a. Ha. He has spoken:*

S: **Ha hablado.**

T: Good. *They have spoken:*

S: **Han hablado.**

T: **Han hablado.** *They have spoken about it, they have spoken it:*

S: **Lo han hablado.**

T: Good. *They have spoken to him or to her:*

S: **Le han hablado.**

T: Good. **Le han hablado.** *They have spoken to them.* I mean one *them* spoken to a different *them*.

*They have spoken to them:*

S: **Les han hablado.**

T: Very good. **Les han hablado.** Good. So we had **ver**, *to see*. The version for *I see* was a little bit irregular, how was it?

S: **Veo.**

T: **Veo.** Good. A little bit irregular, not “vo” as it should be, *v-o*, it’s **veo**, *v-e-o*. Good. So if you want to say *I see it* or *I see him* or *I see you*, talking formally:

S: **Lo veo.**

T: **Lo veo.** What if you saw a feminine thing or if you saw *her* or if you saw *you* (formal), talking to a female?

S: **La veo.**

T: **La veo.** What if you were seeing **las casas**, what if you meant *I see them*, and you're referring to feminine things?

S: **Las veo.**

T: **Las veo.** And what else could it mean, then? Other than *I see them*, talking about things?

S: *I see them*, meaning women.

T: Or? What else?

S: *You*, females.

T: Yeah. *I see them*, females, *I see you guys*, females, or *I see them*, feminine objects. Good. We said that *the kitchen* is **la cocina** and to make the verb you can just stick an *r* on **cocina** and you get?

S: **Cocinar.**

T: **Cocinar**, with the accent on the end. **Cocinar.** Now in English if I say *He's cooking me something*, I can say *He's cooking me something* or *He's cooking something for me*. Both are acceptable in English. So we're not looking for the direct translation, we're looking for the feeling more than anything. We want to identify the feeling of "is it *to me*, is it *for me*, or is it directly *me*?" *Is he cooking me*? So it's the feeling that we want to get our heads around more than the direct translation of whether we're using *to* or not in English. For example, *I listen to him*. Here we're using *to* in English, with *listen*. But we don't use it with *hear*. *I hear him*. *I listen to him*. So we're not looking for direct translation of when we're using *to* and *for* or not. What we're trying to do is generally perceive, ok, am I being cooked? Am I being spoken? Am I coming out of somebody's mouth? Ah? Or is it indirect, am I being cooked *for*? Am I being given *to*? So, like I said, with **me**, **te** and **nos** it doesn't matter anyway, because they won't change. So if I want to say *He's cooking me*, and I mean he's directly cooking me in the oven, or if I mean he's cooking something for me, then the sentence isn't going to change anyway in Spanish. So how would you say that? *He is cooking me something*, *he is cooking me something*:

S: **Me cocina algo.**

T: Good. **Me cocina algo.** Now let's say *He's cooking something for us*:

S: **Nos cocina algo.**

T: Good. **Nos cocina algo.** *He's cooking something for you*, speaking informally:

S: **Te cocina algo.**

T: Good. So **me, te, nos** we don't have to worry about them. They don't change. But if I want to say *He is cooking him something*, how would I say it?

S: **Le cocina algo.**

T: Very good. How would you say *He is cooking them something*?

S: **Les cocina algo.**

T: Good. **Les cocina algo.** What if you wanted to say *He is cooking them* and with this *them* you are referring to the things he is cooking? Not to the people he is cooking for.

S: **Los cocina algo.**

T: Eh, we don't need the **algo** anymore.

S: **Los cocina.**

T: **Los cocina.** And if he was cooking feminine things, like **las tartas**, *the tarts*, for example, how would it be? *He's cooking them:*

S: **Las cocina.**

T: Good. Now if you wanted to say *He's cooking them for us* and we still mean feminine things, let's stay with **las tartas**. *He's cooking them for us*, how would it be?

S: **Nos las cocina.**

T: Perfect. We don't need *for* or any of this and we put the personal one first. **Nos las cocina.** Good.  
Again, what was *to speak*?

S: **Hablar.**

T: Good. *I speak:*

S: **Hablo.**

T: Good. *I speak to him:*

S: **Le hablo.**

T: **Le hablo.** Good. And *I'm speaking to them:*

S: **Les hablo.**

T: Good. *They are speaking to them:*

S: **Les hablan.**

T: Good.



## Track 38

T: So, we said that **lo** and **la** and **los** and **las**, become **le** and **les**. The four become two. The four options of **lo**, **la**, **los**, **las** become **le** and **les** when it's *to him, to her, for him, for her*. And we said that **me**, **te**, and **nos**, they don't change to get these different meanings. They stay as they are. And we also saw that these words, **me**, **te**, and **nos** could mean *myself, yourself, ourselves* or *each other*. So how would you say *I speak to myself*?

S: **Me hablo.**

T: **Me hablo.** *We speak to ourselves:*

S: **Nos hablamos.**

T: **Nos hablamos.** Although, of course, the more natural meaning you would probably understand from **nos hablamos** is *we speak to each other*, as **nos** also means *each other*. Now to get the meaning of *himself, herself, themselves*, **lo** and **la** and **los** and **las** become **se**. Which is very easy to remember because it's the beginning of *self*. So when we want this meaning of *self* or *selves*, we get **se**. So, to recap: **me**, **te**, and **nos**, they already have the meanings included of *myself, yourself, ourselves, each other*, but these ones that change, the small words that change, **lo**, **la**, **los** and **las**, to get the meaning of *himself, herself, themselves* is going to be **se**. So let's practice it. *He speaks to himself*. How would you say that?

S: **Se habla.**

T: **Se habla.** You could say the word for *he*. What is the word for *he*?

S: **Él. Él se habla.**

T: **Él se habla.** *She speaks to herself*, and clarify. Use the word for *she*.

S: **Ella. Ella se habla.**

T: **Ella se habla.** Good. *They speak to themselves:*

S: **Se hablan.**

T: **Se hablan. Se habla. Se hablan. Se.** There's no change. *I speak to myself:*

S: **Me hablo.**

T: **Me hablo.** Good. So here we are not using **se**. For **me**, **te** and **nos** we have all of the meanings included in **me**, **te**, and **nos**. Good. Tell me again how is *they speak*:

S: **Hablan.**

T: Good, but the accent was-

S: **HA-blan.**

T: **Hablan.** *They speak to them.* Now a different *them*. Not *themselves*. Ah, *they speak to them*. This group is speaking to another group.

S: **Les hablan.**

T: So now we can go back to a verb like *to stay*, *to remain* was **quedar**. So to get the meaning of *stay*, you say *I remain myself*. So how was that?

S: **Me quedo.**

T: Good. **Me quedo.** *We remain ourselves* or *we stay*:

S: **Nos quedemos.**

T: *-ar* verb.

S: **Nos quedamos.**

T: **Nos quedamos.** Good. And *you stay*, talking informally. *You remain yourself*:

S: **Te quedas.**

T: **Te quedas.** *Are you staying?:*

S: **¿Te quedas?**

T: *Aren't you staying?:*

S: **¿No te quedas?**

T: *Why don't you stay?:*

S: **¿Por qué no te quedas?**

T: Good. **¿Por qué no te quedas?** Good. Let's just practice the words for emphasis as well. So you could say *I am staying*. What is the word for *I*:

S: **Yo.**

T: **Yo.** *I'm staying. I'm remaining myself:*

S: **Yo me quedo.**

T: **Yo me quedo.** Good. What was the word for *we*? Not *us*, but *we*?

S: **Nosotros.**

T: **Nosotros.** So we have **nosotros** for *we*. How would you say *we are staying*? *We are remaining ourselves*:

S: **Nosotros nos quedamos.**

T: Good. **Nosotros nos quedamos.** And if you are an all female group, **nosotros** will change.

S: **Nosotras.**

T: Good. **Nosotras nos quedamos** if you are an all female group. What is the word for *you* in the sense of if we want to clarify or emphasize *you are staying*, speaking informally. Not **te**, but:

S: **Tú.**

T: **Tú.** Good. So how would you say *you are staying* - emphasizing that we mean *you*?

S: **Tú te quedas.**

T: **Tú te quedas.** Good. So these are the versions actually we were practicing before with **me**, **te**, and **nos**. We didn't look at *he stays*, because actually what we needed to say *he stays* is *he remains himself* and we didn't have that yet. But now we do.

S: **Se** - it's **queda**.

T: Good. That's it. **Se queda.** *He stays. She stays. You stay. They stay*, or *they remain themselves*:

S: **Se quedan.**

T: **Se quedan.** Good. **Querer** was *to want*. **Querer.** What was *I want*?

S: **Quiero.**

T: **Quiero.** The /e/ of **querer** splits when we put the stress on it. **Quiero.** Now if you want to say *I want to stay*, you say, *I want to remain myself*. So how is that?

S: **Quiero quedarme.**

T: Good. **Quiero quedarme.** *He wants to remain himself or she wants to remain herself, he wants to stay, she wants to stay:*

S: **Quiere quedarse.**

T: Good. **Quiere quedarse.** *She wants to stay. Ella quiere quedarse. He wants to stay. Él quiere quedarse.* *You (formal) want to stay. Usted quiere quedarse.* What if you wanted to say *they want to stay* or *you guys want to stay*?

S: **Quieren quedarse.**

T: **Quieren quedarse.** So this could mean *they want to stay* or *you guys want to stay*. How would you clarify? Let's clarify *they want to stay*:

S: **Ellos quieren quedarse.**

T: Good. And what if it was a female group?

S: **Ellas quieren quedarse.**

T: **Ellas quieren quedarse.** Good. And *you guys*:

S: **Ustedes quieren quedarse.**

T: Good. **Ustedes quieren quedarse.** And we said that while **usted** is formal, **ustedes**, the plural *you*, is not necessarily formal. **Quedarse** is the version of the verb that you are going to find in the dictionary. So in the dictionary you will find **quedar** and all of the different meanings of **quedar** which is *remain* and the various other meanings, actually, this verb has, could be used like *to fit*. **Me queda bien.** *It fits me well. It suits me well.* And then you will find the next entry: **quedarse**. And then you will find next to it *to stay*. So when this reflexive, when this “doing it to oneself” carries a different meaning, it will get a different entry in the dictionary. And it's not going to be

in the dictionary as **quedarme**, or **quedarte**, or **quedarnos**, but **quedarse** because this **se** is also like *oneself*. No? If it's *himself, herself, itself*; it's also like *oneself*. So in the dictionary what you find is *to remain oneself*. **Quedarse**. The **se** is written like one word. Whenever we put **se, lo, me, te, nos**, one of these small words at the end of the "to" form, it's written like one word. You write it all together. Let's practice this just with one more verb. We said that to get the sense of *realize, I realize*. In Spanish you say *to give yourself account*. Which is a little bit like *to take account of* in English. Now you need to look at **darse cuenta** to know how to manipulate it to get the different versions of it that you might want. So let's begin with *I realize. I realize. I give myself account*.

S: **Me doy- me doy cuenta.**

T: That's it. **Me doy cuenta.** *I don't realize:*

S: **No me doy cuenta.**

T: **No me doy cuenta.** Good. *We realize, or we give ourselves account:*

S: **Nos damos cuenta.**

T: Good. **Nos damos cuenta.** Perfect. *We don't realize:*

S: **No nos damos cuenta.**

T: Good. **No nos damos cuenta.** Now we can make the other versions with *he, she, it* and *you* formal and *they* and *you guys* because we have **se**. So now we can do this. So how would you say *he realizes* or *she realizes*? Go back to **dar**.

S: **Da- se da cuenta.**

T: Good. **Se da cuenta.** What if we wanted to clarify? *She - she realizes:*

S: **Ella se da cuenta.**

T: Good. **Ella se da cuenta.** Good, and *they realize:*

S: **Se dan cuenta.**

T: Good. And *they don't realize:*

S: **No se dan cuenta.**

T: **No se dan cuenta.** So this could be *they don't realize* or *you guys don't realize*. Well done.

## Track 39

T: What was the word for *with* in Spanish? And we have it in words like *convenient*, *confirm* -

S: Oh, **con**.

T: So **con** is *with* and we have it as like a Latin building block in many Latin/English words.

*Consequence: with sequence.* Now in Spanish you don't say *with her*, *with him*, *with them*, you actually just say *with he*, *with she*, *with they*. So how would you say *with him* or *with he*?

S: **Con él**.

T: **Con él**. *With her*:

S: **Con ella**.

T: **Con ella**. *With them*:

S: **Con ellos**.

T: Or, I mean if it was feminine:

S: Oh, **ellas**.

T: Yeah, **con ellas**. *With us*:

S: **Nos**.

T: **Nos** is *us*, but of course in Spanish we won't say *with us*, we will say *with we*.

S: **Con nosotros**.

T: Yes, **con nosotros**. What if you were an all female group?

S: **Con nosotras**.

T: **Con nosotras**. Good. *With you*, speaking formally?

S: **Con usted**.

T: **Con usted**. And *with you guys*:

S: **Con ustedes**.

T: **Con ustedes.** The word for *for* is **para**. So how would you say *for him*?

S: **Para él.**

T: **Para él.** Good. So when you decided that it was **para él**, you put **para** and **con** in the same group.

And they are in the same group. They're in a group of words which are called prepositions. Now prepositions show some kind of movement or position; and they're very important and interesting words so it's useful for us to identify them as we did with verbs and adjectives and nouns. So we are going to investigate now a little more about prepositions and how they behave in Spanish. So *for him*, **para él**. *For her*:

S: **Para ella.**

T: **Para ella.** Good. *For them*:

S: **Para ellos.**

T: Or?

S: **Para ellas.**

T: Good. And *for us*:

S: **Para nosotros.**

T: **Para nosotros.** Or?

S: **Nosotras.**

T: Good. **Para nosotras** if it's an all feminine group. Good. Like I said, we don't say *for him*, but *for he* and we don't say *for her*, but *for she*, with the exception of *me* and *you* informal, we get two different versions of the words for *me* and *you*. So *for me* is **para mí**. **Para mí**. And *you* informal becomes **ti**. So *for you*, speaking informally, is **para ti**. So this is just after prepositions we get this **mí** and **ti**. *M-i* and *t-i*. So we can find another preposition that we learned already. The word for *of* or *from*. So again this is a small word which is showing movement, direction or position; these are prepositions. So what was *of* or *from*?

S: **De.**



T: **De**. Good. So how would you say *from him*?

S: **De él**.

T: Good. **De él**. *From her*:

S: **De ella**.

T: **De ella**. *From me*:

S: **De mí**.

T: Yes. **De mí**, spelled *m-i*. *From you* speaking informally?

S: **De ti**.

T: **De ti**. Good. *From them*:

S: **De ellos**.

T: **De ellos**.

S: Or **ellas**.

T: Or **ellas**. Good. **De ellas**. *From us*:

S: **De nosotros**.

T: **De nosotros**. Good. *From you guys*:

S: **De ustedes**.

T: Good. *Is it- Is it from you guys?*:

S: **¿Es de ustedes?**

T: Good. *Is it from you guys? ¿Es de ustedes?* How would you say *it's for you guys*?

S: **Es para ustedes**.

T: Good. **Es para ustedes**. Good. How do you say *it is with you guys*?

S: **Es con ustedes**.

T: Now something to me doesn't feel right here. When we say **es de ustedes**, *it's from you guys* and **es para ustedes**, *it's for you guys*: we are speaking about things are quite characteristic of whatever this thing is, whatever this *it* is. *It's for you guys. It's from you guys.* But, when we say *it's with you guys*, we are speaking about a state because we are speaking about the location of something. So how do you think it would be - *it is with you guys*?

S: **Está con ustedes.**

T: Very good. **Está con ustedes.** Very good. *To do or to make* was **hacer**. *H-a-c-e-r.*

S: **Hacer.**

T: **Hacer.** So how do you say *he does* or *he's doing* or *he makes* or *he's making*:

S: **Ha.**

T: This is from **haber**, but well thought out. [Laughter]

S: So it's **hace**.

T: **Hace.** Good. *A favor* is **un favor**. **Un favor**. So how would you say *he's doing me a favor?* *He's doing me a favor:*

S: **Me hace un favor.**

T: Good. **Me hace un favor.** Good. How do you say *he's doing her a favor?*

S: **La hace un favor.**

T: Now if you say **la hace**, it sounds like *he's making it* - a feminine thing. If you want to say *he's doing her a favor, for her*. So what does **la** turn to to become *to her, for her*?

S: **Le hace un favor.**

T: Good. **Le hace un favor.** Good. **Decir** is *to tell*. No? So we have **hablar** *to speak* or *to talk* and **decir** is *to say* or *to tell*. *D-e-c-i-r.* So */dethir/* in most of Spain. **Decir**. So how do you say *I want to tell, I want to say? I want, just think of I want.*

S: **Quiero.**

T: *To say or to tell:*

S: **Decir.**

T: Ah, all together.

S: **Quiero decir.**

T: **Quiero decir.** Ah. *I want to tell him. I want to tell him:*

S: **Le quiero decir.**

T: **Le quiero decir** or?

S: **Quiero decirle.**

T: Good. You have the option there of where you can put the **le**, before the changed verb or after the complete verb. **Le quiero decir. Quiero decirle.** But if you want to say, *I want to say it:*

S: **Lo quiero decir.**

T: **Lo quiero decir.** So we see actually with this **le**, we are kind of replacing a preposition with **le** and **les**, an imaginary preposition: *to, for, from*. For example, **comprar**. **Comprar** means *to buy*. I can say *I buy you something*. Now this *you* is actually replacing *for you*. *I buy something for you*. So what is *I buy* from **comprar**?

S: **Compro.**

T: **Compro.** How do you say *I buy them* and you refer to the things that you are buying?

S: **Los compro.**

T: **Los compro.** But, if you say *I buy them* and you mean *I buy for them:*

S: **Les compro.**

T: **Les compro.** So this is the most natural Spanish structure. **Les compro.** You use **les** instead of *for them*. But, you could say *I buy for them*. You could do that if you wanted to, using *for them* literally. So how would you say *I buy* or *I'm buying for them*?

S: **Compro para ellos.**

T: **Compro para ellos.** Good. So in an everyday situation, *I'm buying something for them*, **les compro**. Mostly we are going to be avoiding these prepositions, so *he buys it for me*. I'm just going to say *he buys me it* rather than *he buys it for me*. So how would you say that? *He buys me it*:

S: **Me compra. Me lo compra.**

T: **Me lo compra.** *They buy me it or they buy it for me*:

S: **Me lo compran.**

T: Good. **Me lo compran.** *They buy them for me. They buy them for me*:

S: **Me los compran.**

T: Good. **Me los compran.** Good. Now, we said that these small words **me, nos, te, le, les**, most of the time what we are replacing with them is *to*, but sometimes it's like *for*, like *to do a favor for*, but they also might be replacing other prepositions like **de**. For example, if I want to say *he buys it from me*, I don't really need the *from* there either. I could just say *he buys me it*. So how would I say that? *He buys it from me. He buys me it*:

S: **Me lo compra.**

T: **Me lo compra.** So this is totally ambiguous. No? It could mean *he buys it for me* or *he buys it from me*, but it's something that we'll understand from the context. So the key point to take away from here is that we probably use prepositions much more in English than in Spanish and you just want to kind of like listen out for this and then you will start shedding them. You will start shedding your prepositions the more you listen to Spanish.

## Track 40

T: An interesting thing about prepositions is that they have a habit of changing between languages.

To give you an example, in English we say *I fall in love with*. In Spanish, you say *I enamor myself of. I fall in love of you*. Now again, this is something that we look at with interest rather than looking at it as an obstacle, for the insight that it might give us about how we perceive and express the world through our own language. Now the fact that we use *with* is not necessarily casual. Casual in the sense of meaningless. The fact that we use *with* is not necessarily without its weight, without its meaning. If I say *I fall in love with you*, that preposition *with* necessarily involves you in my process of falling in love. Now this *of* is much more detached in feeling than *with*. So there is a school of thought which explores how these elements of language might have a real tangible effect on the way we interact with the world and with certain concepts and the way we express them and how that feeds back into the way we perceive and view the world. And I think this is a very nice example between falling in love *with* and falling in love *of*. So this is something to think about and just take interest in whenever you find that in Spanish the verb uses a different preposition than the one it does in English. Rather than just seeing it as a hurdle to correctness that you need to memorize, maybe have a little look at how it might actually be affecting, somehow or other, the way you perceive the world. This also helps the memory on a practical level. You are much more capable of internalizing and remembering this difference if rather than just mindlessly memorizing that you're using **de** instead of **con** here. We are looking with a more analytical eye, with a curious eye, to understand what effect this might possibly have on us and in this way we are just going to learn the differences much easier.

Let's start with this verb: *To fall in love* is *to enamor oneself*. So if you look up in the dictionary *to fall in love*, what you will find is **enamorarse**, written as one word. Now it's important to realize that it is not one word. You still have a verb there ending *-ar*, **enamorar** and then the **se** is just hooked on. So let's start with *I fall in love*. How will you make **enamorarse**, *I fall in love*, *I enamor myself*?

S: **Me enamoro.**

T: Exactly. **Me enamoro.** Now if you want to say *I fall in love with you*, we're probably going to speak informally. In Spanish we're not going to say *with you*, we're going to say *of you*. *I enamor myself of you*:

S: **Me enamoro de ti.**

T: Yeah, **me enamoro de ti.** Very good. *I fall in love with him*:

S: **Me enamoro de él.**

T: Good. **Me enamoro de él.** If we want to give the meaning of *I'm falling in love right now*. We can say *I am*. How is *I am*, from **estar**?

S: **Estoy.**

T: Good. *Falling in love. Enamoring myself*:

S: **Enamorándome.**

T: Good. It can come actually after the *-ando* or before **estoy**. **Estoy enamorándome. Me estoy enamorando de él.** Another verb that chooses a different preposition in Spanish and English is the verb *to think*. *To think*, we said it was related to the word *pensive* which means thoughtful.

S: **Pensar.**

T: Good. **Pensar.** Now you don't say *I think about you* in Spanish. You say *I'm thinking* or *I think in* or *on you*. What was the word for *in* and *on*? I think we looked at it very briefly.

S: **En.**

T: **En.** Good. So we say *I think in you* or *on you*. It's probably *in*, actually, because Arabic says it in this way and of course when languages come into contact, like the 800 years of contact that Spanish and Arabic had, they share a lot more than vocabulary. They also share structures. So we are probably saying *I'm thinking in you* to say *I think about you*, so how do you say that? *I'm thinking about you* or *I think about you*. Let's keep it informal.

S: **Penso.** Sorry, **pienso en ti.**

T: **Pienso en ti.** Good. How would you say *we think about you*, or *we're thinking about you*?

S: **Pensamos en ti.**

T: **Pensamos en ti.** *We think about her, or we think in her, or literally we think in she:*

S: **Pensamos en ella.**

T: Good. **Pensamos en ella.** *To dream in Spanish is soñar.*

S: **Soñar.**

T: This /ny/ sound like the one we have in **mañana** is with the ñ. Ñ is the only letter that we get in Spanish that we don't get in English and it's like an *n* with a little squiggly line on the top of the *n* and it's basically *n-y*. So *n* with squiggly line on top is *n-y*, like in **mañana**. Like in **soñar**. **Soñar.** *To dream.*

S: **Soñar.**

T: How do think you say *I dream*?

S: **Sueño.**

T: Would be “**soño**”, but what might happen? How is *to sleep*?

S: **Dormir.**

T: **Dormir.** And *I sleep*:

S: **Duermo.**

S: **Sueño.**

T: Yeah, so this is happening here, but there is really no way to know if it's going to happen or not. Sometimes it does, sometimes it doesn't. If it happens for one of the versions, of course it's going to happen for all of the versions that we stress the *o*. So, **sueño, sueña, sueñan, sueñas.**

But, *we dream*:

S: **Soñamos.**

T: **Soñamos,** because we are not stressing it anymore. **Soñamos,** we are stressing the /a/. Very good. We don't say *I dream of* in Spanish. We say *I dream with*. So here we use *with* in Spanish. *I dream*

*with her*. The language, we said, is permitting and requiring us to perceive and express the world in a certain way. So when we say, you know, *I dream with her*, maybe you can imagine that when people began to talk about what they were dreaming that they had the idea of the involvement of the other person. You know, *I'm dreaming with you*. You don't know, but it's interesting to think about how that change in the preposition can really affect the way we perceive the world. And then subconsciously, because even though our beliefs might have modernized, like if I dream about you I don't really think you're there, and I don't really think you are participating, but the language might hold an old belief that it is with you. That you are actually participating in my dream. So it's interesting to think about, and thinking about it is going to help your memory internalize just this simple fact that the preposition changes. So how would you say *I dream about her*, or in Spanish, *I dream* or *I'm dreaming with her*?

S: **Sueño con ella.**

T: **Sueño con ella.** Good. *He dreams about him*:

S: **Sueña con él.**

T: **Sueña con él.** Good. What was *for me*?

S: **Para mí.**

T: Good. And for *you* informal?

S: **Para ti.**

T: Good. And what was *from*?

S: **De.**

T: **De.** *From me*:

S: **De mí.**

T: *From you* (informal):

S: **De ti.**

T: **De ti.** Good. With *with*, we get a little exception. *With me* is **conmigo** and it's spelled like one word. So this *-go* is coming from nowhere and it's all becoming one word, where **de mi, para mi**



are two separate words. So we have **connigo** for *with me* and **contigo**, *with you*, informal. **Connigo**. *C-o-n-m-i-g-o* or **contigo**, *c-o-n-t-i-g-o*. So this is *with me, with you*. What was *to come*?

S: **Venir**.

T: **Venir**. *To come*. Good. So how would you say, speaking informally, *do you want to come with me?*:

S: ¿**Quieres venir connigo**?

T: Good. *Don't you want to come with me?*:

S: ¿**No quieres venir connigo**?

T: ¿**No quieres venir connigo**? *Why don't you want to come with me?*:

S: ¿**Por qué no quieres venir connigo**?

T: Good. ¿**Por qué no quieres venir connigo**? What was *I have* in the sense of possession?

S: **Tengo**.

T: **Tengo**. Good. And if we want to say *I have to*, we can add something to that **tengo**. It's not a comfortable translation either, if that helps you remember it.

S: **Tengo que**.

T: **Tengo que**. Good. So how would you say *you have to come with me*, again speaking informally?

*You have to come with me:*

S: **Tienes que venir connigo**.

T: **Tienes que venir connigo**. Good. Good. What was *I can*, from *to be able*?

S: **Puedo**.

T: **Puedo**. *Can you come with me?* (still informal):

S: ¿**Puedes venir connigo**?

T: Good. ¿**Puedes venir conmigo**? So we have **conmigo** for *with me*, **contigo** for *with you*, speaking informally. So, we could say *I dream about you* and we're going to say *I dream with you*, speaking informally.

S: **Sueño contigo.**

T: **Sueño contigo.** *I'm going with you*, informally still:

S: *I'm going.* I'm forgetting the verbs.

T: You'll forget them many times and you need to find the way that you, you dig them up. That's the most important thing: to take this skill away. So *going*, what does *going* relate to, if anything?

S: Ah, *voyage*. **Voy.**

T: You see, *I'm going with you*, speaking informally:

S: **Voy contigo.**

T: Very good. *To depend*, in Spanish, is **depender**. **Depender**. How would you say *it depends*?

S: **Dependa.**

T: Make sure before you start to change any verb, you do a quick check to see what type of verb it is.

S: **Depende.**

T: Yes, **depender**, *-er* verb. **Depende**. Good. Now in Spanish we don't say *it depends on*. We say *it depends of*. So how would you say *it depends on her* or *it depends of her*?

S: **Depende de ella.**

T: **Depende de ella.** The word for *yes* and the word for *if* are the same in Spanish. So you know how to say *yes* in Spanish?

S: **Sí.**

T: **Sí.** Good. So this is also *if*. *It depends on if she wants to go*. Let's say that. *It depends*:

S: **Depende.**

T: *On* or *it depends of* in Spanish:

S: **De.**

T: Good. *If she wants to go:*

S: **Si quiere ir.**

T: Good, so all together. *It depends on if she wants to go:*

S: **Depende de si quiere ir.**

T: Good. **Depende de si quiere ir.** *It depends on if she wants to go.*

## Track 41

T: Let's look again at how we speak about the future in Spanish. We saw that we have a future tense but we might not use it very often because, firstly, we can just use the present to talk about the future if we have some future context: some word like **mañana**, *tomorrow*; *later*, **más tarde**, or even another part of the sentence which shows us that we are talking about the future, we can just use the present. When we don't have that we can use **ir a**, *to go to*, so **voy a**, **vamos a**, **vas a**, which is also present tense, **voy**, **vas**, **vamos**, it's present, but we can use it to talk about the future. So, for example, **bailar**, **bailar**, *b-a-i-l-a-r*, means *to dance*. We can relate it to *ballerina*, *ballerina* actually is just *dancer* in Spanish, **bailarín** in Spanish is *dancer*, so that's where we get *ballerina* from: **bailar**. So, if you want to say *we are going to dance*:

S: **Vamos a bailar**.

T: **Vamos a bailar**. Good. If you had some future context, like *later*, **más tarde**, or literally, *more late*, you could just say *we dance later*:

S: **Bailamos más tarde**.

T: Good. **Bailamos más tarde**. But you could have used that structure with **vamos** if you wanted to, you have the option. We can say **bailamos más tarde** or we could say *we are going to dance later*:

S: **Vamos a bailar más tarde**.

T: Very good. **Vamos a bailar más tarde**. So, we saw that we have a future tense, we have a future tense although we might not need to use it very often because we have this situation in Spanish that we can use the present, or that **ir a**, *to go to*, is used even more often than in English, this structure of *I'm going to do it* instead of *I'll do it* is used even more in Spanish than in English. But, we do have a future tense, and the future tense is luckily very related to the different versions that we found of the verb **haber**. **Haber** was a very irregular verb, this *to have* that we use to go into the past. What was the trick that we used to find the different versions of this very irregular verb **haber**?

S: We used the vowels. The /e/ and /a/ sounds.

T: Good. We used these to take off from, we go: “what are the two vowels in haber? /e/ and /a/,” okay. **He** by itself means:

S: *I have.*

T: *I have.* And **ha** by itself means:

S: *He/she/it or you (formal) have.*

T: Perfect. And from these we can find the other versions, so we have **he** for *I have*, and *we have* is:

S: **Hemos.**

T: **Hemos.** And we have **ha** for *he/she/it/you* (formal). For *you* (informal), what would we do to **ha**?

S: **Has.**

T: **Has.** *H-a-s*, completely silent, this *h*, this *h* that we find in all of these forms. *They have* or *you guys have*:

S: **Han.**

T: **Han.** So, these are our different versions of **haber**. Now, these very sounds, so, the sounds, because we are not including the *h*, the sounds /e/, /emos/, /a/, /as/, /an/ are the same sounds that we add on to the “to” form of the verb to get this future tense. So, we have a verb like **bailar**, *to dance*. If I want to say *I will dance*, using this future tense, I can look at how is *I have* from **haber**, so, how is *I have* from **haber**?

S: **He.**

T: **He.** And I can just stick it on the end. But it’s the sound that is the same, what we are sticking on the end of the verb is an *e*, not the *h-e*. So, *I will dance*:

S: Is it “bailáre” or **bailaré**?

T: The ending takes the accent and we said that in Spanish we are pushing the accent into the future, which is an interesting phenomenon, we spoke about, how in Greek, for example, in the past you pull it back into the past, so we find this phenomenon occurring in other languages as well. Here we are literally pushing the accent into the future and we accent that ending and we say **bailaré**, **bailaré**, *I will dance. We will dance*:

S: **Bailaremos.**

T: **Bailaremos.** *He/she/it/you (formal) will dance:*

S: **Bailará.**

T: **Bailará.** *They or you guys will dance:*

S: **Bailarán.**

T: **Bailarán.** *And you (informal):*

S: **Bailarás.**

T: **Bailarás.** Good. So, we get the future tense without having to learn anything new, we just have to remember that we can look back at **haber** and see what the different versions of **haber** were, and then use them to build our future. So, in fact we have two future tenses, let's say, we have *will* and *would*, they are both future tenses. Now, *-e, -emos, -a, -as, -an*, they work for all verbs *-er, -ir, -ar*, it doesn't matter; they are all using these sounds to form *will*. And we have the same situation with *would*. *-er, -ir, -ar* verbs, they are all together. And our key sound for *would* is *-ía*. So, we add on *-ía* to the end of the verb, we are accenting it again, because it's pushing the accent into the future, and this *-ía* actually gives us *I/he/she/it* and *you* formal. So, here *I* is jumping in with *he/she/it* and *you* formal. So, **bailaría, bailarías**, means *I would dance, he would dance, she would dance, you (formal) would dance, or it would dance* if you can think of some context where that would make sense. I think you can work out what the rest would be. So, let's try.

How would you say *we would dance*?

S: **Bailariámos.**

T: Good, the only thing is that the accent stays on the *ía*.

S: **Bailaríamos.**

T: **Bailaríamos.** Good. *They or you guys:*

S: **Bailarían.**

T: **Bailarían.** *And you informal:*

S: **Bailarías.**

T: Good. So, that's it, that's *would*. So they, *would* and *will*, share some characteristics, as they are both different futures. They share the characteristic that we are adding on to the full verb: **bailar**, **bailaré**: *I will dance*, **bailar**, **bailaría**: *I would dance*; and they share the characteristic that they are stressing the ending, that the accent is going to the ending, and they share the characteristic that for both futures we group all the verbs together: *-ar, -er, -ir* verbs, so for both futures we have one set of endings for all verb types. What was *to go*?

S: **Ir.**

T: **Ir.** Good. *I would go*:

S: **Iría.**

T: Yes, **iría**. So, this actually works for *I, he, she, it, and you* formal. So, in the *would* tense we have *I* jumping in with *he, she, it, you* formal. How would you say *she wouldn't go*?

S: **No iría.**

T: Good. **No iría.** Good. What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer.**

T: **Comer.** How would you say *I would eat*?

S: **Comería.**

T: Good. *I would eat, but I don't have time*:

S: **Comería, pero no tengo... hora?**

T: *Tempo, tempo* we have in English.

S: **Tiempo.**

T: **Comería, pero no tengo tiempo.** Good. How would you say *transformation*?

S: **Transformación.**

T: **Transformación.** Good. So, *to transform*:

S: **Transformar.**

T: Good. **Transformar.** How would you say *it would transform*?

S: **Transformaría.**

T: **Transformaría.** This, you would use it if you were to say *it would transform something else*, so you could say *it would transform the situation*, how would you say that, *it would transform the situation*?

S: **Transformaría la situación.**

T: **Transformaría la situación.** If you wanted to say *it would transform*, and you mean *it would get transformed, it would undergo a transformation*, then in Spanish you will say *it would transform itself*. Now, in English we just use the context to understand whether we mean *to transform something else* or *it would transform, it would get transformed*, but in Spanish most of the time you are going to want to put that *itself*. What is that *itself*?

S: **Se.**

T: Good. *Itself, se. It would get transformed:*

S: **Se transformaría.**

T: Good. **Se transformaría.** What is *contamination*?

S: **Contaminación.**

T: **Contaminación.** *To contaminate:*

S: **Contaminar.**

T: **Contaminar.** If you want to say *it contaminates*, how would you say it, *it contaminates*, present tense?

S: **Contamina.**

T: **Contamina.** So, **contamina** would mean *it contaminates, it's contaminating*, maybe we are talking about the factory and we say **contamina**. If we want to say, *it gets contaminated*, we don't really have this *gets* in Spanish, so in Spanish to give this meaning of *it gets contaminated* we will just



say *it contaminates itself*. Now, it doesn't mean that it's responsible for its own contamination or that it is literally contaminating itself, it's just the structure that we use to replace this *gets* that we don't have in Spanish. So, if we want to say *it gets contaminated*, and we are talking about the river, we will just say *it contaminates itself*, even though we all understand that what we don't mean is that the river is actually contaminating itself. So how would you say that, *it contaminates itself*, or *it gets contaminated*?

S: **Se contamina.**

T: Good. **Se contamina.** Good. How would you say *it would get contaminated*? So, it's not that *it would contaminate*, it's *it would get contaminated*:

S: **Se contaminaría.**

T: Good. **Se contaminaría.** What is *imagination*?

S: **Imaginación.**

T: **Imaginación.** And *to imagine*:

S: **Imaginar.**

T: **Imaginar.** Well done for converting the /j/ to /kh/. *Imagination* – **imaginación** - **imaginar**. *I imagine*:

S: **Imagino.**

T: **Imagino.** You will often hear in Spanish *I imagine myself*. How would that be?

S: **Me imagino.**

T: **Me imagino.** And here it doesn't really change the meaning. Sometimes adding this *myself*, or *herself*, *itself*, *yourself*, etc., doesn't really change the meaning very much. **Imagino, me imagino, I imagine.** How would you say *I would imagine*?

S: **Me imaginaría.**

T: **Me imaginaría.** Good. *I would imagine that he doesn't want to go*: what is this *that* that we use?

It's the same as *what*.

S: **Que.**

T: Good. So, *I would imagine:*

S: **Me imaginaría.**

T: **Me imaginaría.** *That:*

S: **Que.**

T: *He doesn't want to go:*

S: **No quiere ir.**

T: So, all together *I would imagine that he doesn't want to go:*

S: **Me imaginaría que no quiere ir.**

T: Good. **Me imaginaría que no quiere ir.**

## Track 42

T: So we saw for *would*, the future tense of *would*, we have our key sound *-ía*, we have the key sound *-ía* which we are adding on to the end of the verb, and this gives you the version for *I, he, she, it, and you* formal. So, for this one we have *I* jumping in with *he, she, it, you* formal. So, we can take a verb like **hablar** and we can say *I would speak*. **Hablar** is *to speak*, and *I would speak*:

S: **Hablaría.**

T: Good. **Hablaría.** Good. *We would speak*:

S: **Hablariámos, hablaríamos.**

T: **Hablaríamos.** *They would speak*:

S: **Hablarían.**

T: Good. *They wouldn't speak*:

S: **No hablarían.**

T: **No hablarían.** Good. The verb *to like* in Spanish is **gustar**.

S: **Gustar.**

T: **Gustar.** So, *to like* is **gustar**, but it works differently in Spanish, and the way it works in Spanish renders the translation *to like* as kind of complicated. It would be much better to translate **gustar** as *to be pleasing*. So, when you say *I like it*, what we want to say in Spanish is *it is pleasing to me*. That's the way we say *I like it* in Spanish, *it is pleasing to me*. So, if you take **gustar** to mean *to be pleasing* or *to please*, how would you make *it is pleasing* or *it pleases*?

S: **Gusta.**

T: **Gusta.** Good, so that's *it is pleasing* or *it pleases*. Now, if you want to say *it is pleasing to me*:

S: **Me gusta.**

T: **Me gusta.** And this is how you say *I like it* in Spanish, **me gusta**. So, a very common error that Spanish learners make is to say **me gusto**, to translate it like from English literally, *I like*, and they

say **gusto**, but what does that mean then actually, if you say **me gusto**, what does it mean if **gustar** means *to be pleasing*?

S: It means *I please myself*.

T: Yes, it means *I please myself, I like myself*. So you want to be careful there, you don't want to be walking around telling everybody how much you like yourself, **me gusto mucho**. No. **Me gusta mucho**, *it pleases me*. So, if you are saying *I like them*, then of course what you are saying is *they please me*, so we must take this inter step, this Spanglish step, to think about it literally, to think it through literally, so we are sure that we are getting the meaning that we want. So, how would you say *I like them* or *they please me* or *they are pleasing to me*?

S: **Me gustan**.

T: Good. **Me gustan**. Good. So how do you think you would say *I would like, it would please me*?

S: **Me gustaría**.

T: Good. **Me gustaría**. So, just like in English, you use this a lot in Spanish. **Me gustaría**, *to eat now, I would like to eat now*:

S: **Me gustaría comer ahora**.

T: Good. **Me gustaría comer ahora**. *We would like to eat now, it would please us to eat now*:

S: **Nos gustaríamos**, it's **nos gustarían**.

T: *It, it would please us, to eat now*. So, you have this...

S: Is **nos gustarían** correct?

T: No, because you have this idea of **nos**, you have this plural idea and it's manifesting itself in the verb, so you are not totally in control of your building process at the moment, you are letting some guess work come in, and you need to cut it, you need to start with the verb. *It would please us*. So, *it would please*:

S: **Gustaría**.

T: Exactly. So when you start with the verb you are in control.

S: Right.

T: Now you can say *it would please us*:

S: **Nos gustaría.**

T: *To eat now*:

S: **Comer ahora.**

T: Exactly, very good. **Nos gustaría comer ahora.** What was *to see* or *to view*?

S: **Ver.**

T: Good. **Ver.** Good. *I would like to see you*, let's speak informally, *I would like to see you*:

S: **Me gustaría verte.**

T: Good. **Me gustaría verte.** A couple of verbs, they contract a little bit when we add on our future endings. So when I say our future endings, I refer to both futures: *will* and *would*. For example, we have **poder** – *to be able*, and *would be able* is *could*: *I would be able to go*, *I could go*. So we have **poder** – *to be able* or *can*, and then we add *-ía* for *would*, and it would be **podería**, but this is a very common verb, and common verbs are much more subject to change and irregularities, so many years of **podería-podería-podería-podería-podería** – the */e/* got lost, the */e/* fell away, the */e/* of **poder**. So, *I could*, *he could*, *she could*, *it could*, *you* (formal) *could* is **podría**.

S: **Podría.**

T: **Podría.** You can give me the other versions of course. How would you say *they could* or *you guys could*?

S: **Podrían.**

T: Good. And *you* (informal):

S: **Podrías.**

T: Good. And *we*:

S: **Podríamos.**

T: Good. What was *to come*?

S: **Venir.**

T: **Venir.** *Could you come to my house? How was my house?*

S: **Mi casa.**

T: **Mi casa.** Good. So, how would you say *Could you come*? And this is *to come*, we don't say *to* here in English, but it's a second verb, will be in the "to" form, *Could you come to my house?*

Let's speak informally.

S: **¿Podrías venir a mi casa?**

T: Good. **¿Podrías venir a mi casa?** *To say or to tell* is **decir**. So we have **hablar**, which is *to speak or to talk*, but *to say or to tell* is **decir**. *Could you tell me something? Could you tell me something?* And we are speaking informally still.

S: **¿Me podrías decir algo?**

T: Good. **¿Me podrías decir algo?** or **¿Podrías decirme algo?** *Could you tell me if you want to come?* So, let's start with *could you tell me if*, and I remind you that *if* is the same as *yes*.

S: **¿Podrías decirme si quieres venir?**

T: Okay.

## Track 43

T: Another verb that contracts in this way, losing its last *e*, like **poder** becoming **podría** is **haber**, *to have*. So *I would have*, how would it be? You're gonna add the *-ía* on **haber**, and it's gonna lose its *e* like **poder** did. So how would it sound?

S: **Habría.**

T: **Habría.** So, **habría** means *I would have, you would have* (formally), *he would have, she would have, it would have*. Which means, now you can make sentences like *I would have gone. I would have eaten something, but...*, etc. So let's practice this. How would you say *I would have gone*? What's *to go*, first?

S: **Ir.**

T: **Ir.** How would you make *gone* from *to go*? What is the rule to get *gone* from *to go*? The version that we need after **haber**. After any version of **haber**, doesn't matter if it's **he**, **hemos**, or **habría**, it's the version of the verb that comes after **haber**. How do we get that version?

S: **Ido.**

T: Yes. Ok, I take away *-ir*, the ending. It's the whole verb. But whatever, it doesn't matter. I'm taking away the ending, *-ir*, and I'm putting *-ido*. Good. *I would have gone*:

S: **Habría ido.**

T: Good. **Habría ido.** *We would have eaten*, how would that be? *We would have eaten*:

S: **Habríamos comido.**

T: Good. **Habríamos comido.** We could even make a sentence now, like *We would have been able to go. We would have been able to go*. And as long as you tackle each individual part individually, you will stay in control. And you will be able to make these apparently really complicated sentences, which are actually quite simple because they take the same structure in English and Spanish. So, *we would have*, how would that be? *We would have*:

S: **Habríamos.**

T: Good. *Been able*. So what's *to be able*, related to *power*?

S: **Poder**.

T: Ahh. **Poder** is *to be able*. How would you make that *been able*, or just the version after **haber**?

What does it do when it comes after **haber**?

S: **Podido**.

T: *To go*:

S: **Ir**.

T: Good. **Habríamos podido ir**. *We would have been able to go*. Good. You could say *they would have been able to eat*. So, divide it up block by block, and it is very simple.

S: *They would have*.

T: Good.

S: **Habrían podido comer**.

T: **Habrían podido comer**. So if you were to say something like *they would have come to eat*, then *come* is a verb of motion. So how would you say *they would have come to eat*?

S: **Habrían venido a comer**.

T: **Habrían venido a comer**, because we have **venir**, a verb of motion, connecting to another *to* form. Good. With this very useful structure of **habría**, **habrían**, **habríamos**, *would have*, you could also say something like *I would have liked it*. You just need to think in this Spanglish, in this in between language, the literal translation of how we want to say it in English, and then convert it. So, *I would have liked it* is *it would have pleased me*. *It would have pleased me*. So to not lose our control and to stay in control of this process, where is the first place we want our thoughts to go?

S: *It would have*.

T: Yeah. *It would have*. Good. So what is *it would have*?

S: **Habría**.



T: Good. *Pleased*. So it's **gustar** after **haber**. So maybe it's better to think of it in this way, “I'm finding the version of the verb after **haber**,” instead of actually trying to find the translation of the word, because the versions after *have* are so different in English. *We have eaten, gone, walked*, so if we are looking for *walked, gone, or eaten*, and we forget that it's just the version after **haber**, we might be looking for a very long time, ah? So, the version after **haber**, we have *-ado* or *-ido*, no?

S: **Gustado**.

T: Good. So now we can make the sentence, *It would have pleased me, I would have liked it*.

S: **Me habría gustado**.

T: Good. *Me habría gustado*. Good. So, *I would have liked it*. How would you say *we would have liked it* – so - *it would have pleased us*?

S: So it's **nos habría gustado**.

T: Very good. **Nos habría gustado**. And maybe, you might want to say *we would have liked them*. First give me the Spanglish, the literal translation in English. So we want to say *we would have liked them*. What is the literal translation of how we put it into Spanish?

S: *They would have pleased us*.

T: Perfect. Well done. *They would have pleased us*. So now you have all you need to make that sentence.

S: **Habrían. Nos habrían gustado**.

T: Good. **Nos habrían gustado**, *they would have pleased us, we would have liked them*. So we just saw some complicated structures with this *would*, which is especially useful because we can make *could*, and we can make *would have*. We can also make *should* with this *would*. What was *to owe*, or *must*, which was related to *debt* in English?

S: **Deber**.

T: **Deber**. Good. *-er* verb. **Deber**. Now if you say *would owe*, this means *should*. How would you say then, *I should, he should, it should, she should, you (formal) should*?

S: **Debería**.

T: Yes. **Debería.** Good. How would you say *you should come to my house? You should come to my house* (informal):

S: **Deberías venir a mi casa.**

T: Good. **Deberías venir a mi casa.** Good. *You should come to my house to eat. You should come to my house to eat:* (Informally, still.)

S: **Deberías venir a mi casa a comer.**

T: Good. **Deberías venir a comer a mi casa,** or **deberías venir a mi casa a comer,** both are perfectly fine. Well done. How would you say *we should?*

S: **Deberíamos.**

T: Good. How would you say *we should speak?*

S: **Deberíamos hablado.**

T: Here, *speak* is *to speak*. The confusion might come that in English, after *can*, after *should*, after *must*, we don't say *to*. *I must eat*, not *I must to eat*. *I can eat*, not *I can to eat*. In Spanish, you're just using the *to* form afterwards. So, *we should speak, we should speak:*

S: **Deberíamos hablar.**

T: Good. *We should speak.* **Deberíamos hablar.** *We should speak about it:* (And we said we don't need *about*.)

S: **Deberíamos hablarlo.**

T: Good. **Deberíamos hablarlo.** *We should speak about it, we should speak it.* What if you wanted to say *we should speak to him?*

S: **Deberíamos hablarle.**

T: Good. **Deberíamos hablarle.** This could actually be *to him* or *to her* or *to you* (formal), no? **Deberíamos hablarle.** What if you wanted to say *we should speak to them* or *we should speak to you guys?*

S: **Deberíamos hablarles.**

T: Good. **Deberíamos hablarles.** How would you say *we should speak with him?*

S: **Deberíamos hablar con él.**

T: Good. And *with her*:

S: **Con ella.**

T: All together?

S: **Deberíamos hablar con ella.**

T: Good. So choosing these structures, you get around the ambiguity of **deberíamos hablarle**, which could mean *him* or *her* or *you* (formal). Now if we use **con**, we see very clearly who we mean.

**Deberíamos hablar con él. Deberíamos hablar con ella.** Good. *To give* is **dar. Dar. To give.** How would you say *I would give?*

S: **Darían.**

T: **Darían.** *They would give:*

S: **Darían**

T: Good. *They would give me, or to me:*

S: **Me darían.**

T: Good. *They would give me it:*

S: **Me lo darían.**

T: Good.

## Track 44

T: What was the word for *problem* in Spanish?

S: **Problema.**

T: **Problema.** And *the problem*:

S: **El problema.**

T: **El problema.** Good. We can see it ends in an *a*, so we would expect it to be feminine, but we saw that these words ending *-ma* in Spanish, many of them entered through Greek. And in Greek they're neuter, but they look a bit masculine in Greek, so they came into Spanish as masculine words even though they end in *a*. So we have **el problema**. *System*:

S: **Sistema.**

T: **Sistema.** *The system*:

S: **El sistema.**

T: Good. *The paradigm*: how do you think that would be in Spanish?

S: **El paradigma.**

T: **El paradigma.** Good. *Scheme* also came in from Greek. But *scheme* in Spanish means *outline* or *diagram*. How do you think that would be?

S: **El squima. Squema. El squema.**

T: Good, and something else to make it sound a bit more Spanish?

S: **El esquema.**

T: Very good. **El esquema.** We said that we cannot start *s* plus another consonant in Spanish. We have to put an *e* before, like *Spain*, **España**, *spaghetti*, **espagueti**. **El esquema**, so this would be *outline* or *diagram*. *Diagram* is another one of these words. How do you think that would be in Spanish?

S: **Diagrama.**

T: Good. And *the diagram*:

S: **El diagrama.**

T: **El diagrama.** Good. So mostly, words ending /o/ are masculine and words ending /a/ are feminine, but we might find some exceptions. **Planeta**, for example, what do you think that means? **Planeta**:

S: *Planet.*

T: **Planeta** is a masculine word. So *the planet*:

S: **El planeta.**

T: **El planeta.** *A planet*:

S: **Un planeta.**

T: **Un planeta**, very good. How would you say *the planets*?

S: **Los planetas.**

T: Very good, **los planetas**. Good. So this is a masculine word that looks feminine. How was the word for *car*? We saw various words.

S: **Auto.**

T: **Auto**, let's work with that one. How do you say *the car*?

S: **El auto.**

T: *The cars*:

S: **Los autos.**

T: **Los autos**. Good. If you want to say *this car*, you say **este auto**. **Este auto**.

S: **Este auto.**

T: Good. We saw **esta noche**, *this night*. What do you think is the difference between **este** and **esta**, then? If we have **este auto** and **esta noche**, what do you think is the difference?

S: **Este** is the masculine -

T: Good.

S: And **esta** the feminine.

T: Good. So, we see that **noche** is a feminine word. How would you say *the night*?

S: **La noche.**

T: **La noche.** *The nights:*

S: **Las noches.**

T: Good. But *this night, or tonight:*

S: **Esta noche.**

T: **Esta noche.** Good. If you take this *t* out of **este** and **esta**, the words for *this*, you get the word for *that*. So **este auto** is *this car*. And *that car* would be?

S: **Ese auto.**

T: **Ese auto.** How would you say *I want that car*?

S: **Quiero ese auto.**

T: Good. *I don't want that car, because it's very big. Big is grand* so how would that be in Spanish?

S: **Grande.**

T: *Grande. I don't want that car, because it's very big:*

S: **No quiero ese auto, porque es muy grande.**

T: Very good. **No quiero ese auto, porque es muy grande.** How was *this night*?

S: **Esta noche.**

T: And how would be *that night*?

S: **Esa noche.**

T: **Esa noche.** We just get rid of the *t* and then we have the word for *that*. What if you wanted to say *those nights*?

S: **Esas noches.**

T: **Esas noches.** Good. There are also a few words that end in *o* which are feminine. For example, **mano**. **Mano** means *hand*. Ends in *o*, but it's a feminine word. So how would you say *the hand*?

S: **La mano.**

T: **La mano.** Good. *The hands*:

S: **Las manos.**

T: **Las manos.** *This hand*:

S: **Esta mano.**

T: Good. *That hand*:

S: **Esa mano.**

T: Good. *These hands*:

S: **Estas manos.**

T: Good. We have this word in English, like in *manuscript*, *manual*, as well. *Manual*, *manuscript*, that *man-* bit there means *hand*. *Maintain*, which in Spanish is **mantener**. We have *main-* or *man-* means *hand*. *Manage*. *Manage* means *to handle*. Actually, it has a special use for handling horses, historically. Which is interesting, because *to manage*, **manejar**, is used in some Latin American countries to mean *to drive*. Other than *to manage* or *to handle*, it also means *to drive*, **manejar**, which is interesting because this verb *manage* historically had the special use to handle horses, and we see how that's kind of translated over the years to driving. How would you say *Can you give me a hand*? So this is a literal translation of something idiomatic in English, but it works in Spanish as well. In Spanish you say this. *Can you give me a hand*? And let's talk informally.

S: **¿Me puedes dar un mano?**

T: But it's -

S: **Una mano.**

T: Good. **¿Puedes darme?**, or **¿me puedes dar?**, **una mano**. How would you say *Could you give me a hand? Could you give me a hand?* So *could* is *would can*.

S: **¿Me podrías dar una mano?**

T: Good. **¿Me podrías dar una mano?** **¿Podrías darme una mano?** *You should give me a hand. You should give me a hand. Should is would owe*. Still informal.

S: **Deber. Debería. You should. Deberías. Me deberías dar una mano.**

T: **Me deberías dar una mano**. Here we're not asking though, it sounded like a question.

S: Oh, sorry.

T: *You should give me a hand.*

S: Oh, yes.

T: Give it to me again, not like a question. Like a statement. *You should give me a hand:*

S: **Deberías darme una mano.**

T: Good. And what if you were speaking to more than one person?

S: **Deberían darme una mano.**

T: Good. **Deberían darme una mano.** *You guys should give us a hand:*

S: **Nos deberían dar una mano.**

T: Good. So we said that **manejar** means *to handle* or *to manage*. **Manejar**.

S: **Manejar.**

T: And also *to drive*, in some Latin American countries. How do you say *I am managing the problem, or I manage the problem?*

S: **Manejo el problema.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I'm managing the problem*, and you mean right now. So I remind you that for *managing*, for *-ar* verbs to get this *-ing*, we take away *-ar* and we put *-ando*. And for



-er/-ir verbs, for this -ing, we take away the -er or the -ir, and we put -iendo. First part is *I am managing. I am managing:*

S: **Estoy manejando.**

T: Good. *I am managing the problem:*

S: **Estoy manejando el problema.**

T: Good. **Estoy manejando el problema.** So **mano**, we said, ends in *o* and it's feminine. It's actually kind of the only true word that ends in *o* and is feminine. So, for example we have **la foto**, *the foto*. But **foto** is short for **fotografía**. So it's actually **la fotografía** becomes **la foto**. The same with **la moto**. *The motorbike* is actually **la motocicleta**. No? Then people say **moto** and **foto** and it stays with **la**. *To take* in Spanish is **tomar**. **Tomar**.

S: **Tomar.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I'm taking a photo*, and you mean right now?

S: **Estoy tomando una foto.**

T: Good. **Estoy tomando una foto.** You might hear **sacar** as well, for photo. **Sacar** or **tomar**. **Estoy tomando una foto. Estoy sacando una foto.** Let's use **tomar** for now. *I would take a photo:*

S: **Tomaría una foto.**

T: **Tomaría una foto.** *I would like, so it would please me, to take a photo.* So what is *to please*, or *like*?

S: **Gustar.**

T: **Gustar.** *So it would please me, I would like, it would please me to take a photo:*

S: **Me gustaría tomar una foto.**

T: Good. **Me gustaría tomar una foto.** *But I don't have my camera. But I don't have my camera:*

S: **Pero no tengo mi cámara.**

T: Good. All together. *I would like to take a photo, it would please me to take a photo, but I don't have my camera:*

S: **Me gustaría tomar un foto-**

T: **Fotografía.**

S: **Una foto, pero no tengo mi cámara.**

T: Very good. **Me gustaría tomar una foto, pero no tengo mi cámara.** Very good.

## Track 45

T: So how was *to like*, or we said that the translation that we would give it in Spanish was *to please* or *to be pleasing to*?

S: **Me gusta.**

T: So, the "to" version?

S: **Gustar.**

T: **Gustar.** Good. So how would you say *we like it*, and we want to take the route of the literal translation, so *it is pleasing to us*?

S: **Nos gustamos.**

T: So remember the first place you want your thoughts to go. This is very important, ah.

S: Well, so **gustar** becomes **gustamos**.

T: *It is pleasing, to us. So, it is pleasing:*

S: **Gusta.**

T: Yes.

S: **Nos gusta.**

T: **Nos gusta.** We were saying that **gustar**, we can translate as *to please* or *to be pleasing*. Now it would probably make more sense for us to store it as *to be pleasing*. Because, if we want to say something like *she likes it*, what we will say is *it is pleasing to her*. So we have the *to her* with **gustar**, so that's why it makes more sense to translate it as *it is pleasing to her* rather than *it pleases her*. This way we store this idea of *to*. So what is *to her*?

S: **Le.**

T: **Le.** Good. So we have **la** for *her*, and *to her*, **le**. So if you want to say *it is pleasing to her*, or *she likes it*, how would it be?

S: **Le gusta.**

T: **Le gusta.** And *it is pleasing to them, or they like it:*

S: **Les gusta.**

T: Good. **Les gusta.** You had a little battle there, right, with whether it was **gustan** or not. Good. And you take control of that going *it is pleasing, gusta. It is pleasing to them, les gusta.* So with **gustar**, we're not using **lo** and **la** and **los** and **las**. We're using **le** and **les**. *They like it, it is pleasing to them. Les gusta.* How would you say *they like them, or they are pleasing to them?*

S: **Les gustan.**

T: Good. **Les gustan.** *He likes them, or they are pleasing to him:*

S: **Le gustan.**

T: Very good. So there are a couple of other verbs as well that we would prefer to give this kind of translation to. What do you think **interesar** means? **Interesar:**

S: *Interesting.*

T: **Interesante** is *interesting*. What does **interesar** look like? It might not be, but what does it look like? **Interesar.** What type of word does it look like?

S: It's a verb.

T: Ah.

S: So it's *to interest*.

T: Good. *To interest.* Good. So this helps us with comprehension as well, understanding what are our types of words and what they tend to look like. So we could translate it as *to interest*, or we could translate it as *to be interesting to*. And here in this case, it's another verb like **gustar**, in that it makes more sense to translate it for ourselves as *to be interesting to*, because it goes with **le** and not **lo**. So in our minds this fits then in the Spanish structure if we save that translation as *to be interesting to* rather than *to interest*. So how would you say *it interests me, it is interesting to me?*

S: **Me interesa.**

T: Good. **Me interesa.** *Does it interest you? Let's speak informally. Does it interest you?:*

S: ¿**Te interesa**?

T: ¿**Te interesa**? *Doesn't it interest you?:*

S: ¿**No te interesa**?

T: ¿**No te interesa**? *Why doesn't it interest you?:*

S: ¿**Por qué no te interesa**?

T: Good. ¿**Por qué no te interesa**? So if we want to say *it interests him*, what we're really saying is *it is interesting to him*. So we want *to him* here. So how would you say that? *It interests him* or *it's interesting to him*:

S: **Le interesa**.

T: Good. **Le interesa**. *They're interested in it. It's interesting to them*:

S: **Les interesa**.

T: Good. **Les interesa**. You remember how was *to dance*, related to *ballerina*?

S: **Bailar**.

T: **Bailar**. Good. So you can ask *does it interest her to dance tonight? Does it interest her to dance tonight?:*

S: ¿**Le interesa bailar esta noche**?

T: Good. ¿**Le interesa bailar esta noche**? Good. **Salir, salir** is *to leave* or *to go out*. *To leave* or *to go out*. So you can say *does it interest her, is it interesting to her to go out to dance tonight? Does it interest her to go out to dance tonight?* So let's go from the beginning, *does it interest her?:*

S: ¿**Le interesa**?

T: Good. ¿**Le interesa**? And of course **le interesa** could mean *does it interest her, does it interest him, does it interest you* (formal). We don't know by the **le**. **Le interesa**, *to go out to dance tonight*:

S: **Salir a bailar esta noche**.

T: Good. So here we have **a** because **salir** is a verb of coming and going. ¿**Le interesa salir a bailar esta noche?** Now what if you wanted to ask *would it interest you, would it be interesting to you*, informally? So what was our sound for *would*, that we add on to the “to” form of the verb?

What's our key sound for *would*?

S: *-ía*

T: *-ía*, good. *Would it interest you?*:

S: **Interaría.**

T: Slower.

S: **Interesar, interesaría. ¿Te interesaría?**

T: Good. Another verb like this is **parecer**. **Parecer**, which is *to seem*. But, in English we already put *to*. *It seems to me. It seems to him*. So how do you say *it seems to me*? **Parecer** is *to seem. It seems to me*:

S: **Me paresa.**

T: Before you change a verb, there's something very quick and very essential that you must do.

S: It's an *-er*, not an *-ar*.

T: Yes. You must go back to your takeoff point, which is the “to” form, and make a quick check.

**Parecer**, *-er* verb. Ok, I know where I am, I know what I'm doing.

S: **Me parece.**

T: **Me parece.** *It seems to me. It seems to me that*. What is this *that* that we put here? Same as *what*:

S: **Que.**

T: **Que.** Spanish kind of highlights for you that *what* is the question version of *that*. It kinds of shows you that much more clearly than English does. But English shows you as well. If you think, in English if you take the word *that* and you get rid of the *t* and you replace it with a *w*, you get *what*. In the same way that if you take the word *there* and you get rid of the *t* and you replace it with *w*,

you get *where*. Or if you take the word *then* and get rid of the *t* and replace it with *w*, you get *when*. So you have **que** for *that*, and then **qué** for *what*. Same word. So, *it seems to me that*:

S: **Me parece que.**

T: *He doesn't want to go out tonight. He doesn't want to go out tonight:*

S: **No quiere salir esta noche.**

T: Good. **Me parece que no quiere salir esta noche.** Good. How would you say *it seems to me that he doesn't like it?* *It seems to me that he doesn't like it.* Now in English, this *that* is optional. No? *It seems to me he doesn't like it. It seems to me that he doesn't like it.* It's optional. But in Spanish, it's obligatory. You want to put this *that*. And actually, it's really gonna help you think out your sentences to put *that* always. So, *it seems to me that he doesn't like it*:

S: **Me parece que no lo gusta. Le. No le gusta.**

T: Good. You might want to say **me parece bien**. That would mean *it seems good to me, it seems fine to me*. But we're not using the word *good*, we're using the word *well*. **Bien. Me parece bien.** *It seems to me well.* You'll find a little gray area between English and Spanish about when we say *good*, **bueno**, and when we say *well*, **bien**. But it's something you'll pick up listening. So here you would say *well, it seems well to me, it seems good to me*:

S: **Me parece bien.**

T: Good. **Me parece bien.** *It doesn't seem good to me:*

S: **No me parece bien.**

T: Good. **No me parece bien.** *It doesn't seem good to her, or to him, or to you (formal):*

S: **No le parece bien.**

T: Good. Now let's make it a question. *Doesn't it seem ok to you?:*

S: ¿**No le parece bien?**

T: Good. ¿**No le parece bien?** What was *to interest*?

S: **Interesar.**

T: **Interesar.** How would you say *it would interest me, it would interest me?*

S: **Me interesaría.**

T: Good. *It would interest me to see it:*

S: **Me interesaría verlo.**

T: Good. *To put*, we said was **poner. Poner.**

S: **Poner.**

T: **Poner.** And we said that it's an interesting verb because when we have *-pose* inside a verb in English, we can change that *-pose* to **poner** and we get the verb in Spanish. So for example, *to compose* in Spanish is **componer**. And this *com-* is actually *con-*. The *n* changes next to the *p*, so it literally means “with putting”. *To compose* is “with putting”, putting together. *Compose*, **componer**. *To suppose*:

S: **Suponer.**

T: **Suponer.** *To oppose*:

S: **Oponer.**

T: **Oponer.** *To impose*:

S: **Imponer.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I want to put it here? I want to put it here*:

S: **Quiero ponerlo aquí.**

T: Good. **Quiero ponerlo aquí.** *I would like to put it here. It would please me:*

S: **Me gustaría ponerlo aquí.**

T: Good. Now if you want to say *I want to put salt on it*, you don't need to say *on*. What do you think you can replace this *on it* with? So instead of saying *on it*, what do you think you might be able to say in Spanish? What is the word for *it*:

S: **Lo.**



T: And what do you think you could do that to make it like *on it*? How do you say *to it*:

S: Ah, **lo**.

T: This is not how you say *to it*.

S: No, it's not.

T: Ah, so how do you say *to it, for it, from it*:

S: **Le**.

T: **Le**. So, if you want to say *I want to put salt on it*, you don't say *on it*, you just say **le**. *Salt is sal, sal*. So how would you say *I want to put it salt*, and with this *it* we mean *on it*.

S: **Quiero ponerle sal**.

T: Good. **Quiero ponerle sal**. *I would like to put salt on it*:

S: **Me gustaría ponerle sal**.

T: Good. **Me gustaría ponerle sal**. *A little, a little is un poco. Un poco*. Literally *a little, un poco*.

S: **Un poco**.

T: Good. So you could say *I would like to put it a little more*, what was the word for *more*, like in *more late*?

S: **Más**.

T: *I would like to put it a little more salt, I would like to put on it a little more salt*:

S: **Me gustaría ponerle un poco más sal**.

T: Very good. **Me gustaría ponerle un poco más sal**. What if you wanted to say *I would like to put on them a little more salt*? You know maybe you mean **las papas fritas**. *The chips, the french fries. I would like to put on them a little more salt*:

S: **Me gustaría ponerles un poco más sal**.

T: Very good. **Me gustaría ponerles un poco más sal**.

## Track 46

T: In English we have many ways to talk about the past. If you get any random verb like *to eat*, for example, you can say *I ate*. You can say *I have eaten*. You can say *I was eating*. You can say *I used to eat*. You can say *I would eat an ice cream every week when I was a child*, and there you use *would* to speak about the past in English. *I would go to the cinema every day when I was young*. So we have many different ways of talking about the past, but we can divide them into three. And in Spanish there are three. We have the *I have eaten* past, which is the one that we learnt already. *I have eaten*, with **haber**. And then the other two pasts we can think of as a line in the past and a dot in the past. So, what would fit into the line in the past is *I was eating*, *I used to eat*, *I would eat all the time when I was younger*, all of that is ongoing. It's like a line in the past. But then the dot in the past is *I ate*, finished. *I ate*, that's your dot in the past. Those are what we will consider our three different pasts, which all of the different ways of expressing the past in English fit into, and in Spanish we have these three forms. The one we learnt already is *I have eaten*, for example. First we need to manage the verb *to have*. What is the verb for *to have* in this context?

S: **Haber**.

T: **Haber**. Good. So we have **haber**, and we had a neat trick to find the different versions of **haber**, as we know it's very irregular. So what is *I have*?

S: **He**.

T: Good. And *we have*:

S: **Hemos**.

T: Good. And what is *he/she/it/you* (formal) *have* or *has*?

S: **Ha**.

T: Good. And *you*, informally:

S: **Has**.

T: Good. And *they have* or *you guys have*:

S: **Han**.

T: So that's our panorama of **haber**. And then we need to find *eaten*. So, the version after **haber**, we want to think of it in this way, the version of the verb that comes after **haber**, rather than trying to translate *eaten* because the version of the verb that comes after *have* in English is often so different. *I have wanted. I have been.* Very different. But in Spanish, for *-ar* verbs we take off *-ar* and put *-ado*, and for *-er/-ir* verbs we take off the *-er* or *-ir* and we put *-ido*. So *I have eaten*:

S: **He comido.** Sorry, **comido.**

T: Good. You're taking off your ending and putting *-ido*. The only times we're adding onto the "to" forms is with the futures, *will* and *would*. **He comido.** *I have spoken*:

S: **He hablado.**

T: **He hablado.** Good. *I have danced*:

S: **He bailado.**

T: Good. *They have danced*:

S: **Han bailado.**

T: **Han bailado.** The version that comes after **haber**: **comido, bailado**, doesn't change for *I* or for *we* or for *they* or for *he* or *she*. Always the same. We need to focus on **haber** to get the correct version of **haber**, and then we have the version of the verb that comes after it. So **he bailado, han bailado, hemos bailado**. We can also say more complicated things like *I have been able to eat*. What is *to be able*, related to *power*?

S: **Poder.**

T: **Poder.** Good. So *I have been able*, the version that comes after **haber**. Rather than translating *been able*, we just want **poder** after **haber**, so let's do that first. *I have been able*:

S: **He podido.**

T: *To eat*:

S: **Comer.**

T: Good. **He podido comer.** *I have been able to eat. I haven't been able to eat*:

S: **No he podido comer.**

T: Good. **No he podido comer.** So we can make more interesting structures as well, like this, using **haber**. We can also put **haber** in *would* time, which gives us the opportunity to make some useful structures. What is our sound for *would*?

S: *-ía.*

T: So *I would have* from **haber**:

S: **Habría.**

T: Good. The /e/ fell out. **Habría.** What was *to leave* or *to go out*?

S: **Salir.**

T: **Salir.** So you can say *I would have gone out. I would have gone out:*

S: **He saliría?**

T: So you've taken the sentence as a block to translate it all together, and then you have this kind of salad situation where this *-ía*'s coming out in the wrong place. You must take the time to divide it up. *I would have* is your first bit, and you stop there. *I would have*, what's that?

S: **Habería. Habría.**

T: **Habría.** Good, and it's a very natural irregularity. You can imagine many years of saying **habería, habería, habería, habería, habería**, it happens very naturally for that *e* to fall out. It only happens with a few verbs, though. **Habría.** So *I would have gone out:*

S: **Habría salido.**

T: **Habría salido.** Good. *I would have been able to go out. I would have been able to go out:*

S: **Habría podido salir.**

T: Good. **Habría podido salir.** *I wouldn't have been able to go out. I wouldn't have been able to go out:*

S: **No habría podido salir.**

T: Good. **No habría podido salir.** Good. So we have this **haber** that we can use for the past, but then also we can make some other very useful structures out of it, like *would have*, *would have been able*, etc. So now we're going to focus on another past in Spanish. We're going to focus now on the line in the past. So the line in the past representing *I was eating*, *I used to eat*, *I would eat all the time*, that *would* that we use for past. All of those are represented by this line in the past. Now, for the pasts – for both pasts, the line and the point – again we are taking off our verb ending before we add on our endings for the past. So we have a verb like **hablar**, for example, an *-ar* verb, and we will take off this *-ar* and we will put *-aba*, *-aba*, to get *I/he/she/it/you* (formal). So again, like in *would* time, we have *I* jumping in with *he*, *she*, *it*, and *you* (formal). So you have **hablar**, you take off the *-ar* and you put *-aba*:

S: **Hablaba.**

T: **Hablaba. Hablaba.** So **hablaba** means *I was speaking*, *I used to speak*, *he was speaking*, *she was speaking*, *he used to speak*, *she used to speak*, *you were speaking*, *you used to speak*, all of this in **hablaba**. Now you can probably make the other versions. How would you say *you were speaking*, speaking informally?

S: **Hablabas.**

T: Good. And *they* or *you guys were speaking*:

S: **Hablaban.**

T: **Hablaban.** And for the *we* version, the accent's going to stay in the same place on *-aba*. So how would you say *we were speaking*?

S: **Hablábamos.**

T: **Hablábamos.** Good. *To wait* is **esperar**. **Esperar**, *to wait* or *to hope*.

S: **Esperar.**

T: So how would you say *I was waiting*, *I used to wait*?

S: **Esperaba.**

T: Good. *I was waiting for you*, speaking informally? And we don't need the *for*, no? *I was awaiting you*:

S: **Te esperaba.**

T: **Te esperaba.** What if you were speaking formally? If you were speaking to **usted** and you wanted to say *I was waiting for you*:

S: Is it **lo**?

T: Yes.

S: **Lo esperaba.**

T: Or to a female, it would be?

S: **La esperaba.**

T: Good. So **lo** and **la** other than *it* and *he* and *she* can also mean *you* (formal). We see those are always pairing together – *he, she, it, and you* (formal). Keeping it formal, speaking to **usted**, how would you say *We were waiting for you*?

S: **Lo esperábamos.**

T: Good. **Lo esperábamos.** Very good. And what if you wanted to say *We were waiting for you guys*?

S: **Los esperábamos.**

T: **Los esperábamos.** And of course, this could also mean *We were waiting for them*. **Los esperábamos.** *To try*, related to *intent*:

S: **Intentar.**

T: Good. **Intentar.** So how would you say *I was trying*?

S: **Intentaba.**

T: Good. **Intentaba.** *He was trying*:

S: **Intentaba.**

T: Good. What was *to find, to encounter*?

S: **Encontrar.**

T: Good. So how would you say *They were trying to find it?* *They were trying to find it:* so divide up the thoughts. *They were trying*, the first bit:

S: **Intentaba?** It's **intentaban.**

T: Good.

S: **Encontrarlo.**

T: Good. **Intentaban encontrarlo.** If you wanted to say *They were trying to find it for me*, the most natural way of saying this in Spanish is *They were trying to find me it.* *They were trying to find me it:*

S: **Intentaban encontrármelo.**

T: **Intentaban encontrármelo.** Good. *They were trying to find me it.* But if you wanted to emphasize *They were trying to find me it*, then you could say this sentence in the way that we would probably say it in English, which is *They were trying to find it for me.* Then you could do that in Spanish. You have that option. So how would you say that? *They were trying to find it for me*, using the word *for*:

S: **Intentaban encontrarlo para mí.**

T: Good. **Intentaban encontrarlo para mí.** So here we are emphasizing, actually *me*. But mostly in Spanish we kind of avoid the use of the preposition, as we've been noticing. **Intentaban encontrármelo.**

## Track 47

T: *The dinner* in Spanish is **la cena**, spelt *c-e-n-a*, **la cena**.

S: **La cena**.

T: **La cena**. Those in Spain will pronounce /la thena/. So **la cena**, *the dinner*. Now, *to dine*, which doesn't sound formal in Spanish as it does in English, *to dine*, you just make **la cena** into a verb.

So how do you think that would sound?

S: **Cenar**.

T: **Cenar**. Good. So **cenar** is *to dine*. So how would you say *I was dining*, or more naturally in English, *I was having dinner*?

S: **Cenaba**.

T: Good. **Cenaba**. Now, apart from *I was having dinner*, what else can that mean? **Cenaba**?

S: *He/she/it were having dinner*.

T: And? Who else?

S: *You* (formal).

T: Good. So we have all of those meanings there with the *-aba*. So for this line in the past we have *-aba* for *-ar* verbs. We are taking off our *-ar* and we're putting *-aba* as our key sound, and then we are adding on more, so *n* or *s*. **Quemar**, *q-u-e-m-a-r*, **quemar** in Spanish is *to burn*.

S: **Quemar**.

T: **Quemar**. Good. How would you say *He was burning the dinner*? *He was burning the dinner*:

S: **Quemaba la cena**.

T: Good. **Quemaba la cena**. And if you wanted to show that it was *he* that was burning the dinner, how would you do that?

S: Just *él*. **Él quemaba la cena**.

T: Good. And if you wanted to show that it was *you* (formal), *You were burning the dinner*:



S: **Usted quemaba la cena.**

T: Good. **Usted quemaba la cena.** Good. So **Él quemaba la cena**, *he was burning*, and then we say what he was burning: *the dinner*. If we want to say *The dinner was burning*, *The dinner was getting burnt*, we can't just say **La cena quemaba**, because we are waiting to hear what was the dinner burning? It feels incomplete. So if you want to just say *The dinner was burning*, like *The dinner was getting burnt*, in Spanish we are going to say *The dinner was burning itself*. What is *itself*?

S: **Se.**

T: **Se.** So how would you say *The dinner was burning*, *The dinner was getting burnt*, *The dinner was burning itself*?

S: **La cena se quemaba.**

T: Very good. That's it! **La cena se quemaba.** Good. The position of **la cena** is also flexible. You can say **La cena se quemaba** or you can put **la cena** afterwards. How would that be?

S: **Se quemaba la cena.**

T: **Se quemaba la cena.** So it's flexible, unlike in English, because in English, well we don't really change verbs so much. There are not so many grammatical resources in English as there are in Spanish, for example, so in English the word order is much more important than in Spanish to show what's going on. So we can say **La cena se quemaba** or **Se quemaba la cena**. Because we have **se**, we understand that the dinner was getting burnt, there was nobody else there involved. If you want to say *I burn*, like in the sun, in the sense of, you know, *I get burnt*, you're also going to use this structure, no? You're going to say *I burn myself in the sun*. Now you understand you're not burning yourself, it just means *I get burnt*. So *sun* is **sol**. *In* was:

S: **En.**

T: **En.** So *I get burnt*, *I burn in the sun*, how would that be? And *sun* is masculine.

S: **Me quemo en el sol.**

T: Good. **Me quemo en el sol.** You can't just say **Quemo en el sol**, because this would mean that *I burn something in the sun*, and we will be waiting to hear what you burn in the sun. **Me quemo en el sol**. If you want to say *The sun burns me*, this is another way you could put the sentence, and

there we are not using this “self” structure, because we have *The sun burns* and then we have *me* telling us what it burns, so it’s complete. So how would you say that, *the sun burns me*?

S: **El sol me quema.**

T: Good. **El sol me quema. Me quema el sol.** Either way. Another example of a verb like this is **romper. Romper. Romper** means – maybe you can guess it. What do you think **romper** means?

It’s quite obscure, the connection, but you might find it. *Rupture*?

S: *To break.*

T: *To break. Romper, to break.* So how would you say *I break*?

S: **Rompo.**

T: **Rompo**, with a *p*, **rompo**. *I break it:*

S: **Lo rompo.**

T: **Lo rompo.** Good. *I break it.* If you want to say *it breaks*, like *it gets broken*, *it breaks all the time*. *All the time* is **todo el tiempo**. Literally *all, todo, el tiempo, the time*. **Todo**, *t-o-d-o*, is *all*. So *It breaks all the time, It breaks itself, it gets broken, all the time*. How would you say that? *It breaks all the time:*

S: **Se rompa todo –**

T: The **se** got your attention, so you forgot to do something very important, which was to quickly go back to the “to” form and be clear on what type of verb you’re working with.

S: **Se rompe todo el tiempo.**

T: Good. **Se rompe todo el tiempo.** *It breaks all the time.* So here we understand that it gets broken, *it breaks itself*. How would you say *they break all the time*?

S: It’s **rompen**. And, **Se rompen todo el tiempo.**

T: **Se rompen todo el tiempo.** *They break themselves*, not literally that they are breaking themselves, just *they get broken*. We don’t have this *get* in Spanish, and this is how we get around it.

What was *tonight*?

S: **Esta noche.**

T: **Esta noche.** So we said **esta** is *this* for feminine words. **Esta noche.** What was *this* for masculine words? How did we say *this car*?

S: **Este auto.**

T: **Este auto. Este coche.** Good. So **este** is *this* for masculine words. And we have the /e/ of **el**, like **el auto**, in **este**. **Este auto.** *These cars* are **estos autos**. So we go from **este** to **estos** for the plural.

Not **estes**. Ah? **Estos. Estos autos.**

S: **Estos autos.**

T: Now this might look irregular, but there is a logic there, it's just different to the one that we might expect. We have the /e/ of **el** in **este**, and we have the /os/ of **los** in **estos**. So we have *the car*:

S: **El coche.**

T: Good. And *this car*:

S: **Este coche.**

T: Good. *The cars*:

S: **Los coches.**

T: **Los coches.** And *these cars*:

S: **Estos coches.**

T: **Estos coches.** So we have /os/ in **los** and **estos**, and we have /e/ in **el** and **este**. All of those you can make *that* and *those* now, just by plucking out the *t*. So if **este auto** is *this car*, how do you say *that car*?

S: **Ese auto.**

T: **Ese auto.** If **estos coches** or **estos autos** are *these cars*, how would you say *those cars*?

S: **Esos autos.**

T: **Esos autos.** Good. So how would you say *those ones* and for *those ones* you can just use this word for *those* and imagine me talking about masculine things or mixed things, things of mixed gender. *Those ones break all the time, those ones break all the time:*

S: **Esos rompen todo el tiempo.**

T: So now I'm waiting to hear what they break. **Esos rompen todo el tiempo.**

S: Ah.

T: What do they break all the time?

S: **Esos se rompen todo el tiempo.**

T: Good. **Esos se rompen todo el tiempo.** So you will have to listen out in Spanish for these verbs that want you to show it when their action isn't to something else. *It's transforming*, not something else, **se transforma**. *It breaks, it's breaking*, not something else, **se rompe**. *It's changing*, not something else, but here you don't need it. **Cambia**, from **cambiar**. **Cambia**. Being aware that this occurs is enough, and we will listen out and in real life get a conscious understanding and also an intuition about where we need to do this.

## Track 48

T: We said that for *-ar* verbs, we take away the *-ar* and we put *-aba* to get this line in the past. So **cenar**, *to dine* or *to have dinner*. **Cenaba**, *I was having dinner, I was dining, I used to have dinner, I used to dine*. Now for *-er/-ir* verbs, we take away our *-er/-ir* ending and we put *-ía*. Where did we hear that before? *-ía*?

S: The “would” tense.

T: **Comer** was *to eat*. How was *I would eat*?

S: **Comería**.

T: **Comería**. Good. Now for the line in the past, we are not adding on to the full verb. We are taking off our ending before we put *-ía*. So how would it be? *I was eating, he was eating, she was eating, etc.?*

S: **Comía**.

T: **Comía**. **Vender** is *to sell*. **Vender**. *I would sell it. I would sell it:*

S: **Lo vendería**.

T: **Lo vendería**. *I was selling it. I was selling it:*

S: **Lo vendía**.

T: **Lo vendía**. Good. If you want to say *for sale*, you can just say *it sells itself. It sells itself. It's for sale*. How would that be?

S: **Se vende**.

T: **Se vende**. Good. *For sale*. **Se vende**. *It sells itself*. And if you go to a Spanish speaking place, you will see on houses and on cars this expression. **Se vende**. *It was selling itself, it was for sale:*

S: **Se vendía**.

T: **Se vendía**. *It would be for sale. It would sell itself:*

S: **Se vendería**.

T: **Se vendería.** *It would sell itself. It would be for sale.* Good. What was *to break* again? Related to *rupture*?

S: **Romper.**

T: **Romper.** Good. How would you say *I was breaking it*?

S: **Lo rompía.**

T: **Lo rompía.** Good. And if you just wanted to say *it was breaking*, and you mean by itself. *It was breaking*, not something else. How would you say it?

S: **Se rompía.**

T: **Se rompía.** Good. How would you say *they were breaking*?

S: **Se rompían.**

T: **Se rompían.** Good. Give me again the “to” form. *To break*:

S: **Romper.**

T: **Romper.** What is *I would break it*? *I would break it*:

S: **Lo rompía.** Ah, **lo rompería.**

T: **Lo rompería.** *I would break it.* How would you say *I was breaking it*?

S: **Lo rompía.**

T: **Lo rompía.** Good. How would you say *they would break it*? *They would break it*:

S: **Les?**

T: *They would break* is where you need to begin.

S: **Romperían.** **Lo romperían.**

T: **Lo romperían.** *They were breaking it, they were breaking it*:

S: **Lo rompían.**

T: **Lo rompían.** So, we have the same endings for *would* and for the line in the past for *-er/-ir* verbs. The big difference of course is that for *would* we are adding on to the “to” form of the verb and for the past we are taking off our endings first, which means we get pairs like **comería**, *I would eat*; **comía**, *I was eating*. **Rompería**, *I would break*; **rompía**, *I was breaking*. So how would you say *it breaks, it breaks*, and you mean *it gets broken? It breaks itself* in the present tense:

S: **Se rompe.**

T: **Se rompe.** How would you say *it's going to break? It's going to break*. How is *we are going or let's go?*

S: **Vamos.**

T: *It is going to break.*

S: **Se va a romper.**

T: Good. **Se va a romper** or **va a romperse**. So this means *it's going to break. It's going to get broken* and there we are not waiting to hear what it's going to break because we have **se**. So we completed that structure. We completed the sentence with **se**. The word for *how* in Spanish is **cómo**. If you want to ask somebody in Spanish, *how do you say?* - so maybe you have a Spanish speaking friend that speaks English. And you want to use them like a dictionary and say *how do you say x, y, or z?* What you will say in Spanish is *how does it say itself? How is it said? How does it say itself?* So this is another example of where you might be using this structure of *self*, which we are seeing in Spanish is very flexible. It's giving us many different meanings, this structure of *myself, yourself, ourselves, itself*, this structure. So *it says* from **decir** is **dice**. It's a little bit irregular, but then the other versions follow. So we have **dice** for *he, she, it, or usted*.

How would you say, *you (informal) say?*

S: **Dices.**

T: Good. And *they*:

S: **Dicen.**

T: **Dicen.** And as we know the *we* form tends to escape the irregularity as the accent is somewhere else, so we go back to **decir**. And to say *we say*:

S: **Decimos.**

T: **Decimos.** Good. So how would you say, *how is it said? How does it say itself?*:

S: **¿Cómo se dice?**

T: **¿Cómo se dice?** So you will use this often. You don't say "¿cómo dices?" This means *how do you, as an individual, say... how do you say it?* If you want to say, *how is it said, ¿Cómo se dice? How does it say itself?*

So **se** is doing quite a lot in Spanish. Sometimes we are using it to wrap up the sentence, to show that we are not using a verb "to" anybody or "to" anything else like in *it breaks*, or *it transforms*, these examples that we saw. Sometimes the **se** is changing the meaning like between **quedar**, *remain*, or *be leftover* and **quedarse**, *to stay*. And sometimes this **se** has quite a creative application. **Se vende.** *It sells itself, for sale.* Or, we could even have **se habla. Se habla español.** *Spanish speaks itself. Spanish is spoken. Spanish spoken.* **Se habla español. Quedar** by itself means *to remain*. And you can use this in the sense of *I have one left*. In Spanish, you will say *it remains to me one*. This is the structure in Spanish. *I have one left. It remains to me one*. So how would you say that? *I have one left*. What is the word for *one*?

S: **Uno.**

T: **Uno**, or **una** if you are talking about a feminine thing. So *I have one left, it remains to me one*:

S: **Me quedo un.**

T: That means *I stay one*. So there you made the reflexive structure. You said *I remain myself* and you got the meaning of *to stay*. But what you want is *it remains to me*.

S: **Me queda un.**

T: **Me queda uno.** *I have one left. Me queda uno.* *I have two left.* If **me queda uno** is *it remains to me one, I have one left*. How do you think you would say *I have two left*? The word for *two* is **dos**.  
**Dos.**

S: **Dos.**

T: Related to *duo*. So *I have two left. They remain to me two*:



S: **Me quedan dos.**

T: **Me quedan dos.** Very good. And of course we have the *they* form of the verb because it's *they remain*. As I'm saying *they remain to me, to me*, how do you think it would be if you wanted to say *he has two left*?

S: **Le quedan dos.**

T: **Le quedan dos.** *Two of them, they remain to him. **Le quedan dos.** *He has two left or she has two left, or you (formal) have two left.* So maybe if you go to a shop and you ask for something and there's none left, maybe they will say **no me quedan.** *I don't have any left.* **No me quedan, no me queda,** you will hear both just depending on what the person has in their mind. *I have none left as in one. I have none left as in they've all gone.* **No me queda. No me quedan.** But, we saw that with this verb then when we use this reflexive structure, this "self" structure, we get a different meaning. If I say *I remain myself* then I get the meaning of *to stay. I stay.* So how is *I remain myself*?*

S: **Me quedo.**

T: Good. **Me quedo.** *We remain ourselves:*

S: **Nos quedamos.**

T: **Nos quedamos.** Good. *He remains himself or she remains herself:*

S: **Se queda.**

T: **Se queda.** *They stay:*

S: **Se quedan.**

T: **Se quedan.** Good. Ah, It's all of those that begin with *l - lo, la, los, las*, all become **se** for the "self" version. From **hablar**, *to speak*, if you want to say *I was speaking, he was speaking*:

S: **Hablaba.**

T: **Hablaba.** So we have *-aba* as our key sound for the line in the past for *-ar* verbs. *They were speaking*:

S: **Hablaban.**

T: Good. So how do you say *they were staying, they were remaining themselves?*

S: **Se quedaban.**

T: **Se quedaban.** Good. *They weren't staying here:*

S: **No se quedaban aquí.**

T: Good. *I wasn't staying here:*

S: **No me quedabo, no-**

T: So *-aba* works for *I, he, she, it,* and *you* formal.

S: **No me quedaba.**

T: **No me quedaba aquí.** And *we were staying here:*

S: **Nos quedábamos aquí.**

T: The accent stays.

S: **Quedábamos.**

T: **Nos quedábamos aquí.** *We weren't staying here:*

S: **No nos quedábamos aquí.**

T: **No nos quedábamos aquí.** Good. Now if you wanted to say *we didn't have any left*, so here, what we will say is *it didn't*, or *they didn't*, we have the option, *remain to us*.

S: **No nos quedaban.**

T: Good. **No nos quedaba** or **no nos quedaban.** Good.

## Track 49

T: *To call* in Spanish, so *to call to somebody* and also *to make a phone call* is **llamar**.

S: **Llamar**.

T: *L-l*, and we said this double *l* creates a /yuh/ sound in most Spanish dialects just like the *y*. *L-l-a-m-a-r*. **Llamar**.

S: **Llamar**.

T: Good. And we said that in Spanish you don't tend to say *my name is* or *I am called*, you say *I call myself* to introduce yourself. So how would you say *I call myself*?

S: **Me llamo**.

T: **Me llamo**. Good. And if you want to ask somebody what their name is, you could say *how do you call yourself?* So let's do this informally. *How do you call yourself?* What was the word for *how*?

S: **Cómo**.

T: **Cómo**. *How do you call yourself?*:

S: **¿Cómo te llamas?**

T: Good. **¿Cómo te llamas?** How would you say *how does she call herself?* What is her name?:

S: **¿Cómo se llama?**

T: Good. **¿Cómo se llama?** Imagine you heard her name once before and you wanted to say *what was she called?* How was she calling herself?:

S: **¿Cómo se llamaba?**

T: Good. **¿Cómo se llamaba?** What was her name, what was his name, or what was your name (formally)? What was their name, what were they calling themselves?:

S: **¿Cómo se llamaban?**

T: Good. **¿Cómo se llamaban?** Good. What was *to have*, not in the sense of **haber**, not the *have* that we use to go into the past, but the *have* that we used for possession?

S: **Tener.**

**Tener.** Good. And we said also that this **tener** is the *-tain, -tain* that we get inside various English verbs or Latin-English verbs like *contain*. *Contain* is **contener**. So we have this trick using **tener** that we can convert over some more verbs from English. So doing the same with *obtain*, we would get:

S: **Obtener.**

T: **Obtener.** *Maintain* changed a little bit. Have a go:

S: **Mentener.**

T: **Mantener.**

S: **Mantener.**

T: **Mantener.** And we said that *man-* actually is like from **mano**, hand. *Sustain*. And this one changed a little bit as well.

S: **Sostener.**

T: **Sostener.** So this *-tain* that we have in English is **tener**. *To have*. So how would you say *I used to have*?

S: **Tenía.**

T: **Tenía.** Good. So if you wanted to say *I used to have a big house*:

S: **Tenía un grande casa. Un casa grande.**

T: Yeah, almost, but **un**?

S: **Una. Una casa grande.**

T: Good. These bits and pieces require a little thought as well. **Tenía una casa grande.** *We used to have a big house*:

S: **Teníamos una grande - una casa grande.**

T: Good. **Teníamos una casa grande.** And the accent stays in the same place on the *-ía*. **Tenía, teníamos.** Good. *I used to have four, but now I don't have any left. I used to have four, but now I don't have any left:* the word for *four* is **cuatro, cuatro.**

S: **Cuatro.**

T: Related to:

S: *Quarter.*

T: Very good. So *I used to have four:*

S: **Tenía cuatro.**

T: Good. *But now:*

S: **Pero ahora.**

T: *I don't have any left. So they don't remain me, or it doesn't remain to me.* That's all we need to say to give that *I don't have any left:*

S: **No me queda.**

T: Good. So all together. *I used to have four, but now I don't have any left:*

S: **Tenía cuatro, pero ahora no me queda.**

T: Good. **Tenía cuatro, pero ahora no me queda** or **pero ahora, no me quedan.** You could use either. So, we are not using *have* to give this meaning *we have left*. How was *I have* in the present?

S: **Tengo.**

T: **Tengo.** And how did you make that *I have to? I have to* in the sense of *I must:*

S: **Que. Tengo que.**

T: So *I have to see you*, and let's speak informally?

S: **Tengo que verte.**

T: Good. **Tengo que verte.** Now if you want to say *I had to see you*, you can use this line in the past that we learned even though in English we are saying *had*, not *having to*, this is fine in Spanish.

So *I had to see you, I was having to see you*:

S: **Tenía que verte.**

T: Good. **Tenía que verte.** Good. Yesterday is **ayer**, *a-y-e-r*. **Ayer.**

S: **Ayer.**

T: Good. So *I had to see you yesterday*:

S: **Tenía que verte ayer.**

T: Good. **Tenía que verte ayer.** To do or to make was **hacer**. *H-a-c-e-r*. **Hacer.**

S: **Hacer.**

T: *Did you have to do it yesterday? Talking informally, did you have to do it yesterday?:*

S: ¿**Tenías que hacerlo ayer?**

T: Good. ¿**Tenías que hacerlo ayer?** *Didn't you have to do it yesterday?:*

S: ¿**No tenías que hacerlo ayer?**

T: Good. And you could use this like *weren't you supposed to do it?* ¿**No tenías que hacerlo ayer?** *Didn't you have to do it yesterday? Weren't you supposed to do it yesterday?* Good. I want to look at just three irregular verbs that we have for this line in the past. Now this is a very regular tense. There are very few irregularities in this tense. It's a very safe tense and the irregularities that we have are with very small verbs. For example, **ver**. How was *I see*, from **ver**?

S: **Veo.**

T: **Veo.** The same irregularity that we get in the *I* form in the present, **veo**; we get it in this line in the past. So instead of taking off *-er* and putting *-o*, we ended up with this extra *e*. So **veía** is *I was seeing, I used to see, he was seeing, he used to see, she was seeing, she used to see, or you (formal)*. **Veía.** Give me the other versions then. *We were seeing*:

S: **Veíamos.**

T: **Veíamos.** *They or you guys*:

S: **Veían.**

T: **Veían.** *You* (informal):

S: **Veías.**

T: Good. Another irregular verb in this tense is **ser**. **Ser.** *To be.* Now the base for *I, he, she, it, you* (formal) is **era, era.** Now this is very easy to remember because we are looking at the past which is a line in time and then *era* in English is a line in time in the past. So we can just think of an era. We would use this with characteristic things. So for example, if you wanted to say *I used to be a student, what was student?*

S: **Estudiante.**

T: Good. So how would you say *I used to be a student?*

S: **Era estudiante.**

T: **Era estudiante.** Good. We don't need the word for *a.* *Era estudiante.* Good. *Were you a student,* informally?

S: **¿Eras estudiante?**

T: Good. **¿Eras estudiante?** *We were students.*

S: **Eramos, eramos-**

T: Where are you putting the accent? I couldn't tell.

S: I put it at the -a, at the -AMos, but it's **ERamos.**

T: **Éramos.** Good. In these tenses the accent doesn't move around. Good, so **era, éramos.** Good. *We were students:*

S: **Éramos estudiantes.**

T: Good. *What were they? What were they?:*

S: **¿Qué eran?**

T: Yeah, **¿Qué eran?** Good. And then the last one of course, that is irregular in this tense is **ir**. **Ir**. *To go*. Now *I was going* is kind of like a blend of the two different ways we have of creating this past: *-aba* and *-ía*. *I was going* is *iba*. So you see we get a bit of *-ía* and a bit of *-aba* with **ir**. *I was going* from *to go*. **Iba**. So you can give me the other versions. *We were going*:

S: **Íbamos**.

T: Good. *They were going*:

S: **Iban**.

T: Good. *You were going*, informally:

S: **Ibas**.

T: **Ibas**. Good. *Why were you going?*:

S: **¿Por qué ibas?**

T: Good. Now **iba** is very useful because, of course, you can use it like in the English *I was going to call you*, for example. *I was going to go, but I didn't have the time. I was going to do it, but I forgot*. So you can use it in this way as well, which is very common. So how would you say *I was going to call you*, and we are talking informally? *I was going to call you*:

S: **Iba llamarte**.

T: There is something missing. **Iba llamarte**.

S: **Iba**. *I was. I was going*.

T: Hmm, what kind of verb is *going*?

S: **Iba a llamarte**.

T: Good. **Iba a llamarte**. *I was going to do it*:

S: **Iba hacerlo**.

T: Good. And I'm not sure here if you are putting the **a** to connect the verbs.

S: If I did it?



T: Yeah.

S: No, I didn't. I forgot.

T: Ok, so again.

S: **Iba a hacerlo.**

T: Good. **Iba a hacerlo.** So actually in fluent speech you would hear */ibacerlo/*. All of those three */a/'s*, **iba**, **a**, **hacer** would blend together, so that's why I wasn't sure if you said it or not. *We were going to do it or make it:*

S: **Íbamos a hacerlo.**

T: Good. **Íbamos a hacerlo.** *We were going to do them or we were going to make them:*

S: **Íbamos a hacerlos.**

T: Good. **Íbamos a hacerlos.** Good.

## Track 50

T: **Gracias por venir.** **Gracias por venir** in Spanish means *thanks for coming*. **Gracias por venir.**

S: **Gracias por venir.**

T: So there's two things that we can see in this sentence. We can use this sentence like a hook to remember two important things about Spanish. The first thing is that we have two words for *for*.

We already saw another word for *for*. For example, how were we saying *for me*?

S: **Para mí.**

T: **Para mí.** Good. And *for you*, speaking informally:

S: **Para ti.**

T: **Para ti.** So we had **mí** and **ti** coming with prepositions. **Para mí, para ti, de mí, from me, de ti, from you**, but then for the other people we just say *for he*, for example. So how is *for him* or *for he* in Spanish?

S: **Para él.**

T: Good. And *for her*:

S: **Para ella.**

T: Good. So this **para** is when something is for somebody. No? For example, if you want to say *this is for you*, speaking informally, let's say it's a masculine object. *This, this one, is for you*. How would you say that?

S: **Ello-**

T: What is *tonight*?

S: Ah, **esta.**

T: Good. So that's your hook and you go from there. **Esta noche.** But, I want a masculine thing.

S: **Esto-**

T: What you should do is look at somewhere that you've used it. So you should look at *this car*.

S: **Este.**

T: And then you find it. These are the processes that we're learning and this is half of the method. You can take yourself through those processes when you need to find it. Then it comes to your memory. Then you know it after that. But, the first few times, you need to have a look around, let's say, and seek to find it. So *this* or *this one*, masculine thing:

S: **Este.**

T: **Este.** So *this one is for you* (speaking informally):

S: **Este es para ti.**

T: Good. **Este es para ti** if we mean a masculine thing. What if you meant *these are for you* (masculine or mixed things)?

S: **Estos son para ti.**

T: Well done. **Estos son para ti.** So we saw that actually for *this* and *these* we have **este** and **estos**. In **este** we have the /e/ of **el** and in **estos** we have the /os/ of **los**. **Estos son para ti.** So this is the *for* that we learned until now, no? Then we have **por** which is much more flexible. It has many more meanings. Let's investigate some of them. **Por.** You can use it like *because of*. No? Sometimes when we say *for* in English, we mean *because of*. For example, if you say *for this reason*. What you mean is *because of this reason*. So you don't mean **para**, you mean **por**. So **por** also means *for* in the sense of *because of*. And actually in the words *because* and *why*, which were?

S: **Por qué?**

T: **Por qué.** Here in *why*, we see that it is *because of*. **Por qué**, *why*, actually means *because of what*. *Because of what?* And then **porque** as *because*. We said that we have the same word for *why* and *because*. **Porque** as *because* means *because of that*. So in both cases you have **por**, meaning *because of*. So *reason* in Spanish is **razón**. **Razón.**

S: **Razón.**

T: Or /*rathón*/ in most of Spain. /*Rathón*/. But in most of the Spanish speaking world /*rasón*/.

S: **Razón.**

T: **Razón** is feminine. So how would you say *this reason*?

S: **Esta razón.**

T: Good. So how would you say *because of this reason, I don't want to go? Because of this reason, I don't want to go*:

S: **Por esta razón, no quiero ir.**

T: **Por esta razón, no quiero ir.** Let's contrast the two. What was *to buy*? Do you remember *to buy*?

S: Comprer- comprar- **comprar**?

T: **Comprar.** Good. **Comprar.** You can say *I'm buying it for you*. How would you say that? Let's keep it informal. *I'm buying it for you*:

S: **Lo compro para ti.**

T: Good. **Lo compro para ti.** That means, you know, *this thing I'm buying it for you*. But maybe, in some contexts you want to say *I'm buying it because of you*. How would you say that?

S: **Lo compro por ti.**

T: Good. **Lo compro por ti.** So it doesn't mean necessarily that this thing is for that person, just that you've bought it because of that person. So maybe you buy an ashtray in your house and your one friend that smokes comes and you say **lo he comprado por ti**. *I have bought it because of you*. If you say **lo he comprado para ti**, *for you*, then he'll run to take the ashtray home. Another use for **por** is when we're talking about time. When you are talking about periods of time, *for two weeks*, *for two days*, you will not say **para**. You will say **por**. This is another place where you use **por**. The word for *day* is **día**. **Día**.

S: **Día.**

T: **Día.** It's actually related to an Indo-European root which just means a very old root meaning *light*. And *deity* in English comes from the same root. Or the *ju-* of *Jupiter* is actually also from this root. *Jupiter* means something like the father of the gods. You have *-piter* like *paternal* there and *ju-* from this same root as **día** and *deity*. And of course you have *Jupiter* which is the biggest planet,

so the father of the gods, Jupiter. **Día** is a word that looks feminine and it's one of those few words that end in *-a*, that look feminine, but are masculine. So *the day* is:

S: **El día.**

T: **El día.** And *the days*:

S: **Los días.**

T: **Los días.** And *every day* is *all the days*. Before we said **todo el tiempo** to say *all the time*. If you want to say *every day*, you say *all the days*. How do you think that would sound?

S: **Todos los días.**

T: Good. **Todos** in plural. **Todos los días.** Good. If you wanted to say *I'm staying for three days*, *three* is **tres**. **Tres.** *I'm staying for three days, I remain myself for three days*, so how would you say that? *I'm staying for three days*:

S: **Me quedo por tres días.**

T: Very good. **Me quedo por tres días.** *I'm staying for three days*. How would you say *I will stay for three days, I will stay for three days*. You don't really need- you don't need the *will* here. The fact that you say *for three days* is already some kind of a future context. The days didn't happen yet, but let's practice the future. So *I will stay for three days*:

S: So it's *quedé*?

T: In both futures, we are adding on to the verb-

S: **Quedaré.**

T: Yes, we are pushing it into the future. So *I will stay for three days*:

S: **Me quedaré por tres días.**

T: Good. **Me quedaré por tres días.** So this sounds a little bit more certain, you know, when you use the future. **Me quedo por tres días.** *I'm staying for three days*. **Me quedaré por tres días.** *I will stay for three days*. How would you say *I would stay for three days? I would stay for three days*. A nice hook to remember *would* is *I would like* or *it would please me*. This is a nice hook.

S: **Me gustaría.**

T: So this is a nice hook to remember *would*, because it is something that is very common that you will use a lot. So what is that little bit you need for *would* that you can pluck out of **me gustaría?**

S: The *-ía* ending.

T: Perfect. So *I would stay for three days:*

S: **Me quedaría por tres días.**

T: Good. **Me quedaría por tres días.** *But, I have to work.* Do you remember what is *to work?* We saw it very briefly?

S: **Trabajar.**

T: **Trabajar.** Good. **Trabajar** is *t-r-a-b-a-j-a-r* and that *-jar* makes */har/*. **Trabajar.** So, but *I have to work:*

S: **Pero tengo que trabajar.**

T: Yes, now all together. *I would stay for three days, but I have to work.* And not from memory, but thinking it through.

S: I know because I've already forgotten it.

T: Good. So, thinking it through again. Taking that time to think it through again. *I would stay* is the first bit:

S: **Me quedaría.**

T: Good. *For three days:*

S: **Por tres días.**

T: *But, I have to work:*

S: **Pero tengo que trabajar.**

T: Perfect. **Me quedaría por tres días, pero tengo que trabajar.** Perfect. Very good.

## Track 51

T: What was *I am*, from **estar**? *I am*:

S: **Estoy**.

T: **Estoy**. If you want to say *I'm there for you, I'm there for you*, you know, in this supportive way, you don't have to say *there* to begin with. Because we are using **estar** and not **ser**, it kind of makes that *there* a little redundant. We feel that already in **estar** that's referring to states, locations and states, so we don't need to say *there*. We can just say *I'm for you, I'm for you*, using **estar**. What *for* do you think you need?

S: **Para**.

T: Good. So how would you say *I'm there for you*, talking to a friend?

S: **Estoy para ti**.

T: **Estoy para ti**. Good. To say *I'm here because of you*, then we are not going to use **para**. We don't even really need to say *here*.

S: If it's still **estoy** it still implies location.

T: It kind of just gives you the feeling. Actually, when you knock on somebody's door and you are calling for them, you will just say **¿Estás?** You don't say *Are you there?* Or if you're on internet, **¿Estás?** you will write in the messenger. If you call somebody up and you want to speak to Juan, you will not say *Is Juan there?* You will just say **¿Está Juan?** **¿Juan está?** So, *I am here because of you* (formal):

S: **Estoy por usted**.

T: Good. **Estoy por usted**. *For you* (informal):

S: **Estoy por ti**.

T: **Estoy por ti**. So this would be *because of you*. How would you say *I have come because of you, I have come because of you* (informal). *I have come because of you*:

S: Ah, the first bit is **he**. **He venido por ti**.

T: **He venido por ti.** So whenever we want *because of*, we want to avoid the temptation to translate **porque de**, *because of*. Good. So *I have come because of you*, **he venido por ti**. You could also say *It is because of you that we have come*, for example. *It is because of you that we have come*. And of course we can make this sentence perfectly if we think it through piece by piece. So, *it is because of you*:

S: **Es por ti.**

T: *That we have come*:

S: **Que hemos venido.**

T: Good. **Es por ti que hemos venido.** *It is because of you that we have come*. Good. Another use of **por** – so we are seeing that **por** is much more flexible than **para** – another use of **por** is if you want to say *for* in the sense of exchanging this one for that one, to exchange something for something else, then also we use **por**. **Cambiar, cambiar**, means *to change*. If you want to say, *I would change this one for that one*, *I would change this one for that one*, and with *this one* and *that one* let's refer to a masculine thing. So, *I would change* is the first step.

S: **Cambiaría?**

T: Uh-huh. *This one*, a masculine thing:

S: **Este.**

T: Good. *For that one*, masculine thing.

S: **Por ese.**

T: Good. Take away the *t*. Good. **Cambiaría este por ese.** *I would change this one for that one*. How would you say *I would change these ones for those ones*, masculine or mixed objects? *I would change these ones for those ones*:

S: **Cambiaría estos por esos.**

T: Good. **Cambiaría estos por esos.** Very good. What if they were feminine things?

S: **Cambiaría estas por esas.**



T: Good. **Cambiaría estas por esas.** Good. *Would you change these ones for those ones?* Speaking informally. *Would you change these ones for those ones?*, still feminine things:

S: ¿**Cambiarías estas por esas?**

T: Good. ¿**Cambiarías estas por esas?** *Wouldn't you change these ones for those ones?*, still feminine:

S: ¿**No cambiarías estas por esas?**

T: Good. Go on...

S: ¿**Por qué no cambiaría estas por esas?**

T: Still think it through though.

S: Sorry, ¿**Por qué no cambiarías estas por esas?**

T: Good. We don't want to stop thinking. You will be able to relax that as you go on, but at the beginning you want to be very insistent on your thinking so you install correct structural habits or grammatical habits. We don't really use much grammatical terminology, but everything we're seeing here is grammar, of course. It's all structure. Ah, something I should mention is that if you're chatting online, if you're practicing your Spanish online you might see **por** written as an *x* as a shortcut. Because **por** is also what you use in, like, times tables. **Ocho por ocho** is *eight times eight*. So you might see **gracias por venir** as **gracias x venir**. And if you have the habit of writing kisses with an *x* this can be very confusing to Spanish speakers. So **gracias por venir** reminds us, this nice hook, that we will hear a lot, **gracias por venir**, reminds us that we have two words for *for*. **Para**, something being *for you*, quite literally, and then **por**, which is much more flexible in meaning. The other thing that we learn from the sentence **gracias por venir** is that after prepositions, so these little group of words, we've seen - **para, por, de, en, con, a**, we've seen quite a few of them - following these words in English we put *-ing*. *Thank you for coming*. But in Spanish we just put the "to" form. **Gracias por venir**. So how would you say *thank you for calling, thank you for calling* - if you forget *call* you can think of *what's your name?* or *how are you called?* because it's something that people tend to have heard somewhere.

S: **Gracias por llamar.**

T: Good. **Gracias por llamar.** And if you wanted to say *thanks for calling me* you could say that as well.

S: **Gracias por llamarme.**

T: Good. **Gracias por llamarme.** So after prepositions we don't use the *-ing*. We want to resist any temptation to put the *-ing* form after the preposition. This is negative language transfer, things that are not the same between English and Spanish. What was *I am* from **estar**?

S: **Estoy.**

T: **Estoy.** And you remember how to say *tired* in Spanish?

S: **Cansado.**

T: Good. **Cansado.** So how do you say *I am tired*?

S: **Estoy cansado.**

T: But you being a female?

S: **Cansada.**

T: Good. **Estoy cansada.** So if you want to say *I'm tired of – dancing, cooking, cleaning* – it's all going to be with the "to" form. What was *to work*?

S: **Trabajar.**

T: **Trabajar.** How would you say *I'm tired of working*?

S: **Estoy cansada de trabajar.**

T: Yes. **Estoy cansada de trabajar.** Good. For one of the pasts that we saw, for the line in the past, so when we're referring to like a period of time in the past, for *-ar* verbs we have the *-aba* base ending. So how would you say *I was* from **estar**?

S: **Estaba.**

T: **Estaba.** *I was tired of working:*

S: **Estaba cansada de trabajar.**

T: **Estaba cansada de trabajar.** Good. *I was tired of working.* Good. *We were tired of working,* and let's be a masculine or a mixed group. *We were tired of working:*

S: **Estábamos cansados de trabajar.**

T: Very good. **Estábamos cansados de trabajar.** Good. If you want to say something like *it's a way of doing it, it's a way of doing it,* the word for *way* is *form, a form of doing it,* and how do you think *form* might be in Spanish if you had to guess it?

S: **Forma.**

T: Yes. **Forma.** Good. So how would you say *a way of doing it?* What was *to do* or *to make?*

S: **Hacer.**

T: *It is a way of doing it:*

S: **Es una forma de hacerlo.**

T: Good. **Es una forma de hacerlo.** Good. *I don't believe in arguing like this, in this way. I don't believe in arguing in this way.* So, *to believe* is **creer, creer** and it has two e's, *c-r-e-e-r, creer.*

S: **Creer.**

T: So how do you say *I don't believe?*

S: **No creo.**

T: **No creo.** What was *creation?*

S: **Creación.**

T: And what was *to create?*

S: **Crear.**

T: And what was *I create?*

S: **Creo.**

T: Yes. So we get this situation occasionally in Spanish that the “*I*” form of two different verbs will look the same. **Creo**, of course, could be from **creer**, *to believe*, or from **crear**, *to create*. So, *I don't believe*:

S: **No creo.**

T: *In arguing*. So *to argue* in Spanish you can use *to discuss*. This is the most common verb, actually, that's used for *argue*. *Discuss* is **discutir**, **discutir**.

S: So what do they use for *discuss*?

T: **Hablar**, mostly, but you can use **discutir** as well for *discuss*, but it has a heavy connotation mostly. No? I mean, if you argue with your boyfriend or your girlfriend you use **discutir**, you say this. **Argüir**, which is *argue*, means to argue a point, rather than to get in an argument. **Discutir** is more like to get in an argument. So it's what we can call a false friend, words that look like they are the same, but they have a difference in meaning, and there are a few of them. We need to watch out for them between English and Spanish. Another example would be **actual**, which doesn't mean *actual*, it means *current*, no? **Mi trabajo actual**, *my current job*. **Actualmente** means *currently*, *at the moment*, rather than *actually*. Mostly the vocabulary, the Latin English that we turn into Spanish, is very reliable, but there are a few words that we want to watch out for. **Discutir** is one of them. This doesn't really mean *to discuss* as much as it does *to argue*. So, *I don't believe in arguing*:

S: **No creo en discutir.**

T: Good. *In this way*, we will say *of this way* rather than *in this way*.

S: **De esta forma.**

T: Good. So all together, *I don't believe in arguing, in discussing, in this way*:

S: **No creo en discutir de esta forma.**

T: Good. **No creo en discutir de esta forma.** Good. So with this sentence, **gracias por venir**, we are reminded how we have two words for *for*, **por** and **para**, and we need to have a think and decide which one we think is most appropriate before we translate *for*. And that after prepositions we don't need to worry about making the *-ing* form of the verb, we just use the “to” form.

## Track 52

T: **Para**, this *for*, **para**, can also mean *in order to*, *in order to*. So in a sentence, for example, *We have spoken in order to resolve it. We have spoken in order to resolve it.* Now in English we could just say *We have spoken to resolve it*, no? We don't need to say *in order to*. But whenever we have this *to* meaning *in order to*, we want to translate this as **para** in Spanish. So let's make this sentence. First bit is *We have spoken. We have spoken*:

S: **Hemos hablado.**

T: **Hemos hablado.** *To resolve it – in order to resolve it.* Now, *to resolve* is **resolver**. Ah? The same word, **resolver**. So *We have spoken in order to resolve it*:

S: **Hemos hablado para resolverlo.**

T: Good. **Hemos hablado para resolverlo.** Good. So whilst the *to* of *to resolve*, **resolver**, would fit nicely here, I mean if we were to translate directly from English, *We have spoken to resolve it*, it doesn't work in Spanish. Whenever this *to* means *in order to*, we must put that **para**. **Hemos hablado para resolverlo.** You could say *We have spoken in order to try to resolve it.* What was *to try*? Related to *intention*:

S: **Intentar.**

T: Good. *We have spoken in order to try to resolve it*:

S: **Hemos hablado para intentar resolver– resolverlo.**

T: Good. **Hemos hablado para intentar resolverlo.** So only when the *to* implies *in order to* we want to put **para**. The “*to*” form of the verb in Spanish is not enough to include that meaning. We must put **para**. So for example, if you want to say *I'm here to see you*, does it mean *I'm here in order to see you*?

S: Yes.

T: Good. So *I am here to see you* (informally):

S: **Estoy aquí para verte.**

T: Good. **Estoy aquí para verte.** This is also something we could learn or interiorize through the negative language transfer that some Spanish speakers make when they speak English. For example, you might hear a Spanish speaker say *I am here for see you* or *for seeing you*. You might hear a Spanish speaker, especially with basic English, making this mistake. Now once you've heard that a few times, you would say, "Oh, maybe this is how you say it in Spanish." So we don't want to forget this opportunity, the opportunity to learn from the negative language transfer, the mistakes that Spanish speakers make in English, which originate from Spanish. Once you hear the same mistake a few times, you can assume it probably comes from Spanish. *I have called you in order to speak about it*: so the first bit is *I have called you, I have phoned, I have called* (informally):

S: **He llamado.** Ah, sorry. **Te he llamado.**

T: *In order to speak about it*:

S: **Para hablarlo.**

T: Good.

S: We don't use *about*.

T: No. Good. **Te he llamado para hablarlo.** So if we take the sentence in English, *I have called you to speak about it*, and we translate it directly, then we will say **Te he llamado hablarlo**. But when our *to* means *in order to*, we must put this **para**. **Te he llamado para hablarlo.** *I have called you in order to speak about it*. Good. What was *to be*, for states?

S: **Estar.**

T: **Estar.** And we said that we can use this to express when we are doing something right now. We can say, instead of *I eat*, **como**, *I am eating*, using this structure with **estar** and then the *-ing* form of the verb. Do you remember how you would get the *-ing* form of **comer**, for example? Of *-er* or *-ir* verbs?

S: **Comiendo?**

T: **Comiendo.**

S: **Comiendo.**

T: Good. **Comiendo**. So we add on *-iendo* for *-er/-ir* verbs and for *-ar* verbs we add on?

S: *-ando*.

T: Good. So how would you say *I am eating*?

S: **Estoy comiendo**.

T: **Estoy comiendo**. And this means right now, no? *I am speaking*:

S: **Estoy hablando**.

T: **Estoy hablando**. *I am explaining it: to explain* – we would go from *explanation* but *explanation* is an exception. It's not "explanación" in Spanish as we might hope, it's **explicación**. And we see we even have that /k/ sound in explain, **explicación**, we have it in English as well in *inexplicable*, for example we say in English. **Inexplicable** in Spanish. So we can see where that sound's coming from. So how is *explanation* or *explication* in Spanish?

S: **Explicación**.

T: Good. And *to explain*:

S: **Explicar**.

T: **Explicar**. Good. So *I'm explaining it* and you mean right now?

S: **Estoy explicándolo**.

T: **Estoy explicándolo. Lo estoy explicando**. The **lo** can go on the end of a "to" form, but it can also go on the end of one of these *-ando* or *-iendo* forms as well. So you have the option. **Lo estoy explicando. Estoy explicándolo**. And you mean right now. Actually in **explicar**, we get this *-plicar* from "plicare" that we mentioned before, meaning *to fold* in Latin. So **explicar**, *to explain, to unfold*. You might want to say *I'm taking a Spanish course*. Even if you're not in the course right now in this moment, when we are taking a course, in our minds there's a period of time in which we are taking a course and when we say it we're in that period of time. If I say *I'm taking a Spanish course*, maybe I mean for three months and I'm in that period. Do you remember what *to take* was? We used it with *to take a photo*. **Tomar**.

S: **Tomar**.

T: **Tomar**. So **tomar** is *to take*. So *I am taking*:

S: **Estoy tomando**.

T: Good. **Estoy tomando**. *A course*: I'm going to let you guess it.

S: **Una corsa?**

T: Close. It's not with *a*, it's with *o*.

S: **Un corso**.

T: **Un curso**, with a *u*. **Un curso**. Good. *Of Spanish*, this is how you would say *a Spanish course*, *a course of Spanish*.

S: **Un curso de español**.

T: Very good. **Estoy tomando un curso de español**. Good. Now, what if we put this **estoy** in the past tense that we learnt? The past tense that is *-aba* or *-ía*. *I was taking a Spanish course*:

S: **Estar, estaba**.

T: Good.

S: **Estaba tomando un curso de español**.

T: Good. **Estaba tomando un curso de español**. Which means we actually have two ways of saying *I was taking*. We can say **estaba tomando** or we can just use **tomar** and use that line in the past. How would that sound?

S: **Tomaba**.

T: Yes. So both **tomaba** and **estaba tomando** mean *I was taking*. So you have that option. **Estaba tomando un curso de español** or **tomaba un curso de español**. What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer**.

T: **Comer**. How would you say *I was eating*?

S: **Comía**.

T: **Comía**. Or? How else could you say it?



S: **Estaba comiendo.**

T: So you have this option. **Comía** or **estaba comiendo**. Most of the time they're interchangeable, sometimes one might fit slightly better than the other and it's something you will pick up very naturally when you're practicing. So if in one situation people tend to use **estaba comiendo** rather than **comía**, you will pick it up. So we have *-ando* and *-iendo* to form this *-ing*. And we saw in Spanish that we don't use it after prepositions. You don't use this *-ing* either if you say something like *swimming is healthy* or *running is healthy*. You don't use the *-ing* there either. You will just say *to run is healthy*, *to swim is healthy*. If you hear people toast in Spanish you might hear them say **salud**, which means *health*. *Healthy* is **saludable**. *To dance is healthy*:

S: **Bailar es saludable.**

T: Good. **Bailar es saludable**. Good. *To swim* is **nadar**. **Nadar**. *To swim is healthy*:

S: **Nadar es saludable.**

T: **Nadar es saludable**. So we're seeing that we don't use the *-ing* in Spanish as much as we do in English. Sometimes in English we make an adjective with *-ing*. We go from *to interest* to *interesting*. When we do this in English, this *-ing* that we use in English to form an adjective, in Spanish it's *-ante* for *-ar* verbs and *-iente* for *-er/-ir* verbs. So for example, we have *to interest*, what was *to interest*?

S: **Interesar.**

T: Good. **Interesar**. So if you get rid of *-ar* and you put *-ante*, you get that *-ing* adjective, *interesting*.  
So how would you say *interesting*?

S: **Interesante.**

T: **Interesante**. Good. So when you make an adjective with *-ing* in English from the verb, you can just replace it with *-ante* or *-iente*. How would you say *to irritate* in Spanish? And you can go from *irritation*:

S: **Irritación. Irritar.**

T: **Irritar**. So if you want to say *irritating*:

S: **Irritante.**

T: **Irritante.** *It is irritating:*

S: **Es irritante.**

T: Good. **Es irritante.** Good. How would you say *to frustrate* in Spanish?

S: Ah, *frustration*. **Frustración. Frustrar.**

T: **Frustrar.**

S: **Frustrar.**

T: Yes, because you have the two *r*'s, no? *Frustrate. Frustrate, Frustrar. Frustrating:*

S: **Frustrante.**

T: **Frustrante.** Good. *To wane, to wane, to reduce* in size, in Spanish this is **menguar. Menguar.**

S: **Menguar.**

T: When the moon gets smaller, it's waning. And *the moon* is **la luna.**

S: **La luna.**

T: **La luna.** So how would you say *the waning moon*?

S: **La luna menguante.**

T: Good. So there we're making *waning* like an adjective, not like the verb, not **menguando**. Ah? **Menguante, la luna menguante.** **Luna** is an interesting word. I don't know if you ever noticed, like, in English *Monday* is "moon day". It's not very obvious in English that the days of the week relate back to the planets. But in Spanish it's very obvious. You have **la luna**, *the moon*, and then you have **lunes**, *Monday*. *Tuesday* is **martes**. And *Mars* is **martes, planeta marte**. *Wednesday* in Spanish is **miércoles**. What planet does that sound like?

S: *Mercury.*

T: Yes. **Jueves** in Spanish is spelt with a *j*:

S: *Jupiter.*

T: *Jupiter*. **Viernes** is *Friday*:

S: *Venus*.

T: *Venus*. So you can see much clearer there how our days of the week are named after planets. *To live* was **vivir**. *V-i-v-i-r*. So **vivir** is *to live*.

S: **Vivir**.

T: Good. We have two “to be”s, we have **estar** for states, and for characteristics we have?

S: **Ser**.

T: **Ser**. And we said that **un ser**, **un ser**, means *a being*, that we can use **ser** like a noun and we get *a being*. So *a human being* is?

S: **Un ser humano**.

T: **Un ser humano**. You could also say *a living being*, *a living being*:

S: **Un ser vivir**.

T: How do you get this –

S: **Vivo**.

T: You could say **un ser vivo**. **Vivo** is also like an adjective, which means *alive*. But *living* is adjective that we make with *-ing*. We can build it from **vivir**. For *-ar* verbs we have *-ante* and for *-er/-ir* verbs we have *-iente*.

S: **Un ser viviente**.

T: Good. **Un ser viviente**. *A living being*. What was *to go out* or *to leave*?

S: **Voy?**

T: *To go out* or *to leave*. So it’s “*to*”. I don’t care if it’s wrong, but I want it to end in *r*.

S: Ah, **salir**. **Salir**.

T: **Salir**. Now we have in English, you might have heard, *salient*, which means kind of protruding or outstanding, or something that stands out or sticks out or protrudes. This is a Latin-English version

of this *-ante/-iente* rule. So we can see it even in English. How would *salient* be in Spanish? You can go from *salient* or you can go from **salir**.

S: **Saliente**.

T: **Saliente**. Good.

## Track 53

T: What was *to be able, can*, in the “to” form?

S: **Poder.**

T: **Poder.** So we have **poder**. If we want to make *could*, we have two different *could*'s. We have the *could* that refers to the past, *I couldn't do it yesterday*. And we have a *could* that refers to the future: *but I could do it tomorrow*. This future *could* - we learned it already from *to be able, would be able*: **poder**, “*podería*” and the *e* fell out **podría**. If we want to say *I could* in the past, most of the time we will probably find ourselves using this line past that we learned. The past that we make with *-aba* for *-ar* verbs and *-ía* for *-er/-ir* verbs. So how would you say *I could*, referring to past? *I could, I was able to*:

S: **Podía.**

T: **Podía.** So this is *I was able to, I could*. The past *could*, **podía**. *We could*:

S: **Podíamos.**

T: Good. *I couldn't do it because I didn't have the time*. For both of these we can use that line in the past, that ongoing past, even though we're not using it in English. *I couldn't do it because I didn't have the time*. So the first bit is *I couldn't do it*:

S: **No podía hacerlo.**

T: Good. **No podía hacerlo**. *Because*:

S: **Porque.**

T: *I didn't have the time*:

S: **No tenía el tiempo.**

T: Good. **No podía hacerlo porque no tenía el tiempo**. So we're going to contrast much more how we use this line and this dot in the past when we look at that dot. So what we're seeing for now - even though we haven't looked at the dot yet - that the decisions that we need to make in Spanish about whether we will use this line in the past, this ongoing past, or this dot, this point in the past,

is a decision based on context rather than identifying which one we're using in English and then translating it. So we can begin to look at that even before we've learned the dot in the past.

The word for *yesterday* was **ayer**. **Ayer**.

S: **Ayer**.

T: Good. So how would you say, *I couldn't do it yesterday*?

S: **No podía hacerlo ayer**.

T: Good. **No podía hacerlo ayer**. And when we learn the dot form of the past, we will see that we could have used that one as well. Sometimes they're interchangeable. Sometimes this dot and this line form are not interchangeable. For example, if we want to use **haber** to say *I had eaten* rather than *I have eaten*, *I had gone already*, rather than *I have gone*, then we always use the line in the past. Always. So from **haber**, how do you say *I had*?

S: **Había**.

T: **Había**, good. So if you want to say *I had eaten*, how would you say it?

S: Would you say, "**había comer**"?

T: You have a version of the verb that comes after **haber**, no matter what version of **haber** we have, **había**, **habría**, **he**, it doesn't matter.

S: **Comido. Había comido**.

T: Good. **Había comido**. The word for *already* in Spanish is **ya**. *Y-a*. **Ya**.

S: **Ya**.

T: And it tends to go at the beginning. That would be the least emphatic place, the most natural place. So how would you say *I had eaten already*?

S: **Ya había comido**.

T: Good. **Ya había comido**. So you could say, *he wanted to dine with me, but I had dined already*.

So, *he wanted*, what is *to want*?

S: **Querer.**

T: **Querer.** So, *he wanted*. Again we're using the line in the past, because even though in English there we are using the dot - we're not saying *he was wanting*, *he used to want* - with **querer** we can use the line without any problem because most of the time, when you want something, it's not just for an instant, it's kind of an ongoing feeling. *The dinner was la cena*. What was *to dine*, or *to have dinner*?

S: **Cenar?**

T: Yes. *He wanted to dine with me*:

S: **Quería cenar con mí?**

T: And this was a bit of an exception. You do not say “con mí”, you say:

S: Ah, **connmigo**.

T: Good. **Quería cenar connmigo**, *but I had already had dinner. I had dined already*:

S: **Pero ya había cenado.**

T: Good. But if you say, **quería cenar connmigo, pero ya había cenado**, I might understand *he wanted to dine with me, but he had dined already*, no? Because we have the same verb form, so how would we make that clearer?

S: Just saying **yo** at some point.

T: Exactly. But where? So give it to me again, and we can say the word for *he* as well, especially when we are contrasting between two people, we will have the habit of putting who. So, *he wanted to dine with me, but I had dined already*:

S: **Él quería cenar connmigo pero yo ya había... so dined, cenaría**, no.

T: No.

S: **Cenía.**

T: What you want to translate is not *dined*. You want to find the version after **haber**. This is going to save you a lot of pain.

S: **Cenado.**

T: Good. *He wanted to have dinner with me but I had already had dinner. **Él quería cenar conmigo pero yo ya había cenado.*** Now we don't need to look at or discuss when we use *had* as opposed to when we use *have*, when we use *I had lost it* as opposed to *I have lost it*, because it's exactly the same in Spanish as it is in English. So you will just translate the thought, let's say. For example, you might want to say, *he was looking for it because I had lost it. He was looking for it because I had lost it. To look for is **buscar, buscar, to look for.***

S: **Buscar.**

T: Good. **Buscar, to look for.** So, *he was looking for it, he was searching for it:*

S: **Buscía.**

T: Check the ending first.

S: **Buscaba.**

T: Good. *He was looking for it:*

S: **Lo buscaba.**

T: *To lose was?*

S: **Perder.**

T: *Because I had lost it:*

S: **Porque yo lo había perdido.**

T: Good. **Lo buscaba, or él lo buscaba, porque yo lo había perdido.** Good. How would you say, *I would have lost it - so not I had lost it, I would have lost it?*

S: **Lo habría perdido.**

T: Good. *I would have lost it. **Lo habría perdido.*** Now I'm not sure if you said **habría** or "habería" because this irregularity that we have which is **habría** happens so naturally because that *e* kind of falls out so naturally. I think you said "habería", but you kind of didn't pronounce the *e* well. Is that right?



S: I meant to say “**habería**”.

T: Yes. So you see that naturally it's happening, that *e* of **haber** is falling away, and that has been formalised in Spanish. You write it like this, *h-a-b-r-i-a*. **Habría**. Only with a few verbs, this contraction is occurring. **Habría. Lo habría perdido.** *I would have lost it.* How would you say, *I would have got lost*, or *I would have lost myself*?

S: **Me habría perdido.**

T: Good. **Me habría perdido.** Good.

## Track 54

T: Now, these versions of the verb that we get after **haber**, and we said that it's any version of **haber**, whether it's **he**, whether it's **había**, whether it's **habría**, we could even say *I will have. I will have lost it – lo habré perdido*. Any version of **haber** - we will have the *-ado, -ido* version after it, even if it's in the "to" form – we could say something like *I would like to have gone. I would like to have gone. I would like, it would please me:*

S: **Me gustaría.**

T: *To have gone.*

S: **Haber ido.**

T: **Me gustaría haber ido**, *it would please me to have gone, I would like to have gone, me gustaría haber ido*. So, even after the "to" form we're having just one version of the verb that can come after **haber**. Now, this version of the verb that can come after **haber** is very useful, because, if it makes sense, we can use it as an adjective, just as we can in English. For example, in English we say: *I have sold*. And *sold* we can use like an adjective, we can say *it is sold*. We say *I have lost*. And we can use it like an adjective – *I am lost*. And you can do the same in Spanish, which gives you hundreds and hundreds of words now that you can access as adjectives. So, for example, *to close* is **cerrar**. **Cerrar**.

S: **Cerrar.**

T: How would you say: *I have closed it? I have closed it:*

S: **Lo he cerrado.**

T: Good. **Lo he cerrado**. You might be referring to *the door*, which is **la puerta**. So, if you were referring to *the door*, how would you say that? *I have closed it:*

S: **La he cerrado.**

T: Good. **La he cerrado**. Good. So **cerrado** – we can take that and we can use it as an adjective. Now, it doesn't change ever after **haber** – it's always **cerrado: lo he cerrado, la he cerrado, lo**

**hemos cerrado.** But, when it's an adjective, when it's behaving like an adjective, then of course, it can change. So, if you say *it is closed* and you mean *the door*, how would you say it?

S: **Cerrada.**

T: Good, so how would you say that, *it is closed*?

S: **Es cerrada.**

T: You think *to be closed* is a state or a characteristic?

S: **Está cerrada.**

T: **Está cerrada.** In fact, the great majority, with just a couple of exceptions, of these adjectives that we get from *-ado*, *-ido*, that we get from the version that comes after **haber**, go with **estar**. With this particular type of adjective we don't need to really think about whether it's a state or a characteristic, they are just gonna go with **estar**, with a couple of exceptions. *To lose* was:

S: **Perder.**

T: What is the version that comes after **haber**, after any form of **haber**? **Perder** becomes:

S: **Perdido.**

T: **Perdido.** So, how would you say: *I am lost*?

S: **Estoy perdido**, or female, **perdida.**

T: Good. **Estoy perdido**, or for feminine, **perdida.** Good. What was *to finish* or *to terminate*?

S: **Terminar.**

T: **Terminar.** How would you say: *I have finished*?

S: **He terminado.**

T: Good. **He terminado.** So now you can also say *it is finished*, and use it like an adjective.

S: **Está terminado.**

T: Good. **Está terminado.** What if you were referring to *the movie*, which is **la película**:

S: **Está terminada.**

T: Good. **Está terminada**. Good. So, this gives us a lot of adjectives we can access. Let's have a look at some of them. *To sell* was **vender**, and then *sold* would be:

S: **Vendido**.

T: Good. *They are sold*:

S: **Están vendidos**.

T: **Están vendidos**. And if we mean **las casas**, how will it sound?

S: **Están vendidas**.

T: Good. **Están vendidas**. Good. Some of the adjectives that we already met are actually adjectives that were formed in this way. How was the word for *tired*?

S: **Cansado**.

T: **Cansado**. And this comes from the verb **cansar**, *to tire*. So **cansar** is *to tire*, and then **cansado** is the version that you get after **haber**, and it's the adjective, **cansado**, *tired*. So, if you want to say *I get tired*, *I tire myself*, so now it's present:

S: **Me canso**.

T: **Me canso**. That means *I get tired* or even *I get fed up*. How would you say *I have tired myself*? And like I said, it doesn't literally mean that you are responsible for tiring yourself, it just means that you've got tired or you can use it like "I've had enough". So, *I have tired myself*:

S: **He- Me he cansado**.

T: Good. **Me he cansado**. *I've gotten tired*, *I've gotten fed up*. Good. And then **cansado** - which is the version of **cansar** after **haber** - is also, of course, the adjective *tired*. *I am tired*:

S: **Estoy cansada**.

T: Good. So, *to close* is **cerrar**, and we said that *closed* is **cerrado**. And we said that these *-ado*, *-ido* adjectives, with a couple of exceptions, go with **estar**. So, how would you say *it is closed*?

S: **Está cerrado**.

T: Good. How would you say *he is closed to the idea* - *idea* is the same word in Spanish. *He is closed to the idea*:

S: **Está cerrado a el idea?**

T: What gender does it look like: *idea*?

S: **La idea.**

T: **Está cerrado a la idea.** *He is closed to the idea.* But if you want to say *he is a closed person*, you mean *as a person he is closed*, how do you think you would say it?

S: **Es un person cerrado?**

T: Almost. This is exactly the structure that we want, well done. But, the word for *person* is feminine, it doesn't refer to anybody specifically, just the word itself is feminine.

S: **Es una persona cerrado- cerrada.**

T: Good. **Cerrada** refers to *person*. Very good. **Es una persona cerrada.** So that's how we can get around that, if we want to say *he is closed* and we mean *he is a closed person*. If we just say **es cerrado** it sounds like a mistake. But **es una persona cerrada** is fine, because **es** is going with **persona**, what you are saying essentially is *he is a person that is closed*. **Es una persona cerrada.**

How would you say *she is lost*?

S: **Está perdida.**

T: Good. **Está perdida**, *she is lost*. But if you want to say *She is lost*, you know, as a person, *she's lost her way*:

S: **Es una persona perdida.** Well, actually, why not **está** here?

T: In this structure you are saying *she is a person*, you are not looking at *lost person*, you are looking at *person*. The adjective is totally secondary. So when you say *this is a chair* you are going to use **ser**. If you are going to say *it's a wet chair*, even though that is a state, you are still going to use **ser**. Because what you are saying is *it's a chair*, the adjective is secondary. But, if you say *it is wet*, then you use **estar**. So, *chair* or *seat* is **silla. Silla.**

S: **Silla.**

T: Good. **Mojar, mojar** means *to wet*. **Mojar**. Now, how do you think you say *wet* as an adjective?

S: **Mojada**.

T: Good. For **silla, mojada**. Feminine. Good. So, how would you say *the chair, la silla, the chair is wet?*

S: **La silla está mojada**.

T: Good. **La silla está mojada**. But, if you say *it is a wet chair*, you are just saying *it is a chair*, and then an adjective is secondary, and the fact that it is a chair is about as characteristic as it gets.

So, you are saying *it is a chair*:

S: **Es una silla**.

T: *Wet*:

S: **Mojada**.

T: **Es una silla mojada**. So, when we say something is a noun, when we give it its name, there's nothing more characteristic. **Es una persona**, *it is a person; it is a happy person*, **es una persona feliz**. *It's a chair, es una silla; it's a wet chair, es una silla mojada*. The structure there is *it is a chair*, the adjective is secondary. But, when we say *the chair is wet*, then we are talking about a state of the chair with *is*: **la silla está mojada**. Good.

## Track 55

T: What was the *to have*, that we use to go in the past?

S: **Haber.**

T: **Haber.** Good. How would you say *I have cancelled? I have cancelled:*

S: **He cancelado.**

T: Good. **He cancelado.** And we said that the version of the verb that you get after **haber** – you can use it like an adjective as well in Spanish, just as we do in English. For example in English we could say *it's cancelled*. We use the same version, *cancelled*, that comes after **haber**. So we can do the same in Spanish. So, how would you say *it is cancelled*, and I remind you that the adjectives that we form in this way tend to go with **estar**, only with a few exceptions that are more flexible. So *it is cancelled:*

S: **Está cancelado.**

T: **Está cancelado.** What if we meant **la fiesta**, *the party*?

S: **Está cancelada.**

T: Good. **Está cancelada.** **Fiesta**, by the way is actually related to *festival, festivity*, we can see the *e* splitting between *festival* and **fiesta**. *To complicate* in Spanish, what's *complication*?

S: **Complicación, complicar.**

T: **Complicar**, “with folding”, **complicar**. Good. If you want to say *it has got complicated, it has got complicated*, how do you think you will say it?

S: **Se ha complicado.**

T: Good. **Se ha complicado.** *It has got complicated. It has complicated itself*, we would say. Very good. So, the adjective *complicated* is:

S: **Complicado.**

T: **Complicado.** Good. So, you can say: *It is complicated:*

S: **Es complicado.**

T: **Es complicado.** Or?

S: **Está complicado.**

T: **Está complicado.** Actually, with this one you can use either; there tends to be a tendency to go with **estar** with these types of adjectives, but with **complicado** you could say either. **Es complicado, está complicado**, depending on what you were talking about, you might feel more drawn to one or to the other, but most of the time they are going to be interchangeable here. We can also make structures like *should have, could have* with this **haber**. Let's start with *should have*. Now *should*, we take it from the verb *to owe*, which also we use like *must*, and it's related to English *debt*.

S: **Deber.**

T: **Deber. Deber.** Good. So, **deber** is *to owe* or *must*. And if you say *would owe* you get *should*. So, how would you say *I should*?

S: **Debería.**

T: Good. So now we can say *I should have canceled*, and this *have* is *to have*. *I should to have canceled*:

S: **Debería haber cancelado.**

T: Very good. *I should have canceled. Debería haber cancelado. I should have canceled it*:

S: **Lo debería haber cancelado.**

T: Very good. **Lo debería haber cancelado.** Where else could that **lo** go there?

S: It's after the unchanged verb, so **debería haberlo cancelado.**

T: Yeah, **debería haberlo cancelado.** Very good. What was *could*? So, we take *to be able* and we say *would be able* to get this *could*, this *could* that refers to future. So, what is *to be able*, related to *power*?

S: **Poder.**



T: **Poder.** Good. So how would you say *I would be able* or *I could*?

S: **Podería.**

T: Okay,

S: **Podría.**

T: **Podría.** So, you could say something like *I could have gone. I could have gone.* What was *to go*?

S: **Ir.**

T: **Ir.** And what was *gone*, the version of *to go* after **haber**?

S: **Ido.**

T: *I could have gone:*

S: **Podría haber ido.**

T: **Podría haber ido.** *We could have gone. We could have gone:*

S: **Podríamos haber ido.**

T: Good. **Podríamos haber ido.** Good. So, after **haber**, any version of **haber**, whether it's the "to" form, **haber**, whether it's **habría**, any version of **haber**, it's going to have *-ado* or *-ido* with the following verb. But some verbs are irregular and they don't form their version after **haber** in this way. So, *to break*, related to *rupture* in English, was **romper**. Now, this after **haber** is not "rompido", "rompido" doesn't exist, it's irregular, after **haber** it's **roto**: *r-o-t-o*, **roto**. So, how would you say *I have broken it*?

S: **Lo he roto.**

T: Good. **Lo he roto.** *I have broken them:*

S: **Los he roto.**

T: Good. **Los he roto.** What if you want to say *it has broken? It has broken:*

S: **Se ha roto.**

T: **Se ha roto.** *It has broken itself. It has broken.* Very good. If you had just said **ha roto** I would understand *he, she, it* or *you (formal)* *has* or *have broken*, and I would be waiting to hear what was broken. So, we have **roto** instead of “rompido”, let’s say. **Roto** is the version of **romper** after **haber**, which means it will also count for the adjective. So, if you want to say *it is broken*, how would you say it?

S: **Está roto.**

T: **Está roto.** And if it was a feminine thing?

S: **Está rota.**

T: **Está rota.** *To die* is **morir, morir.**

S: **Morir.**

T: And the version after **haber** is not “morido”, it’s **muerto, muerto.** How would you say *he has died*?

S: **Ha muerto.**

T: **Ha muerto.** And with **morir** you can hear it with **se** or without **se**, there is not really a lot of difference, sometimes the **se** doesn’t actually make a lot of difference - **ha muerto, se ha muerto** - you hear both. Now, if you want to say *he is dead*, how do you think you would say it?

S: You mean as if it’s **estar** or **ser**?

T: We know that this type of adjective tends to go with:

S: Well, **estar**, but I could see why this specific one could also go with **ser** under certain circumstances.

T: Yes, but it doesn’t, it never goes with **ser**. So, some of these adjectives we form in this way can go with **ser**, but this one can’t. So, firstly, how would that be, *he is dead*?

S: **Está muerto.**

T: **Está muerto.** So, *complicated*, for example, could go with **ser** and **estar**, but **muerto** can’t. Maybe it’s not just because they are this type of adjective, that *dead* will go with **estar**, maybe it is about the way Spanish perceives the world. To be dead is a state, that the soul goes through, let’s say,

you don't know what is the perception behind that, or, if it's just going with **estar** because it's one of these adjectives. So, they are interesting points to think about, and thinking about those points helps your memory, even if you are just looking out of interest and not coming to any conclusions. How would you say *I'm dead* (and you can use this to mean *tired*)? This is quite common in Spanish, if you are really tired, you can say *oh, I'm dead*.

S: **Estoy muerta.**

T: Yes, feminine. **Estoy muerta.** Good. You can say also *I die myself* here, like **morirse**, in all different kinds of circumstances, when something's really funny, when you can't believe something, in many different circumstances you could use that, you will hear it around, but let's build it, let's see how it would sound. So, *to die*, **morir**, *I die myself*, making this reflexive structure, how would it sound?

S: It's irregular so the "mue" is going to come in. **Muero**, maybe? **Muero**?

T: Yes.

S: **Me muero.**

T: **Me muero.** Good. **Me muero.** So, you will hear this all the time actually in Spanish, **ay, me muero**, maybe from embarrassment, maybe from laughter, maybe from disbelief, it's a common thing – **me muero**. To open in Spanish is **abrir, abrir**.

S: **Abrir.**

T: **Abrir.** And if you want to say *I have opened it*, you say **lo he abierto**. So we don't have "abrido" after **haber**, we have **abierto**. Another irregular one. **Lo he abierto**.

S: Is it with an *h*?

T: No, good question though, good that you are thinking about that. **Abrir** is *a-b-r-i-r*. **Abrir** becomes **abierto**. So, how would you say *it is open*?

S: **Está abierto.**

T: Good. **Está abierto.** How would you say *they are open*?

S: **Están abierto.**

T: **Están,**

S: **Están abiertos.**

T: Good. **Están abiertos.** **Decir** and **hacer**, *to say* or *to tell*, **decir**, and *to make* or *to do*, **hacer**, also are irregular after **haber**. These two verbs are quite irregular in most places, we will pay them a little more attention later. So **decir**, *to say* or *to tell*, and **hacer**, *to do* and *to make*, are irregular after **haber**. **Decir** becomes **dicho**, **dicho**, and **hacer** becomes **hecho**; which is why they are nice to see together, because they both have this /ch/ sound. **Decir** becomes **dicho**, and **hacer** becomes **hecho**. So, how would you say *I have said it? I have said it*:

S: **Lo he dicho.**

T: Good. **Lo he dicho.** And what if you wanted to say *I have told him?*

S: **Lo he dicho.**

T: But what we want here is not *him*; what want here is *to him*. *I have told to him*:

S: **Le he dicho.**

T: Good. **Le he dicho.** Good. *We have told him*:

S: **Le hemos dicho.**

T: Good. **Le hemos dicho.** Good. Interestingly, **dicho** is also a noun. We said that some version of the verb can form the noun; sometimes it's the "to" form, sometimes it's the "I" form, sometimes it's the "he, she, it" form. Here it's this form. **Un dicho** is *a saying, a saying*. **Hacer** after **haber** becomes **hecho**. So, how would you say *I have done it* or *I have made it?*

S: **Lo he hecho.**

T: Good. **Lo he hecho.** *I should have done it. I should have done it. I should:*

S: **Debería.**

T: *I should have done it:*

S: **Debería haberlo hecho?**

T: Yes! **Debería haberlo hecho**. Of course we can put the **lo** there because we have **haber** in the “to” form. **Debería haberlo hecho** or **lo debería haber hecho**. Very good. *You should have done it* (informally):

S: **Deberías haberlo hecho**.

T: Good. **Deberías haberlo hecho**. How would you say *it is done*? *It is done*:

S: **Está hecho**.

T: Good. **Está hecho**. You might also see this used like **hecho en China**, *made in China*, or **hecho en España**, *made in Spain*, you will see this on products, should be a nice reminder. So, **hecho** as an adjective, *made* or *done*, **está hecho**, *it is done*, *it is made*; but, it can also be a noun: **un hecho**, **un hecho** is *a fact*, and it’s actually connected to the word *fact*, even though they look so different. There is in Spanish and English what we can call a kind of grey area between *h*’s and *f*’s, because in a phonetic change that occurred in Spanish many *f*’s became silent *h*’s, just as **hecho** is from **hacer**, *fact* is from *to do*, so “*faire*”, like in French, if you know some French, is *to do*, and *fact* is related to “*faire*”, just as **hecho** is related to **hacer**. And we can find some other connections between this *f* and this silent *h*, between English and Spanish. For example in English we have *fable*, a *fable* is a story, and a story is spoken, and from there we see the relation with **hablar**. *Fable*, **hablar**. We have *fugitive*, which is the same root as **huir**, *h-u-i-r*, **huir**, which means *to escape* or *to run away* in Spanish. We have **hermano** or **hermana** in Spanish, *brother* or *sister*, spelled *h-e-r-m-a-n-o*, or with an *a* on the end for **hermana**, and there we see the connection with *fraternal*. **Hembra**, which means *female*, *h-e-m-b-r-a*. Even within Spanish you can see this phenomenon of the *h*’s and the *f*’s. For example you have *iron* which is **hierro**, *h-i-e-r-r-o*, **hierro**, *iron*, and then you get **ferrocarril**, which means *railways*, so they look totally unrelated, but if you know that the *f* became the silent *h* and that the *e* split into *ie* you can see the connection between **hierro** and **ferrocarril**. You have **profundo**, **profundo**, *profound*, in Spanish, as you do in English, and then you have **hondo**, which means *deep*, so **hondo** is the “*fundo*” bit of **profundo**, but with some changes, **hondo**, *h-o-n-d-o* to mean *deep*. **Fumar** means *to smoke*. And then **humo**, *h-u-m-o*, is *smoke*, like a noun, **el humo**, *the smoke*. So there are some interesting things we can find between English and Spanish and within Spanish itself with these *f*’s and *h*’s. Also you can look out for some connections with other letters, you will find other pairs of letters like this, for

example *w*'s and *g*'s – you get *war* in English and **guerra** in Spanish, *William* in English and **Guillermo** in Spanish. So this is an interesting thing to keep an eye out for to make connections between vocabulary and, of course, in this way aid your memory.

## Track 56

T: We've seen quite a few prepositions up until now, these words that refer to movement or position or direction. For example, we had two words for *for*, what were they?

S: **Para** and **por**.

T: Good. **Para** and **por**. And how did we say *from* or *of*?

S: **De**.

T: **De**. *With*:

S: **Con**.

T: **Con**. *In* or *on*:

S: **En**.

T: **En**. Good, so we've seen quite a few of those. Now, prepositions in Spanish won't come at the end of the sentence, as they can in English. We've seen this already as well. Do you remember how to say *Where are you from?* *You are* (speaking informally) from **ser** is **eres**. **Eres**. So, how would you say *Where are you from?*:

S: ¿**De dónde eres?**

T: ¿**De dónde eres?** So, in English *Where are you from?* We're putting the preposition at the end of the sentence, and that's fine in English, but it's incorrect Spanish. So, you don't say *Where are you from?* You say *From where are you?* ¿**De dónde eres?** If we want to say *Where are you going?* in Spanish, we say *To where are you going?* What was *You are going* (speaking informally)?

S: **Vas**.

T: **Vas**. Good, so, *to where are you going?*:

S: ¿**A dónde vas?**

T: ¿**A dónde vas?** Good. *We are going to the United States.* The *United States* is **Estados Unidos**, *United States*, **Estados Unidos**, and I should mention, you don't translate the word for *the*, you just say *we are going to United States*.

S: **Vamos a Estados Unidos.**

T: **Vamos a Estados Unidos.** We discussed the concept before about working backwards. So, instead of building up to say what we want to say, finding bits of language and working backwards to find the "to" form of the verb. So, for example, imagine we looked up somewhere *United States*, or we asked somebody how to say *United States*, and we came across **Estados Unidos**. We can use **Unidos** to work backwards to work out what is the verb *to unite*. How do you think that is?

S: **Unidar?**

T: Not guessing, but really working backwards, which, instead of building up, building down; instead of adding bits on to the verb, seeing what has been added and consciously taking it off.

S: So, *-ido* has been added, when you add *-ido* you take off the ending of the "to" form.

T: And what is the ending with *-ido*?

S: *-ir*.

T: Or?

S: *-er*.

T: You should experiment and see which one feels more natural to you. Now, the one that you may have heard before is probably going to feel more natural even if you didn't register it, so if you heard before the correct version, it's going to feel more natural, and also, the more words you learn in Spanish the greater intuition you get about the phonetics of Spanish, what sounds more Spanish. So, that should direct you when you say "Uner, Unir, Uner, Unir", to understand which one is *to unite*. Which one do you think it is?

S: Somehow I think that it's **unir**.

T: **Unir.** But, at this stage there is no reason for you to know what sounds more Spanish; this intuition is something that occurs with practice and exposure and listening. But working backwards is a



useful skill that we want to employ in our language-learning journey. So, we said that prepositions won't come at the end, so if we say, for example, *the girl I work with*, in Spanish we will say *the girl with which, with that, with who, I work*. We have the option. So what was *to work*, do you remember?

S: **Trabajo.**

T: *To-*

S: **Trabajar.**

T: **Trabajar**, *to work*. Good. *The girl* is **la chica, la chica**, it's kind of informal, but very common.

**La chica.** How do you think *the guy* would be if *the girl* is **la chica**?

S: **El chico?**

T: **El chico.** So, we can begin with the one that we know already, which is *with that*, **con que**. *The girl with that I work*:

S: **La chica con que yo trabajo.**

T: **La chica con que trabajo**, you don't need the **yo** unless you are emphasizing, **la chica con que yo trabajo**. We could also say *with which*, **la chica con cual trabajo**, we could say *with who*, **la chica con quien trabajo**. We could even put **la que** or **la cual**, which means *which* or *that*, but we are showing that it's a feminine *which* or a feminine *that*, **la chica con la cual trabajo, la chica con la que trabajo**. You have all of those options in Spanish, but don't worry about them, you can just use **que**. So, whilst you have all of those options and you will hear them, and when you get comfortable with hearing them and understanding them you will start using the different ones without really thinking about it very much; you don't want to worry about it now, **que** you can use for everything, for all of that. **La chica con que trabajo.**

S: So, it's correct?

T: Yeah, it's correct Spanish. But you have all of those options: **la chica con cual trabajo; la chica con la cual trabajo, la chica con la que trabajo, la chica con quien trabajo**. *The girl that I was working with*. So, how would you say *it is the girl I was working with*? Let's go for it slowly.

*It is the girl:*

S: **Es la chica.**

T: *With who:*

S: **Con que.**

T: **Con que.** *I was working, I used to work:*

S: So, it's **trabajar**, and that becomes *–aba*, **trabajaba**.

T: Good, all together, *it's the girl I was working with:*

S: **Es la chica con que trabajaba.**

T: **Es la chica con que trabajaba.** How would you say *the girl with whom, the girl that I was going to the party with. The girl with whom, or with that, with which*, all of those are okay in Spanish.

S: **La chica con que-**

T: **La chica con que**, *I was going to the party.* So, *I was going* is the line version of **ir**, which is irregular, but we can remember that it takes a little bit from the two options that we have to make the line version. We have *–aba* for *–ar* verbs and *–ía* for *–er/-ir* verbs; and the verb **ir** kind of blended together *–aba* and *–ía* and came up with:

S: **Iba.**

T: So, you can think of it that way: you can think of it like *–aba* and *–ía* kind of blending together, to have **iba**, or you can think of it like the present **va**, but with an *i* before. In the past it's spelled with a *b*: *i-b-a*, **iba**, where in the present it's spelled with a *v*, *v-a*, but as we know they are very similar sounding, so it's like the present with an *i* before. So, in the present you have *he is going*, **él va**, or **él /ba/**, and then in the past, **él iba**. So *I was going, he was going, she was going, it was going, you (formal) were going* is:

S: **Iba.**

T: **Iba.** So, *the girl with which I was going to the party:*

S: **La chica con que iba a la fiesta.**

T: Good. **La chica con que iba a la fiesta.** So, you can say **la chica con la cual, la chica con quien, la chica con la que** – you have all of these options. Let's use **cual** in a sentence, which is the word for *which*, and it's not just a *which* like this to connect *the girl* with *which*, you can also use it like a question: *which one do you want?* You probably can guess, we don't need the word for *one*.

S: **¿Cuál quieres?**

T: Good. *Which one do you want?* **¿Cuál quieres?** Good. So **cuál, cuál, c-u-a-l**, means *which. I know*, from **saber, to know**, was **sé**; we said it's very irregular, just *s-e, I know*.

S: **Sé.**

T: Good. How would you say *I don't know which one he wants?*

S: **No sé cual quiere.**

T: Good. **No sé cual quiere.** How would you say *I don't know which one he wants to see?*

S: **No sé cual quiere ver.**

T: **No sé cual quiere ver.** Good. Now, what if you wanted to say *I don't know with which one he wants to do it, I don't know which one he wants to do it with:*

S: **No sé con cual quiere hacer- it with?**

T: Well, you said the *with* already.

S: **Lo!**

T: Yeah.

S: So, it's just **lo** at the end?

T: Yeah, and you might feel this temptation often to repeat the preposition again at the end, even if you put it before, because that English is pushing through with the negative language transfer. **No sé con cual quiere hacerlo, I don't know with which one he wants to do it, I don't know which one he wants to do it with.** So, we don't put the preposition at the end of the sentence in Spanish, we will rearrange the sentence and whilst this sounds more formal in English, of course it doesn't sound more formal in Spanish, it's just the only correct option. The word for *who*, we've mentioned very briefly is **quién, quién.**

S: **Quién.**

T: Good. If you want to say *who is going?*, what verb version will *who* go with? Who is *who*? Is it *you*, is it *them*, is it *he/she/it*? Who is *who*?

S: *He/she/it.*

T: Good. So, how would you say *who is going?*:

S: ¿**Quién va?**

T: ¿**Quién va?** Good. And in Spanish you have the plural of *who*, if you are expecting more than one person, if you know that your *who* refers to more than one person, you can put *quien* into plural, so, how do you think that would sound?

S: **Quienes?**

T: Yeah. **Quienes.** So if you want to say *who is going?* And you know it's more than one person?

S: ¿**Quiénes van?**

T: Good, and you changed the verb as well to match. ¿**Quiénes van?** Good. How would you say:

*Who is here?:*

S: ¿**Quién es aquí?**

T: You know-

S: **Está!**

T: Yes, it's your location.

S: ¿**Quién está aquí?**

T: Good. ¿**Quién está aquí?** And if you knew you were talking about *here*, you could just leave that out as we have the sense of location with **estar**, we don't really need to say the *here*, if we know that we are talking about *here*. Like we said before, if you knock on someone's door you just say ¿**Estás?** Because we are using **estar**, and we are talking about states, that's enough context for us if we just leave it by itself to understand that we are speaking about location. So, you could just say *who is?*

S: **¿Quién está?**

T: **¿Quién está?** *I don't know with who I have to do it. I don't know who I have to do it with. How is I have to, what have do we use to get the meaning of have to?*

S: **Tengo- tener.**

T: **Tener. Tener, to have. I have:**

S: **Tengo.**

T: Good, and to get the meaning of *I have to*:

S: **Tengo que.**

T: **Tengo que.** *So, I don't know who I have to do it with, I don't know with who I have to do it:*

S: **No sé con quien tengo que hacerlo.**

T: Good. **No sé con quien tengo que hacerlo.** Or if you knew we meant more than one person, **no sé con quienes tengo que hacerlo.** Good. How would you say *I don't know who I have to do it for, I don't know for who I have to do it:*

S: **No sé para quien tengo que hacerlo.**

T: Good. **No sé para quien lo tengo que hacer** or **no sé para quién tengo que hacerlo.** Good. What if you wanted to say *I don't know who I have to do it because of, I don't know who I have to do it because of,* so how would that sound?

S: **No sé por quien tengo que hacerlo.**

T: **No sé por quien lo tengo que hacer, no sé por quien tengo que hacerlo.**

## Track 57

T: What is *to speak*?

S: **Hablar.**

T: **Hablar.** *-ar* verb, and *to eat*:

S: **Comer.**

T: **Comer.** *-er* verb, and *to live*:

S: **Vivir.**

T: **Vivir.** *-ir* verb. Good, so there we have an *-ar*, *-er* and *-ir* verb, and we saw *-ar* verbs form one group, and *-er/-ir* verbs form another group. But, we have one time in the entire Spanish language, where there is a difference between *-er* and *-ir* verbs, otherwise they are always forming one group. But just one occasion in the whole Spanish language, where there is a difference between them. How do you say *we speak* or *we are speaking*?

S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** How would you say *we eat* or *we are eating*?

S: **Comemos.**

T: **Comemos.** Good, and how is *we live*?

S: **Vivimos.**

T: **Vivimos.** Good. So, for *-er* verbs we use *-emos* for *we* in the present, and for *-ir* verbs we use *-imos* for *we* in the present. But of course for the other versions they are using the same endings, for example, *he eats* is:

S: **Come.**

T: **Come.** We use */e/*. *He lives*:

S: **Vive.**

T: **Vive.** Again we are using an *e*. *They eat*, or *you guys eat*:

S: **Comen.**

T: Good. *They live or you guys live:*

S: **Viven.**

T: **Viven.** *Where do you guys live?:*

S: **¿Dónde viven?**

T: **¿Dónde viven?** Very good. What was the word for *it*? Not *eat*, but *it*, *i-t*:

S: **Lo.**

T: **Lo.** Good. There's a couple of interesting and useful things we can do with **lo**, *it*, in Spanish, which we can't do in English. For example, when you want to say *the interesting thing*, *the complicated thing is*, *the interesting thing is*, *the difficult thing about that is*, instead of saying the word for *thing*, in Spanish you can just say, for example, **lo interesante**. **Lo interesante** means *the interesting thing*. So, you get the structure *the interesting thing* with **lo interesante**. So, how would you say, for example, *the interesting thing is that they live here?* *The interesting thing is that they live here:*

S: **Lo interesante es que viven aquí.**

T: Very good. **Lo interesante es que viven aquí.** Very good. How would you say *the interesting thing is that they live together?* Now, the word for *together* in Spanish is **junto, junto**.

S: **Junto.**

T: This is the singular masculine version. *J-u-n-t-o*. Now, it's related to *junction*, it doesn't sound like it, but when you realize that **junto** is with *j*, then you can see how it's related to *junction* in English and *join*. *The interesting thing is that they live together:*

S: **Lo interesante es que viven junto?**

T: Good, but it's *them*, no? *They*, **viven:**

S: **Juntos.**

T: Good. **Lo interesante es que viven juntos.** Or, if they were two females, you would say:

S: **Juntas.**

T: Good. **Lo interesante es que viven juntas.** *The interesting thing is that they live together.* What do you think **fácil** means? **Fácil:**

S: *Easy.*

T: *Easy.* Why?

S: *Facilitate.*

T: *Facilitate.* Good. To *facilitate* is to *make easy*, so, we have **fácil**, *easy*. So, if you wanted to say *the easy thing*, how would you say that?

S: **Lo fácil.**

T: **Lo fácil**, and then you will carry on, so we can say *the easy thing is that they come together.* *The easy thing is that they come together:*

S: **Lo fácil es que, venir** is irregular, right?

T: Try and build it, see what happens, go there first and then see.

S: It's not "vieno", no it's **vengo**.

T: But you are going for the "they" version, so don't go from **venir** to "I" version to "they" version.

S: But I might as well remember it.

T: Why? That's how you get lost, right? What you want to do is focus your thoughts on just what you have in front of you, which is going from **venir** to the "they" form, and try to build it as it should be, and then when you get that result, then have a look at maybe if it's irregular, if it doesn't feel right -

S: So, is it **vienen**?

T: Of course! You see?

S: Yeah. The "I" one though! My mind is trying to remember.



T: **Vengo.** But it's not important, if you don't need it now it shouldn't be important for you, because with everything you will remember, you will remember something similar that you don't remember. If you let that occupy your thoughts then you are gonna block. You need to be comfortable with a level of uncertainty to learn a language. If you want to have the whole panorama of the whole language before you start speaking, you will never start speaking. And sooner or later we are gonna come across again that thought that distracted us cause we are gonna want to say it, and in that moment we will sort it out. So, the more we do that, the more you are gonna control this panorama of Spanish, that makes you a little bit insecure right now, because you know so much and you feel like it's all floating around. *The easy thing is that they come together:*

S: **Lo fácil es que vienen juntos.**

T: Good. **Lo fácil es que vienen juntos.** Very good. How would you say *the complicated thing is that they come together:*

S: **Complicación – complicar – complicado?**

T: Yeah.

S: So, **lo complicado es que vienen juntos.**

T: **Lo complicado es que vienen juntos.** Good. So we can say **lo bueno**, *the good thing*; **lo malo**, *the bad thing*. **Malo** is *bad*, like in *malnourished*, that means *badly nourished*, so that's a useful structure. Before we said **de esta forma**, *in this way*, **de esta forma**. We could also say **de esta manera**, *in this manner*, but very very common in Spanish when we want to say *like this, like that*, is the word **así**, *a-s-i, así*.

S: **Así.**

T: **Así** means *like this* or *like that*. So, if you want to say something like *we don't speak like this, we don't speak in that way*, you don't really need to say **de esa manera** or **de esa forma**, you can just take this wonderful shortcut for *like this* or *like that*, which is **así**. So, *like this, like that, así*.

*So, we don't speak like that, we don't speak in that way:*

S: **No hablamos así.**

T: **No hablamos así.** *We don't eat like that:*

S: **No comemos así.**

T: **No comemos así.** *We don't live like that:*

S: **No vivimos así.**

T: **No vivimos así.** Good. Another interesting thing that we can do with **lo**, a useful structure we can make with **lo**, is **lo de**. The combination of **lo** and **de** means like *the thing about*. So we see how **lo** can sometimes replace *thing*, **lo interesante**, *the interesting thing*, and **lo de** is like *the thing about*. So, for example, if you wanted to say *the thing about the party*, you just say **lo de la fiesta**. So if you want to say *we are speaking about the thing about the party* - not *we are speaking about the party*, but *we are speaking about that issue of the party*, that thing we know what we are referring to, *we are speaking about that business about the party*, **hablamos lo de la fiesta**. Or **hablamos sobre**, *about*, you could say that as well, **hablamos sobre lo de la fiesta**. You can even say **de**, *we speak of*, **hablamos de lo de la fiesta**. You can say *that business about Juan, that thing about Juan*, how would you say that?

S: **Lo de Juan.**

T: **Lo de Juan.** Good. So, you could say *I don't want to speak about Juan's business like this, I don't want to speak about Juan's business like this*. And for *Juan's business* you will just say:

S: **Lo de Juan.**

T: Good. So, *I don't want to speak about Juan's business like this*:

S: **No quiero hablar de lo de Juan así.**

T: Good. **No quiero hablar de lo de Juan así.** Or we could say **no quiero hablar sobre lo de Juan así**, or just **no quiero hablar lo de Juan así**. So, **lo de** we kinda wanna see as a unit, meaning *that thing about*. And we've seen already that **de** can mean *about*, so it's just *it about, that thing about*. It's used very often in Spanish and you will find it very useful. So, you could say, for example, *I want to organize that thing tomorrow. That thing tomorrow, that thing about tomorrow. I want to organize, what's to organize?*

S: **Organizar.**

T: Good. So, *I want to organize that thing about tomorrow*:

S: **Quiero organizar lo de la mañana?**

T: **La mañana** is *the morning*.

S: Oh, sorry, *tomorrow*.

T: Yes, so *morning* and *tomorrow* are the same word in Spanish, **mañana**. If you say **la mañana** we are going to understand *the morning*.

S: So it's just **mañana**.

T: Good, so all together:

S: **Quiero organizar lo de mañana.**

T: Very good. **Quiero organizar lo de mañana.** *It about tomorrow, the thing about tomorrow.*  
**Quiero organizar lo de mañana.** *But I don't want to organize it like this, but I don't want to organize it like this:*

S: **Pero no quiero organizarlo así.**

T: Good. **Pero no quiero organizarlo así.** Good. *But I don't want to organize it like this.* Or, if you wanted to be more emphatic, you could replace **así** with **de esta manera**, **de esta forma**, *of this way, of this form*, but **así** is the most common, you will be hearing it all the time.

## Track 58

T: We have one more time in Spanish to learn, one more verb time, and that's the point in the past. The one that usually we would express with *-ed* in English: *wanted*, *walked*, or, you know, the irregular versions: *ran*, *ate*. This is the point in the past and it's much more random than the other tenses that we looked at. The point in the past is a little bit more messy, but we will find some logic in it, just not the same one that we've been seeing until now. So, we will practice with **hablar** for *-ar* verbs and with **comer** for *-er/-ir* verbs, and we will use these verbs as our hooks that we can look back to when we need to remember one of these endings. So, *I spoke*, *I spoke*, is **hablé**, **hablé**.

S: **Hablé**.

T: Can you tell me what I did there then to get *I spoke* from *to speak*, from **hablar**?

S: You took off the *-ar* ending and added an */e/*.

T: Good. Anything else?

S: Well, the accent is on the */e/*.

T: Perfect. **Hablé**. Good. So, that's *I spoke*. And *he/she/it* or *you* (formal) *spoke* is **habló**, **habló**.

S: **Habló**.

T: Good. And what did I do there to get **habló** from **hablar**?

S: You took off the *-ar* and you put an *o*.

T: Okay, and what else?

S: The accent is on the *o*.

T: Good. So, remember when we said how important the accent was in the present, because if you stress **HA-blo**, *I speak*, if you stress it wrong we said that we will get this version in the past, **ha-BLÓ**, *he/she/it* and *you* (formal) *spoke*. What was *I didn't speak*:

S: **No habló**.

T: *I*

S: Ah, sorry, **no hablé**.

T: **No hablé**. And that might happen to you often, because we have such strong connection between /o/ and I, but in this point in the past it's /e/. **No hablé**. And *he didn't speak* or *she didn't speak* or *you (formal) didn't speak*:

S: **No habló**.

T: **No habló**. Good. What was *to buy*?

S: Comprir, **comprar**.

T: Good, **comprar**. So if you come up with "comprir", for example, and it doesn't feel right, you can just run a little check and change the ending: "comprir", "comprer", **comprar**, and the one that you heard before is going to be the one that jumps out at you: **comprar**. So, how would you say *I bought*?

S: **Compré**.

T: **Compré**. And *I bought it*:

S: **Lo compré**.

T: **Lo compré**. *I didn't buy it*:

S: **No lo compré**.

T: Good. **No lo compré**. *He bought it*:

S: **Lo compró**.

T: **Lo compró**. *He bought it for me*:

S: **Me lo compró**.

T: Good, we don't need the *for*. Very good. **Me lo compró**. We could use the *for*, if we wanted, if we wanted to emphasize or stress that it's *for me*, so, how would that be?

S: **Lo compró para mi**.

T: Good. **Lo compró para mi**. *To send* in Spanish is **enviar**.

S: **Enviar.**

T: So we have *envoy* from this in English.

S: *Envelope.*

T: Is that from there?

S: Must be-

T: Or is it from *envelop*, like to *encapsulate*, you have *encapsulate*, *envelop*. But, like I said we don't need to know when we consider these things, just considering it helps us remember that word and if you are particularly curious there are, I mean, to check, there are some very good online free resources, for example, [etymonline.com](http://etymonline.com), is an excellent free etymological dictionary, where you can check any word you have a curiosity for. So **enviar**, to *send*. *I sent*:

S: **Envié.**

T: Exactly. *I sent it*:

S: **Lo envié.**

T: *I sent it to you*, speaking informally:

S: **Te lo envié.**

T: Good. *I didn't send it to you*:

S: **No te lo envié.**

T: Good. **No te lo envié.** The word for *still* or *yet*, the same word in Spanish, *still* or *yet*, is **todavía**, **todavía**.

S: **Todavía.**

T: Which is actually the combination of **todo**, here **toda**, in feminine, meaning *all*, and **vía**, like *via* in English, is a *way*, so it's "all the way". But of course no Spanish speaker hears that, when they hear **todavía**, just like when we say expressions like *as well*, we don't think that that's built of *as* and *well*. So, the words, sometimes the small words we build these bigger words out of in English and in Spanish, don't make much sense to us most of the time, but for a learner it's useful for you

to divide a word like **todavía**, because it's long and you might find it difficult to remember, and if you identify that it's **toda** and **vía**, even if that doesn't really make any sense with the meaning of *yet* and *still*, it's gonna help you internalize that vocabulary. So, *yet* or *still*:

S: **Todavía.**

T: **Todavía.** *I didn't send it to you yet*, still speaking informally:

S: **No te lo envié todavía.**

T: Good. **No te lo envié todavía.** Good. What was *he sent* or *she sent* or *you (formal) sent, it sent*?

S: **Envió.**

T: Good. **Envió.** *Yesterday*, the word for *yesterday* was **ayer**, *a-y-e-r*.

S: **Ayer.**

T: Good. So, how would you say *he sent it yesterday*?

S: **Lo envió ayer.**

T: Good. **Lo envió ayer.** *He sent it yesterday, she sent it yesterday, you (formal) sent it yesterday.* If you want to say *it was sent yesterday*, this kind of structure in English where we don't say who did it, we just say *it was sent yesterday*, how do you think you might say that in Spanish?

S: **Se lo envié**, no-

T: Think first, the structure in English, what you will say in Spanish, but in English.

S: *It sent itself.*

T: Exactly. *It sent itself.* So what is *it sent*?

S: **Envió.**

T: Okay, *It sent itself*:

S: **Se envió.**

T: Yes, and you are dying to put the **lo** there, right?

S: Yes!

T: So, this is the intuition because you have *it sent* in your mind, but if you don't succumb to that intuition and you work mechanically *it sent*, **envió**, *it sent itself*, **se envió**, okay, then you don't get **lo**, because you don't need it. So, *it sent itself yesterday, it was sent yesterday*:

S: **Se envió ayer.**

T: Good. **Se envió ayer.** Good. Again, what was *to speak*?

S: **Hablar.**

T: Good, and *I spoke*:

S: **Hablé.**

T: Good, and *he spoke*:

S: **Habló.**

T: *He spoke with me*:

S: **Habló conmigo.**

T: Good. **Habló conmigo.** *I don't know why he didn't speak with me. I don't know why he didn't speak with me.* So, the first bit is *I don't know why*:

S: **No sé por qué.**

T: *He didn't speak with me*:

S: **No hablé conmigo.**

T: Good. **No sé por qué no hablé conmigo.** *To forget* is **olvidar, olvidar.**

S: **Olvidar.**

T: That means *to forget*. And the noun, **olvido**, we don't have it in English, I don't think. *The forgetting, el olvido, the process*, like the experience of forgetting, I don't think we have a word like this in English, and you will hear it a lot in songs especially in Spanish, especially tango, if you listen to tangos, they speak about falling in love and forgetting, not ever falling out of love, only **el olvido. Olvidar, to forget.** How would you say *I forgot*?



S: **Olvidé.**

T: And *he forgot*:

S: **Olvidó.**

T: *I was going to do it, but I forgot it. I was going to do it, but I forgot it.* So, the first bit is *I was going*, this is your line in the past, and it's one of the three irregular verbs that we have in the line of the past.

S: **Iba.**

T: **Iba.** So, *I was going to do it*:

S: **Lo iba a hacer.**

T: *But I forgot it*:

S: **Pero lo olvidé.**

T: Good. **Lo iba a hacer pero lo olvidé.** Good.

## Track 59

T: So, for *-ar* verbs we have /e/ for *I*: **hablar** - *to speak*, **hablé** – *I spoke*, and /o/ for *he/she/it/you* formal and we are accenting our endings - **hablé**, **habló**. For *-er/-ir* verbs we have an /i/ sound, so an *i*, an *i*, for *I*, and /ió/, *i-o*, for *he/she/it*. So we have /i/ and /ió/. So, if you go to **comer** – *to eat*, *I ate* is **comí**, and *he ate/she ate/it ate/you* (formal) *ate* is **comió**. We are accenting the endings again, the *i* and the *o*. **Comí**, **comió**.

S: **Comí**, **comió**.

T: Good. What was **salir**? **Salir**:

S: *To leave?*

T: *To leave* or *to go out*. So, how would you say *I went out* or *I left*?

S: **Salí**.

T: **Salí**. *She went out, she left*:

S: **Salió**.

T: **Salió**. Good. *She didn't go out yet, she didn't leave yet*:

S: **No salió todavía**.

T: Good. **No salió todavía**. *I don't know why she didn't leave yet. I don't know why she didn't leave yet*:

S: **No sé por qué no salió todavía**.

T: Good. **No sé por qué no salió todavía**. What did **qué** mean? **Qué**, what does that mean?

S: *What*.

T: Yes, *what*, and what else does it mean?

S: *That*.

T: *That*. In, like, *I hope that*, **espero que**, good. So, apart from *what* and *that*, **que** also means *than*, *than*. So, you can use it like this, so you could say, for example, *I ate more than him*. *I ate* is the first bit:

S: **Comé?**

T: *-er/-ir* verb.

S: **Comí.**

T: Good. *I ate more than him*:

S: **Comí más que él.**

T: Good. Not *him*, *than he*. *More than he ate*. **Comí más que él** – *I ate more than him*, or *more than he ate*. Good. *He ate more than me*:

S: **Comió más que** ... and I'm not sure if it's "mi" or "migo".

T: When we said **comí más que él**, we put **él** there because whilst in English we say *him*, what we really mean is *he*. *I ate more than he ate*. It's quite peculiar in English, that we say *him* and not *he*, so in Spanish we are being more literal: **comí más que él** – *I ate more than he*. So, *he ate more than me* - **Comió más que**:

S: **Yo.**

T: Exactly. So, *he ate more than I*, *he ate more than I ate*. So, how would that be?

S: **Comió más que yo.**

T: Good. **Comió más que yo**. It's actually quite peculiar in English that we say *me*. In fact, the way we use words like *me* instead of *I* is really peculiar in English, and it's a negative language transfer, that could influence other languages that you are learning. For example, if I say *who wants to go to the park*, you might say *me!* This doesn't make any sense. It's *I*, *I want to go to the park*, what is this *me*? So, there is some strange use of these words in English that might influence our Spanish, so we need to cut that negative language transfer when we identify it popping up. So, **comió más que yo**, *he ate more than I*, *he ate more than I ate*. What was *to see*?

S: **Ver.**

T: **Ver.** Good. *I saw?* **Ver** is regular here, so *I saw*. So, go back to **comer**, use that as your hook.

S: **Vi.**

T: Good. *I saw him:*

S: **Lo vi.**

T: Good. **Lo vi.** *I didn't see him:*

S: **No lo vi.**

T: **No lo vi.** *I saw him, but he didn't see me.* And, as we are contrasting we will probably use one or both of the words for *I* and *he*, those words we don't need to use, we will probably use one or both of them here as we're contrasting, although you don't need to, so it's up to you. *I saw him, but he didn't see me.* First bit is *I saw him:*

S: **Lo vi.**

T: *But, he didn't see me:*

S: **Pero no me vio.**

T: Good. **Lo vi, pero no me vio.** And like I said, as we are contrasting we might feel an urge to say the word for **él**: **lo vi, pero él no me vio** or **yo lo vi, pero él no me vio**, depends on the context, even if you have context and you know who you are talking about, you might feel yourself wanting to say these words because you are contrasting. The word for *nothing, nothing*, in Spanish is **nada, nada.**

S: **Nada.**

T: *N-a-d-a, nada.*

S: **Nada.**

T: And we have double negative in Spanish, which means you can say *I didn't see nothing:*

S: **No vi nada.**

T: Good. **No vi nada.** *I didn't eat anything:*

S: **No comí nada.**

T: **No comí nada.** *Didn't you eat anything (speaking formally)? Didn't you eat anything?:*

S: ¿**No comió nada?**

T: ¿**No comió nada?** *Why didn't you eat anything?:*

S: ¿**Por qué no comió nada?**

T: ¿**Por qué no comió nada?** Good. The word for *nobody* is **nadie**.

S: **Nadie.**

T: *N-a-d-i-e*, **nadie**.

S: **Nadie.**

T: *Nobody saw anything, nobody saw nothing:*

S: **Nadie vio nada.**

T: Good. **Nadie vio nada.** Good. *Nobody saw anything.* **Durar, durar**, means *to last*. **Durar.**

S: **Durar.**

T: We have *endure* in English.

S: *Duration?*

T: *Duration*, and you even get like corporate names, that use these Latin roots and kind of appeal to your understanding without you realizing that you understand it. So, for example, you have *Duracell* batteries, you know what that means, but you don't know why you know what it means, so you can identify this kind of use of Latin in industry and how it's appealing to your subconscious understanding of the message that they want to give you about the products. So, look out for that. So, **durar**, *to last*. *Minute* in Spanish is **minuto**. So, how would you say *it lasted two minutes? It lasted two minutes:*

S: **Duró dos minutos.**

T: Very good. **Duró dos minutos.** *I lasted two minutes:*

S: **Duré dos minutos.**

T: Good. **Duré dos minutos.** We looked at before how you can get this *-ing* adjective. So, the adjective that we have for *-ing*, like *interesting*, using *-ante* or *-iente*. So, *interesting* was **interesante**. So, *during* is not an adjective, but it's formed in the same way, so how do you think you say *during* in Spanish?

S: **Durante?**

T: Yes, **durante**. So you could say *during two minutes*:

S: **Durante dos minutos.**

T: Good. And you can use that like *for*, as well. So, we said that with time you can say **por dos minutos**, but you can also say **durante**, you will hear that as well in Spanish, **durante dos minutos**, *during two minutes*, *for two minutes*. What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer.**

T: **Comer.** Good. And *he ate*:

S: **Comió.**

T: **Comió.** How would you say *he ate for half an hour*, or *he ate during half an hour - half an hour* is **media**, *half*, and what was *hour*?

S: **Hora.**

T: **Hora**, like in **ahora**. **Media hora.** Good. So, *he ate during half an hour*, *he ate for half an hour*:

S: **Comió durante media hora.**

T: Good. **Comió durante media hora.** *He spoke during half an hour, for half an hour*:

S: **Habló durante media hora.**

T: **Habló durante media hora.** What was *with* in Spanish?

S: **Con.**

T: **Con.** *Without* in Spanish is **sin**. *S-i-n*, **sin**.

S: **Sin.**

T: **Sin.** And *to stop, to stop*, is **parar, parar. P-a-r-a-r, parar.**

S: **Parar.**

T: So you could say *he spoke for half an hour without stopping. He spoke for half an hour without stopping:*

S: **Habló durante media hora sin parar.**

T: Good. **Habló durante media hora sin parar.** And we said that after prepositions, so **sin** is a preposition, we are not saying *stoppING*, we are saying *to stop* – **sin parar**, “without to stop”. **Habló durante media hora sin parar. Parar** is interesting, because **par, par**, in Spanish means *pair*, so **un par** is *a pair*. So, like *a pair of shoes*, **un par de zapatos, un par de zapatos**. So, **parar, to stop**, might be “the pairing”, you can imagine this kind of time and space notion of two things pairing, reaching each other and then stopping. And then **comparar, to compare**, is “with pairing”. So, even though this is an *m* here, it’s **con**, the *n* has been softened by that *p*, which is why we say *compare*. So, “with pairing” is *to compare*. *Prepare*, of course, is “pre-pairing”, we can see this in English as well. *Repair, to repair* is to “re-pair”, to pair up again. **Separar** is *to separate* in Spanish, *separation, separación, separar*; and this *se-* means *apart*, so *to separate* is to “pair apart”, to “pair apart”.

## Track 60

T: What was *to speak* in Spanish?

S: **Hablar.**

T: **Hablar.** *I spoke:*

S: **Hablé.**

T: **Hablé.** And *he spoke/she spoke/you (formal) spoke:*

S: **Habló.**

T: **Habló.** Good. *We spoke* is **hablamos**, which, I'm sure you've noticed, is exactly the same as the present, *we speak*. So, **hablamos** means *we speak* or *we spoke*, which, for one side is wonderful because it means you get another version of this very irregular tense without having to remember a new one. But, of course, it can cause some ambiguity, and in real life it can cause some ambiguity, not often, mind, because most of the time you have some context showing that you are talking about the past. For example, the word for *when* is **cuando**.

S: **Cuando.**

T: So, if you want to say *when we speak I understand everything*, what was *to understand*?

S: **Comprender.**

T: **Comprender.** So, *when we speak, I understand everything:*

S: **Cuando hablamos, comprendo todo.**

T: Good. **Cuando hablamos, comprendo todo.** So, **cuando hablamos**, that bit could be *when we speak*, generally, or *when we spoke*, so that second half brings us into the context and we understand that when we speak, generally speaking, I understand everything. **Cuando hablamos, comprendo todo.** But, if you wanted to say *when we spoke I understood everything*, then, of course, the first bit is going to be the same, but that second bit, *I understood everything*, is going to give you that context. So, let's practice that one - *when we spoke I understood everything:*

S: **Cuando hablamos, comprendí todo.**



T: Very good. **Cuando hablamos, comprendí todo.** So again, the second part of that sentence is making it clear whether this **hablamos** is the present or the past. **Cuando hablamos, comprendo todo; cuando hablamos, comprendí todo.** *We spoke yesterday. We spoke yesterday:*

S: **Hablamos ayer.**

T: **Hablamos ayer.** Good. And we know that we can use the present with future context in Spanish.

So, if you wanted to say *we will speak tomorrow*:

S: **Hablamos mañana.**

T: **Hablamos mañana.** So, **hablamos ayer**, *we spoke yesterday*; **hablamos mañana**, *we will speak tomorrow*. How would you say *we wait a lot, we wait a lot*, generally? What is *a lot* in Spanish?

S: **Mucho.**

T: Good. *To wait or to hope*:

S: **Esperar.**

T: **Esperar.** If you forget this one you can think of *desperate*, which means “un-hoped”. **Desesperado** in Spanish, again one of these *-ado/-ido* adjectives from the version that comes after **haber**. You can see **desesperar – desesperado**, which made *desperate*. And it’s **desesperado** in Spanish, not “desperado”, like we have some spanishisms, let’s say, that have entered English, but they can enter incorrectly, like “desperado” is **desesperado** in Spanish; or in English you might hear “no problemo”, this is loosely based on Spanish, but of course, *problem* in Spanish is **problema**, not “problemo”, and actually you would say **ningun problema**, not “no problema”. So, **esperar**, *to wait or to hope*. So, talking generally, *we wait a lot, we wait around a lot*:

S: **Esperamos mucho.**

T: **Esperamos mucho.** Maybe you meant yesterday, here it might be ambiguous, unless the context is clear. So, if you want to clarify, you might want to say the word *yesterday*. How would you say *we waited a lot yesterday*?

S: **Esperamos mucho ayer.**

T: Good. **Esperamos mucho ayer.** What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer.**

T: **Comer.** And what is *we eat*?

S: **Comemos.**

T: **Comemos.** *We ate* is **comimos, comimos.** *We ate*:

S: **Comimos.**

T: *We didn't eat*:

S: **No comimos.**

T: **No comimos.** What was *to live*?

S: **Vivir.**

T: And *we live* (generally):

S: **Vivimos.**

T: And *we lived*:

S: **Vivimos.**

T: **Vivimos.** So, what this means is that because of this one difference we have in the entire language between *-er* and *-ir* verbs, in the present we have *-emos* for *-er* and *-imos* for *-ir*, what that means is that when we go into the past, *-ir* verbs stay the same, **vivimos-vivimos**, but *-er* verbs are different: **comemos-comimos**. So, what was *to see*?

S: **Ver.**

T: And *we see*, in the present?

S: **Vemos.**

T: **Vemos.** And *we saw*:

S: **Vimos.**

T: **Vimos.** Good. What was *to go out* or *to leave*?

S: **Salir.**

T: Good. *We are going out, or we are leaving:*

S: **Salimos.**

T: Good. *And we went out or we left:*

S: **Salimos.**

T: The same. What was *to lose*?

S: **Perder.**

T: **Perder.** *We lose:*

S: **Perdemos.**

T: Good. *We lost:*

S: **Perdimos.**

T: Good. How would you say *we got lost* or *we lost ourselves*?

S: **Nos perdimos.**

T: **Nos perdimos.** Good. Okay, so how would you say *we always get lost, but we didn't get lost yesterday*? First thing - what was the word for *always*?

S: **Siempre.**

T: **Siempre.** So, how would you say *we always get lost*?

S: **Siempre perdemos... Siempre nos perdemos.**

T: Good. **Siempre nos perdemos, or nos perdemos siempre.** *But:*

S: **Pero.**

T: *We didn't get lost yesterday:*

S: **No perdimos... No nos perdimos ayer.**

T: Good. **Nos perdemos siempre, pero no nos perdimos ayer.** Very good. There we see in that sentence, **perdemos** for present and **perdimos** for past. But, of course, with *-ir* verbs, they have the same version for both. So, we could say, for example, *we don't go out often, but we went out yesterday.* And *often* is **a menudo, a menudo.** **Menudo** is like a literary word that's not used very often for *small*, related to *minute*, actually, or *miniscule*, it's not used very often in that sense, in the sense of *small*. But **a menudo** is used very often to mean *often*. So, *we don't go out often*:

S: **No salimos a menudo.**

T: But *we went out yesterday*:

S: **Pero salimos ayer.**

T: Good, very good. So, here we have the present and the past in this sentence and we see that both of them are **salimos. No salimos a menudo, pero salimos ayer.** Let's make a recap. So, let's do it with **hablar** and **comer**, which we will use as our hook verbs. So, *I spoke*:

S: **Hablé.**

T: *He spoke*:

S: **Habló.**

T: *We spoke*:

S: **Hablamos.**

T: And **comer** is *to eat*. So, *I ate*:

S: **Comí.**

T: *He ate*:

S: **Comió.**

T: *We ate*:

S: **Comimos.**

T: Very good.

## Track 61

T: You remember how to say *to call*? You need to open the association between *to call* and *to phone* and *to call myself, my name is*, and then you remember it.

S: **Lllamar.**

T: Yes. **Lllamar.** Now we can look a little bit at how the line in the past and the dot in the past interact. Now, we do this in some very common structures in both languages. For example, you might say something like *I was cooking when the phone rang*. So, *I was cooking when the phone rang*, which part is the line? And which part is the point?

S: *I was cooking* is the line.

T: Good.

S: *The phone rang* is the dot.

T: Good. So, let's begin with *I was cooking*. What is *to cook*?

S: **Cocinar.**

T: **Cocinar.** Good. *I was cooking*:

S: **Cocinaba.**

T: *When*:

S: **Cuando.**

T: **Cuando.** *The phone rang.* **El teléfono** is *the phone*, like in English, which is actually from Greek. This first bit, *tele-*, means *far, distant*, and *phone* means *voice*. It's the "distant voice", it's the *telephone*. So *when the phone rang*, and we will say *when the phone sounded*. And *to sound* is **sonar. Sonar.** So *when the phone sounded*:

S: **Cuando el teléfono sonó.**

T: All together, *I was cooking when the phone rang*. Not from memory but thinking it through again.  
*I was cooking when the phone rang*:

S: **Cocinaba cuando el teléfono sonó.**

T: Very good. **Cocinaba cuando el teléfono sonó**, or **cocinaba cuando sonó el teléfono**, which would probably be more natural order in Spanish. **Cocinaba cuando sonó el teléfono**. But both orders are perfectly fine. *To arrive* was **llegar**. **Llegar**, *to arrive*.

S: **Llegar.**

T: And this is *l-l*, so we have the double *l*, which is like a *y* sound, *e-g-a-r*. *-ar* verb, **llegar**.

S: **Llegar.**

T: *I arrived:*

S: **Llegué.**

T: **Llegué.** *He arrived:*

S: **Llegó.**

T: **Llegó.** *We arrived:*

S: **Llegamos.**

T: **Llegamos.** Good. *I was speaking on the phone when Maria arrived*. And we're not going to say literally *on the phone* in Spanish. We will say **por, por teléfono**, *by phone*. **Por** can also mean *by*.

*So I was speaking on the phone when Maria arrived:*

S: **Hablaba por teléfono cuando María llegó.**

T: Very good. **Hablaba por teléfono cuando María llegó**. Or **hablaba por teléfono cuando llegó María**. Either way. Good. So we can see how we're using the line and the point together. If you were to look up *to stay* in the dictionary, you would find **quedarse**. Then, you need to do something with that **se** so if you wanted to say *I stayed*, how would it be?

S: **Me quedé.**

T: **Me quedé.** *He stayed? Or she stayed, or you (formal) stayed, it stayed:*

S: **Se quedó.**

T: **Se quedó.** And *we stayed*:

S: **Nos quedamos.**

T: **Nos quedamos.** Which, of course, could also mean *we stay* or *we are staying*. Good. What was *to please*? The verb that we use to express *like*. *To please*:

S: **Gustar.**

T: **Gustar.** Good. And if you want to say *I like it*, you say *it pleases me*. So how do you say *I like it*?

S: **Me gusta. Me lo gusta.**

T: We're working on intuition, no? We've got *me* and *it* and we're throwing it all in there. But we must-

S: Sorry, **me gusta.**

T: Yes. We must process it literally. *It pleases me. It pleases, gusta. It pleases me, me gusta.* Good.

Now if you want to say *I liked it*, you just say, of course, *it pleased me*. So how would that be?

S: "**Me gusté.**" Sorry, **me gustó.**

T: **Me gustó.** Good. **Me gusté**, what does that mean? **Me gusté?**

S: *I pleased myself.*

T: *I liked myself.* Ah? **Me gustó**, *it pleased me, I liked it.* Good. *I didn't like it:*

S: **No me gustó.**

T: **No me gustó.** *I didn't like it, it didn't please me.* Apart from the point in the past, you could also use the line in the past here depending on the context. So how would you say that? *It wasn't pleasing me:*

S: **No me gustaba.**

T: **No me gustaba.** So with this line and point, we're not looking for direct translations from English. We are looking to understand the concept of the line in time and the point in time and applying it directly in Spanish. Because in English you would never say something like *I wasn't liking it.* And

a lot of the time it's totally interchangeable in Spanish. **No me gustó, no me gustaba**, just means you're thinking in a different way when you say it. **No me gustó**, you're referring to something as an event, as something closed. And **no me gustaba**, you're thinking about something as an ongoing thing that occurred over a period of time. Really, a lot of the time that difference between the point and the line in time just originates in the mind. **Parecer, parecer**, was *to seem*. **Parecer**.

S: **Parecer**.

T: It's related to *apparent* and we have **aparecer** in Spanish, which means *to appear*.

S: Is *transparent* similar?

T: *Transparent* also is related, yes of course. Good. So **parecer** is *to seem*. How would you say *it seems to me? It seems to me*:

S: **Me parece**.

T: Good. *It seems good to me*, or in Spanish *it seems well to me*:

S: **Me parece bien**.

T: **Me parece bien**. How would you say *it seemed good to me*?

S: **Me parecí**.

T: *It seemed*:

S: Ah, yes of course. **Me pareció bien**.

T: Good. **Me pareció bien**. *It seemed good to me*. And you might want to use the line in the past. You might want to say, like, *it was seeming good to me*. So even though this is not a translation you would use in English, in Spanish you're just thinking about do I mean a point in time or do I mean ongoing in this context? So we might want *it was seeming to me well*. How would you say that?

S: **Parecer** becomes **parecía**. **Me parecía bien**.

T: Good. **Me parecía bien**. *It seemed good to me, but when I saw it I didn't like it. So it seemed good to me, it was seeming good to me*:



S: **Me parecía bien.**

T: *But:*

S: **Pero.**

T: *When I saw it:*

S: **Cuando lo vi.**

T: *I didn't like it:*

S: **No me gustó.**

T: Very good. **Me parecía bien, pero cuando lo vi, no me gustó.** And again, here we see the interaction, no? Between the line and the point. **Me parecía bien**, *it was seeming ok, fine, to me*, **pero cuando lo vi**, *but when I saw it*, this is a very clear point in the past, *I didn't like it*, in that moment when I saw it I didn't like it. Again the point in the past. **Me parecía bien, pero cuando lo vi, no me gustó.** Excellent.

## Track 62

T: What was *to give* in Spanish?

S: **Dar.**

T: **Dar.** Good. Now **dar** is irregular in this point in the past, in that whilst it's an *-ar* verb it behaves like an *-er/-ir* verb. It's the only verb that has this particular peculiarity, the only verb that just switches sides like this in this point in the past. So, how would you say *I gave*?

S: **Di.**

T: **Di.** Good. *D-i, di.* And *he gave, she gave, it gave, you (formal) gave*:

S: **Dío.**

T: And where is the accent?

S: Sorry, **dio.**

T: **Dio.** Good. **Dio.** *We gave*:

S: **Dimos.**

T: **Dimos.** Good. How would you say *he gave me*?

S: **Me dio.**

T: Good. **Me dio.** And *he gave me it*:

S: **Me lo dio.**

T: **Me lo dio.** *He gave us it, he gave it to us*:

S: **Nos lo dio.**

T: Good. **Nos lo dio.** *He didn't give it to us*:

S: **No nos lo dio.**

T: Good. **No nos lo dio.** *I gave it to you (speaking informally) I gave you it, I gave it to you*:

S: Did we do it?

T: *I gave*:

S: Ah, *I gave*.

T: So your mind went to *you gave*, ah?

S: Yes.

T: So how do you control that, how do you stop that happening?

S: Cutting it up.

T: Ok, so your first thought, what is it? Your first thought when you want to build *I gave you it*, *I gave it to you*.

S: *I gave*.

T: Exactly. And then the rest flows off. So *I gave you it*, speaking informally?

S: **Te lo di**.

T: **Te lo di**. Good. So it's not a new thing for us to have two of these small words together, **nos lo**, **te lo**, **me lo**. What we didn't see so far is having two words together, two of these small words together, where both of them begin with *l*. That's because in Spanish, when that happens, a phonetic change occurs. So for example, if I wanted to say *I gave it to him*, it should be **le lo di**. But - and this isn't about grammar, it's about phonetics, it's about sound - Spanish doesn't like that. Spanish doesn't like the sound of those two *l*'s together: **le lo**. Doesn't like it. So where we would have **le lo**, **les lo**, **les los**, **le los**, any combination of */l-/l/* together with these small words, the first one is going to turn into **se**. So another **se**. Ah? But a totally different use, and it's not changing any meaning, it's just a phonetic issue. So this means that **le lo**, **les lo**, become **se lo**. So how would you say *I gave it to him*?

S: **Se lo di**.

T: Good. **Se lo di**. How would you say *I gave it to you guys* or *to them*?

S: **Se lo di**.

T: **Se lo di.** The same. So it is really just a phonetic change. It's got nothing to do with the different meanings that we saw for **se**, like *himself* and *herself* that we saw before. Ah? It's just a phonetic change because Spanish doesn't like having these two *l*'s together. **Se lo di:** *I gave it to you guys, I gave it to them, I gave it to him, I gave it to her, I gave it to you (formal).* How would you say *I gave them to him*?

S: **Se los di.**

T: Perfect. Well done. **Se los di.** So, of course this means that there could be many ambiguities. So now is a good time to look at how we can make these clarifications. Generally, not just in this structure, but generally. So for example, how would you say *I gave him something? I gave him something*:

S: **Le di algo.**

T: **Le di algo.** So in this case, we might want to clarify as well, because of course **le di algo** could mean *I gave him something, I gave her something, I gave you (formal) something.* So how do we make that clarification? It's simple. We repeat the whole sentence, and then we say afterwards *to him, to her.* For example, **le di algo a él, le di algo a ella.** How would you clarify *I gave something to you, speaking formally*?

S: **Le di algo a usted.**

T: Good. **Le di algo a usted.** So actually, we're repeating, no? We don't get rid of that **le** because we put **a usted**, which is excellent for the learner. Because it means you don't have to worry about changing the structure of the sentence when you're clarifying, using this **a** to clarify, because you're repeating. Now, we saw before we didn't have this situation. For example, we could say **me lo compra, he buys it for me, or lo compra para mí.** We don't repeat the **me** there. But with this **a**, with this **a** that we use to clarify, we will always repeat. **Le di algo a él.** It's like an afterthought. **Le di algo a ella.** You don't have to go back and restructure because you've made that clarification. So going back to this situation when we have two *ll*'s together, what was *to sell*?

S: **Vender.**

T: **Vender.** And how would you say *I sold*?

S: **Vendí.**

T: **Vendí.** And *I sold it:*

S: **Lo vendí.**

T: **Lo vendí.** And *I sold him it:*

S: **L- ... se lo vendí.**

T: Very good. It would be **le lo vendí**, but we don't like this sound in Spanish, so we just say **se lo vendí**. But of course, **se lo vendí** is very ambiguous. Most of the time we're going to know what we're talking about because of the context. Usually when we're speaking we mentioned already what or who we're speaking about. But if you want to clarify it, if you want to be emphatic, you can add on afterwards *to him*. So, how would you do that? *I sold it to him:*

S: **Se lo vendí a él.**

T: Good. So we're just repeating. **Se lo vendí a él.** This is probably because this **a** is actually quite flexible. We can use it to clarify, but not just for the preposition *to*. For example, if I say **me lo compra a mí**, and I use this **a** to emphasize **mí, a mí**, *to me* literally, could mean *from me, he buys it from me*. Or it could mean *for me, he buys it for me*. **Me lo compra a mí.** So this **a** is a bit special. We're using it to clarify and it can replace or represent other prepositions, other than *to*, which is its literal translation. And because it has this special use, we are always repeating with

**a**. Whereas, as we saw before, with the other prepositions, we are not repeating. **Me lo compra, lo compra para mí.** No repetition there. But if we use **a** to make this clarification, we repeat. **Me lo compra a mí.** Ah? So you repeat. **Se lo vendí a él.** How would you say *I sold it to her?*

S: **Se lo vendí a ella.**

T: **Se lo vendí a ella.** What if you wanted to say *I sold them to her?*

S: **Se los vendí a ella.**

T: Very good. **Se los vendí a ella.** What if they were feminine things that you sold to her?

S: **Se las vendí a ella.**

T: Good. **Se las vendí a ella.** So what if actually you sold *them to them*, not to *her*? So now, we're going to say *I sold them*, those feminine things, *to them*, mixed or masculine group.

S: **Se los vendí-**

T: Feminine things.

S: Sorry, **se las vendí a ellos.**

T: **Se las vendí a ellos.** Good. What was *to send*?

S: **Enviar.**

T: **Enviar.** Good. How would you say *he sent*?

S: **Envió.**

T: **Envió.** *He sent me it:*

S: **Me lo envió.**

T: Good. *He sent us it:*

S: **Nos le - sorry - nos lo envió.**

T: **Nos lo envió.** *he sent you it* (speaking informally):

S: **Te lo envió.**

T: Perfect. **Te lo envió.** So we have no problem with **me lo, nos lo, te lo**, but of course we can't have **le lo**. So if you want to say *he sent it to her*, how will it be?

S: **Se lo envió.**

T: Good. You want to clarify, go ahead.

S: **A ella.**

T: Good. **Se lo envió a ella.** And of course we could clarify *he* as well. **Él se lo envió a ella.** So it's like you have this base structure, **se lo envió**, and you can clarify around it. **Él se lo envió. Se lo envió a ella. Él se lo envió a ella.** But what is not changing there is that bit, **se lo envió.** *He sent it to them:*

S: **Se lo envió a ellos.**

T: Good. And what if it was *to you guys? He sent it to you guys:*

S: **Se lo envió a ustedes.**

T: Good. **Se lo envió a ustedes.** *He didn't send it to you guys yet. He didn't send it to you guys yet:*

S: It's **no se lo envió a ustedes...** and I forgot *yet.*

T: "All way".

S: Ah, **todavía.**

T: **Todavía.** Good. So, **no se lo envió a ustedes todavía. No se lo envió todavía a ustedes,** could go that way around as well. *I don't know if I sent it to him, I don't know if I sent it to him:*

S: **No sé si envié – lo envié – se lo envié.**

T: Good. **No sé si se lo envié.** Excellent. So when we're using this **a** for clarification or emphasis, we are repeating. **Se lo envié a él. Se lo compré a ella.** So we repeat when we're using this **a** for emphasis or for clarification. But if we use another preposition, like **para** for example, **lo compré para usted, lo compré para ti.** Then we don't repeat. So these very specific details of language, I don't want anybody to worry or stress about remembering or memorizing them. Remember, as long as you are actively listening and analyzing the Spanish that you expose yourself to, even if you forget it now, you will notice it again for yourself through listening, analyzing, comparing, with the skills that we've developed during this course. So our focus is to understand it, not to memorize it.

## Track 63

T: *To remember* in Spanish, *to remember* in Spanish is **acordarse**. **Acordarse**. So it's **acordar**. It just means, this **-se** on the end, just means that when we use this verb we need to say *I remember myself* to give the meaning of *I remember*. So how would you say *I remember*?

S: Is it **acuerdo**?

T: Good. The *-o* splits.

S: It's, uh... yeah.

T: So, *I remember*:

S: **Me acuerdo**.

T: **Me acuerdo**. *I don't remember*:

S: **No me acuerdo**.

T: **No me acuerdo**. *I don't remember*. **No me acuerdo**. Good. So, *I don't remember if I gave it to him or to her*. *I don't remember if I gave it to him or to her*. So, *I don't remember*:

S: **No me- no me acuerdo**.

T: *If I gave it to him or to her*:

S: **Si lo- si se lo di a él o ella**.

T: *Or to her*:

S: **O a ella**.

T: Good. **No me acuerdo si se lo di a él o a ella**. Very good. How would you say *we don't remember if we gave it to him or to them*? And we mean feminine *them*. So, *we don't remember* is the first bit:

S: **No nos acordamos**.

T: Good. **No nos acordamos** because here we are not stressing the *-o*. It's not going to split. **No nos acordamos**. *If*:



S: **Si.**

T: *We gave it to him or to them* (female group):

S: **Lo dimos**, isn't that right?

T: The *to* when we actually say *to him* or *to them* is the clarification. It's the repetition.

S: **Se lo dimos.**

T: *To him or to them. Feminine them:*

S: **A él o a ellas.**

T: Good. So all together. *We don't remember if we gave it to him or to them* (feminine):

S: **No acordamos.**

T: Where is the **se** in **no acordamos**? Where is the **se** of **acordarse**?

S: **No nos acordamos.**

T: It became **nos**.

S: **Si se lo dimos a él o a ellas.**

T: Well done. **No nos acordamos si se lo dimos a él o a ellas.** What was *he likes it, it is pleasing to him?*

S: **Le lo gusta.**

T: Make sure you take the mid road until you are extremely comfortable with how **gustar** works.

Take the mid road of *it is pleasing to him*:

S: Ah, **le gusta.**

T: Good. **Le gusta.** *She likes it:*

S: **La gusta.** No, **le gusta.**

T: **Le gusta.** It's still *to her. It is pleasing to her.* **Le gusta.** So **le gusta** could mean *he likes it, she likes it.* What else could it mean? *It is pleasing to who else?*

S: **Usted.**

T: Good. So maybe here you want to clarify **le gusta**, it's not very obvious who you mean. By the context it might be, but we're seeing especially with this group of *he, she, and it* and **usted** all together, many times we are wanting to clarify. So bearing in mind that the structure is *it is pleasing to him, it is pleasing to her, it is pleasing to you*, how are you going to clarify? If you want to clarify that you mean *she likes it*:

S: **Le gusta a ella.**

T: **A ella.** Good. So this is why it's important to take that mid translation as well. Otherwise you would probably just say **ella le gusta**, which would mean *she's pleasing to* whoever that **le** is. We would just understand that somebody likes her. *She is pleasing to, ah?* So, to make it clear we need to put the **a**. **Le gusta a ella. A ella le gusta.** *To her it is pleasing. It is pleasing to her.*

And if we wanted to say *he liked it, it was pleasing to him*:

S: So it's **gustó.**

T: Good.

S: **Le gustó.**

T: So this could mean *it was pleasing to him, it was pleasing to her, it was pleasing to you* (formal), could be any combination of *he, she, it, or you* (formal) *liking*. *He, she, it or you* (formal). So how would you clarify? How would you say *it was pleasing to her? She liked it, it was pleasing to her*:

S: **Le gustó a ella.**

T: **Le gustó a ella.** Good.

## Track 64

T: What was *to do* or *to make* in Spanish?

S: **Hacer.**

T: **Hacer.** Good. How would you say *it does* or *it makes*?

S: **Hace.**

T: **Hace.** Good. Now **hace**, you can use like *ago*. Like in English when you say *two weeks ago*, you can say *it makes two weeks* in Spanish, and you get that meaning. So *week* is **semana**. *Two* is - do you remember *two*?

S: **Dos.**

T: **Dos.** So *two weeks ago*, you will say *it makes two weeks*:

S: **Hace dos semanas.**

T: **Hace dos semanas.** *I saw him two weeks ago*:

S: **Lo vi hace dos semanas.**

T: Good. **Lo vi hace dos semanas.** Good. *To respond* is **responder**. **Responder**. How would you say *I responded*?

S: **Respondí.**

T: **Respondí.** How would you say *I responded to her*?

S: **La respondí. Le. Le respondí.**

T: Good. **Le respondí.** *I responded to her. I responded to her seven weeks ago.* Do you remember how to say *seven*? Related to *September*:

S: **Siete.**

T: **Siete.** Good. So *I responded to her seven weeks ago*:

S: **Le respondí hace siete semanas.**

T: Good. **Le respondí hace siete semanas.** Now in Spanish, you can say *I responded her it*. For example, *I responded to her letter* or *I responded to her mail*. Instead of saying it this way, *to her mail*, in Spanish you can just say *I responded him the mail*. *I responded her the mail*. Or if you know what you are talking about, *I responded him it*. *I responded her it*. This is because, and something we'll look at again later, Spanish does not use possessive words as much as English does. So, it would be much more natural in Spanish, *I responded her the mail*. *I responded him the mail*, instead of *I responded to her mail*. So how would you say *I responded her it*, which isn't great English, but it's perfect Spanish?

S: **Se lo respondí.**

T: Good. **Se lo respondí.** So the **se** is actually **le**, *to her*. The **lo** is **el mail** and you get **se lo respondí**. *I responded to her the mail*. Good. Month is **mes**. **Mes**. *M-e-s*.

S: **Mes.**

T: It's a masculine word, so how would you say *the month*?

S: **El mes.**

T: Good, and how would you say *a month* or *one month*?

S: **Un mes.**

T: **Un mes.** So **un mes** can be *a month* or *one month*. So how would you say *I responded it to her one month ago*? *I responded to her mail*, *I responded her it one month ago*:

S: **Se lo respondí hace un mes.**

T: Good. **Se lo respondí hace un mes.** Good. So we have **respondí**. *I responded*. How would you say *he, she, it, you (formal) responded*?

S: **Respondió.**

T: Good. **Respondió.** And *we responded*:

S: **Respondimos.**

T: Good. **Respondimos.** So **respondí**, **respondió**, **respondimos**. Let's make a quick recap with an *-ar* verb. How would you say *discrimination*?

S: **Descriminación.**

T: Again?

S: **Descriminación.**

T: In English we say *discrimination* or *desdiscrimination*?

S: Oh, it's with an *i*, yeah.

T: It's with an *i*, right?

S: Yeah, **discriminación.**

T: **Discriminación.** *To discriminate:*

S: **Discriminar.**

T: **Discriminar.** *I discriminated:*

S: **Discriminé.**

T: **Discriminé.** *He, or she, or it, you (formal) discriminated:*

S: **Discriminó.**

T: Good. And *we discriminated:*

S: **Discriminamos.**

T: Good. So we have two more people to learn for the point in the past. *They* and *you* informal. Let's begin with *you* informal. For *you* informal, in the point in the past we have *-aste* for *-ar* verbs and *-iste* for *-er/-ir* verbs. *-aste* for *-ar* verbs and *-iste* for *-er/-ir* verbs. So how would you say *you spoke*, speaking informally?

S: **Hablaste.**

T: **Hablaste.** And *you ate*, speaking informally:

S: **Comiste.**

T: Good. **Comiste.** *Did you eat?:*

S: ¿Comiste?

T: ¿Comiste? *Didn't you eat?:*

S: ¿No comiste?

T: ¿No comiste? *Didn't you eat it?:*

S: ¿No lo comiste?

T: ¿No lo comiste? Good. *What was to leave or to go out?*

S: Salir.

T: Salir. How would you say *did you go out? Did you leave?:*

S: ¿Saliste?

T: ¿Saliste? Good. *You didn't go out last night? Last night is **anoche. Anoché.***

S: Anoché.

T: Now if you translate *tonight* directly, what you will come up with is **anoche**. So you must be careful not to get confused here. How do you say *tonight* in Spanish?

S: Esta noche.

T: Esta noche. "This night". So **anoche** is *last night*, not *tonight*. So how would you say *did you go out last night* (speaking informally)?

S: ¿Saliste anoche?

T: Good. ¿Saliste anoche? *Didn't you go out last night?:*

S: ¿No saliste anoche?

T: Good. ¿No saliste anoche? What was *to live?*

S: Vivir.

T: Vivir. And how do you say *where?*

S: Donde.

T: **Donde.** *Where did you live?:*

S: ¿**Dónde viviste?**

T: ¿**Dónde viviste?** *Where were you living?:*

S: So that's the line. ¿**Dónde vivías?**

T: Good. ¿**Dónde vivías?** So in many cases both line and point are perfectly fine. ¿**Dónde viviste?** ¿**Dónde vivías?** All that means is that the speaker has two different ideas in their mind. Maybe you go abroad to study and I'll tell you ¿**dónde viviste?** Or maybe I'll tell you ¿**dónde vivías?**

¿**Dónde viviste?** *Where did you live?* And this idea in my mind which is this closed amount of time. *Where were you living?* just means the idea in my mind is an ongoing idea of time. So many times it is completely interchangeable. What was *to wait?*

S: **Esperar.**

T: **Esperar. Esperar.** So for *you* informal, we have *-aste* for the point in the past. So how would you say *you waited*, speaking informally?

S: **Esperaste.**

T: **Esperaste.** Good. *Did you wait for me?:*

S: ¿**Me esperaste?**

T: ¿**Me esperaste?** *Didn't you wait for me?:*

S: ¿**No me esperaste?**

T: *Why didn't you wait for me?:*

S: ¿**Por qué no me esperaste?**

T: Good. ¿**Por qué no me esperaste?** What was *to arrive?*

S: **Llegar.**

T: **Llegar.** Good. How do you say *when did you arrive?* *When did you arrive?* (informally):

S: ¿**Cuándo llegaste?**

T: Good. ¿**Cuándo llegaste**? This is an example of when you would need the point, because you probably wouldn't want to say *when were you arriving*, no? So here's very strongly the point in time. When did you arrive? ¿**Cuándo llegaste**? So we have *-aste* and *-iste* for *you* informal. For *they*, we have *-aron* for *-ar* verbs and *-ieron* for *-er/-ir* verbs. So, how would you say *they spoke*?  
*They spoke:*

S: **Hablaron.**

T: **Hablaron.** *They waited:*

S: **Esperaron.**

T: Good. *They prepared it:*

S: **Lo prepararon.**

T: **Lo prepararon.** Good. We have *-aron* for *-ar* verbs and *-ieron, i-e-r-o-n*, for *-er/-ir* verbs. How would you say *they ate*?

S: **Comieron.**

T: **Comieron.** *They left, they went out:*

S: **Salieron.**

T: **Salieron.** *They sold them:*

S: **Los vendieron.**

T: Good. **Los vendieron.** Good. So let's have a quick review of the panorama of this point in the past with **hablar** and **comer** which we might want to use as our hooks. So we'll begin with **hablar**. How do you say *I spoke*?

S: **Hablé.**

T: **Hablé.** *He spoke:*

S: **Habló.**

T: **Habló.** *We spoke:*



S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** *You spoke* (informal):

S: **Hablaste.**

T: **Hablaste.** *And they spoke:*

S: **Hablaron.**

T: **Hablaron.** Good. **Hablé, hablé, hablamos, hablaste, hablaron.** Now let's do the same for **comer**, so for *-er/-ir* verbs. How do you say *I ate*?

S: **Comí.**

T: **Comí.** *He, she, it, you* (formal) *ate*:

S: **Comió.**

T: **Comió.** *We ate*:

S: **Comemos.**

T: That's the present.

S: **Comimos.**

T: **Comimos.** Good. *You ate* (informally):

S: **Comiste.**

T: **Comiste.** *And they ate*:

S: **Comieron.**

T: **Comieron.** So what's very interesting here is that for *-er/-ir* verbs in the present, we had */e/* popping up everywhere. **Vive, viven, vives** and just one */i/*. Just one */i/* sound. Just one *i* popping up, **vivimos**. But everything else was */e/* for *-er/-ir* verbs in the present, but in the past for *-er/-ir* verbs we have *i* dominating the stage. We have the *i, /i/* sound everywhere and this time the letter *e*, the */e/* sound, occupying only one space. Popping up in only one place which is *-ieron*. **Comí, comió, comiste, comimos, comieron**, which is the exact inverse of what happens in the present tense. We

can see also a logic that crosses over between the *-ar* group and the *-er/-ir* group. For example, we have *I spoke*, how is it?

S: **Hablé.**

T: **Hablé.** And *he spoke*:

S: **Habló.**

T: **Habló.** We saw the *-er/-ir* in this past point has a special affiliation to the */i/* sound, the *i*, the letter *i*. So whilst we have **hablé** for *-ar* verbs, for *-er/-ir* verbs what do we have? How would we say *I ate*?

S: **Comí.**

T: **Comí.** And whilst we have **habló** for *-ar* verbs, what do we have for *-er/-ir* verbs? How would you say *he ate*?

S: **Comió.**

T: **Comió.** So it's like the *-ar* version, but with that important */i/* popping up again. We have, for *we spoke*, what do we have?

S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** And for *we ate*:

S: **Comimos.**

T: **Comimos.** That important */i/*, the *i*, the */i/* sound again. For *you (informal) spoke*, what do we have?

S: **Hablaste.**

T: **Hablaste.** But *you ate*:

S: **Comiste.**

T: **Comiste.** You remembered the importance of that *i*. **Comiste.** *They spoke*:

S: **Hablaron.**

T: **Hablaron.** And *they ate*:

S: **Comieron.**

T: **Comieron.** Again that important *i* and that *e* getting just one small look in, in that dot in the past to remind us that this is *-er/-ir* group, not just *-ir*. Just as what happened the other way around in the present. Good.

## Track 65

T: What was the word for *nothing*?

S: **Nada.**

T: **Nada.** And *nobody*:

S: **Nadie.**

T: Yes, **nadie.** What was the word for *more*, like in “more late” or *later*?

S: **Más.**

T: **Más.**

S: **Más tarde.**

T: Good. So if you add **más** to **nada** or **nadie** you get *else*. So **más** can also mean *else*, like **nadie más**.

What does that mean? **Nadie más**:

S: *Nobody else.*

T: *Nobody else.* **Nada más**:

S: *Nothing else.*

T: *Nothing else.* Good. So how would you say *I didn't eat anything else*? *I didn't eat anything else*:

S: **No comí** - *anything*?

T: So we have double negative. So we'll say *I didn't eat nothing else, nothing more*:

S: **No comí nada más.**

T: Good. **No comí nada más.** *I didn't eat anything else.* Good. *Didn't you eat anything else?*

(speaking informally) *Didn't you eat anything else?*:

S: I forgot the informal for past.

T: You have the *s* in there which relates to *you* informal. And you also have the *t* in there,

S: Ah, **comiste**.

T: Good. Which also relates to *you* informal, that *t*, but in a different way. But they're both in there and they will help you remember that ending, **comiste**. *Didn't you eat anything else?:*

S: ¿**No comiste nada más?**

T: Good. ¿**No comiste nada más?** What was *to see*?

S: **Ver**.

T: **Ver**. *I saw*:

S: "Verí." Yeah, sorry, **vi**.

T: **Vi**. Good. You got the ending right. *He saw*:

S: **Vio**.

T: **Vio**. Good. *You saw* (speaking informally):

S: **Viste**.

T: **Viste**. *We saw*:

S: **Vimos**.

T: **Vimos**. And *they saw*:

S: **Vieron**.

T: **Vieron**.

S: The accent's on the /e/.

T: Yes, **vieron**. So that's our set. **Vi, vio, vimos, viste, vieron**. Good. *Didn't you see me last night?*

(speaking informally) *Didn't you see me last night?:*

S: ¿**No me viste anoche?**

T: Good. ¿**No me viste anoche**? *Time* in the sense of occasion, no? - like when we say *once* we mean *one time*. Or when we say *again* we mean *another time* - is **vez**. **Vez**. V-e-z. So in Spain this would sound like /bes/. **Vez**.

S: **Vez**.

T: This is a feminine word, so how would you say *one time* or *once*?

S: **Una vez**.

T: **Una vez**. So how would you say *I saw him once*?

S: **Lo vi una vez**.

T: Good. **Lo vi una vez**. Good. How would you say *I saw them once*?

S: **Los vi una vez**.

T: Good. **Los vi una vez**. *They saw them once*:

S: **Los vieron una vez**.

T: Good. **Los vieron una vez**. How do you think you would say *one more time*, *one more time*, how do you think you would say that?

S: **Una vez más**.

T: Yes, **una vez más**. Good. So you could say something like *I want to see them one more time*. *I want to see them one more time*. How would you say that?

S: **Quiero verlos una vez más**.

T: Good. **Quiero verlos una vez más**. *I want to see them one more time*. *Once more*. What was the word for *we*? The word for *we*:

S: **Nosotros**.

T: **Nosotros**. Good. Now **nosotros** is actually the combination of **nos**, like how we have in *us*, and **otros** which means *others*. So *we* is kind of like *us others*. How would you say *another time*? And you don't say *an other time* in Spanish, you just say *other time*. So you don't need *an*. So *another time*:

S: **Otra vez.**

T: **Otra vez.** Good. We can take this **otros**, we can work backwards to get **otra, otra vez**. So you can use this like *again*. **Otra vez.** *Another time*. So you could say *I want to see them again. I want to see them again*:

S: **Quiero verlos otra vez.**

T: Good. **Quiero verlos otra vez.** What was *to leave* or *to go out*?

S: **Salir.**

T: **Salir.** Good. And what was *to dance*, related to *ballerina*?

S: **Bailar.**

T: **Bailar.** So how would you ask informally, *did you go out to dance again? Did you go out to dance again* (speaking informally)?

S: **¿Saliste a bailar otra vez?**

T: Very good. **Saliste a**, because we have this verb of motion of coming and going. **¿Saliste a bailar otra vez?** Good. What was *to speak*?

S: **Hablar.**

T: **Hablar.** And *I spoke*:

S: **Hablé.**

T: **Hablé.** *He spoke, she spoke, it spoke, you (formal) spoke*:

S: **Habló**

T: **Habló.** *We spoke*:

S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** *You (informal)*:

S: **Hablaste.**

T: **Hablaste.** And *they*:

S: **Hablaron.**

T: **Hablaron.** Well done. *To arrive, to arrive* was **llegar**.

S: **Llegar.**

T: **Llegar.** How would you say *you arrived*, informally?

S: **Llegaste.**

T: **Llegaste.** *Did you arrive late again? Did you arrive late again?:*

S: So ¿**Llegaste tarde otra vez?**

T: Good. ¿**Llegaste tarde otra vez?** *Did you arrive late again?* Good. What was *my house?*

S: **Mi casa.**

T: **Mi casa.** How would you say *he arrived late to my house again?* So *he arrived late to my house again:*

S: **Llegó tarde a mi casa otra vez.**

T: Good. **Llegó tarde a mi casa otra vez.** Or **llegó a mi casa tarde otra vez.** This is ah, flexible. How would you say *he arrived at my house again, wanting to speak with me. He arrived at my house, to my house, again, wanting to speak with me:*

S: **Llegó a mi casa otra vez,**

T: Very good. *Wanting:*

S: Is it **querer**, *to want?*

T: Yes.

S: So, **queriendo. Queriendo hablar conmigo.**

T: Good. **Llegó a mi casa otra vez queriendo hablar conmigo.** So we saw that we don't use the *-ing* in Spanish nearly half as much as we do in English. In English we really overuse the *-ing*, but this is one situation where we do want it, in structures like this. *He arrived at my house again, wanting*



*to speak with me. Llegó a mi casa otra vez queriendo hablar conmigo.* Good. So *my house* is **mi casa**, *your house*, speaking informally, is **tu casa. Tu casa.**

S: **Tu casa.**

T: You might have heard the expression **mi casa es tu casa.** What does that mean?

S: *My house is your house.*

T: If you want to say *at what time*, you say *at what hour*. How would that be?

S: **¿A qué hora?**

T: **Hora.** Here we use **hora.** **¿A qué hora?** Good. So how would you say *at what time did they arrive at your house? To your house? At what time did they arrive at your house?:*

S: **¿A qué hora llegaron a tu casa?**

T: Good. **¿A qué hora llegaron a tu casa?** Very good. *At what time did they arrive at your house or to your house?* Good. If you say **a la vez, a la vez**, it means *at the same time*, like in English when we say *at a time*. **A la vez.** *Two at a time*, we can say in English. This is *at the time, at the same time.* **A la vez.** So you might want to say *everybody arrived at my house at the same time.*

What was the word for *all*?

S: **Todo.**

T: **Todo.** Good. If you make this plural, **todos**, you get *everybody. Everybody*, or you might also hear in Spanish **todo el mundo.** “All the world” to say *everybody*, but **todos** is very common. So *everybody arrived at my house at the same time:*

S: **Todos llegaron a mi casa a la vez.**

T: Good. **Todos llegaron a mi casa a la vez. Todos llegaron a la vez a mi casa.** Flexible. What was *to find* or *to encounter*?

S: **Encontrar.**

T: **Encontrar.** And *I found:*

S: **Encontré.**

T: **Encontré.** *I didn't find anything else in your house. What was your house again?*

S: **Tu casa.**

T: **Tu casa.** *Good. I didn't find anything else, nothing more, in your house. I didn't find anything else in your house:*

S: **No encontré nada más en tu casa.**

T: *Good. I didn't find anything else in your house.* **No encontré nada más en tu casa.** *Good. So we have **mi casa, tu casa.** Now the word for *our* is **nuestro.** *Our house* is **nuestra casa.** **Nuestra casa.** We can see the *o* splitting of **nosotros** there in **nuestro, nuestra.** So that's *our*. So how would you say *did you visit our house?* What is *to visit?* *Visitation:**

S: **Visitación. Visitar.**

T: *Good. So *did you visit our house,* speaking informally:*

S: **¿Visitaste nuestra casa?**

T: *Good. ¿Visitaste nuestra casa? Did you visit our house? How would you say *we are with our friends* - how do you think you would say that, *we are with our friends?* *We are with,* what *to be* do you think we will use?*

S: **Estar.**

T: **Estar** because *we are with,* location. *Good. So *we are with our friends:**

S: **Estamos con nuestros amigos.**

T: *Good. **Nuestros amigos.** Good, you make it plural to match **amigos.** *We are with our friends.**

*What if we meant all female friends?*

S: **Estamos con nuestras amigas.**

T: *Good. **Estamos con nuestras amigas.** How would you say *I am with my friends?* *I am with my friends:**

S: **Estoy con,** is it **mis amigos?**

T: Yes. **Estoy con mis amigos**. So the words for possession, **mi, tu, nuestro** can change for number to match the number: **mi amigo, mis amigos**. And if it ends in *-o* like **nuestro**, it can change for gender as well. **Nuestro amigo, nuestra amiga**. So we have **mi/my, tu/your, nuestro** or **nuestra/our**. For *his/her/their/your* (speaking formally), for all of that, we have the same word which is **su**. **Su**. *S-u*.

S: **Su**.

T: **Su**. So how would you say *I want to go to his house? I want to go to his house*:

S: **Quiero ir a su casa**.

T: Good. **Quiero ir a su casa**. *I want to go to his house*. How would you say *I want to go to their house*?

S: **Quiero ir a su casa**.

T: Good. **Quiero ir a su casa**. So it's the same. If you put it in plural or not refers to the things that are possessed, not the possessors. So avoid any temptation to say **sus**, because you mean *they*. You are only going to say **sus** if you are saying *houses*, for example. So if you were to say *I want to go to their houses*, there you can put it in plural. How would that be?

S: **Quiero ir a sus casas**.

T: Good. **Quiero ir a sus casas**. And *I want to go to his houses, I want to go to his houses*:

S: **Quiero ir a sus casas**.

T: Exactly. The same. **Quiero ir a sus casas**. So these possessive words **mi, tu, nuestro, su**, they refer to the thing being possessed, rather than the possessor when they're changing. If you want to say *my own house*, if you want to say *my own house* or *my very own house*, you can say **mi propia casa**. Like *property*. **Mi propia casa**.

S: **Mi propia casa**.

T: Good. How would you say *my own car*?

S: **Mi propio auto**.

T: Good. **Mi propio auto.** The word for *eye* in Spanish - not I as in *your*, *eye* as in the two things in your head, is **ojo. Ojo. O-j-o. Ojo.**

S: **Ojo.**

T: **Ojo.** How would you say *my own eyes, my own eyes?*

S: **Mi propios ojos.**

T: There's some kind of disagreements going on in there.

S: **Mis. Mis propios ojos.**

T: Good. So, I saw *it with my own eyes. I saw it with my own eyes:*

S: **Lo vi con mis propios ojos.**

T: Good. **Lo vi con mis propios ojos.** Very good. How would you say *I want to live in my own house?*  
*I want to live in my own house:*

S: **Quiero vivir en mi propio casa, mi propia casa.**

T: Good. **Quiero vivir en mi propia casa.** Good. *I want to live in my own house.* Good.

## Track 66

T: So, we are looking a bit at possession now, and how we express that in Spanish. Now, in English we use possessive words: *my, your, his, her*, much more than we do in Spanish. So, it's something we want to look out for. We already saw an example actually, for example, how we would say *I responded him the mail*, rather than *I responded to his mail*. Another example would be how we refer to body parts in Spanish. So you don't say in Spanish, for example, *my leg hurts*, you say *it hurts me the leg*. **Doler, doler**, is *to hurt*. How would you say, firstly, *it hurts me*, from **doler**? *It hurts me*:

S: **Me dolo.**

T: *It hurts me*:

S: **Lo me-**

T: I want you to divide the sentence up and to take control of it, no guessing. *It hurts me*:

S: **Dole.**

T: Good, it would be “**dole**”, but the *o* splits. So, this is an error that's not a problem, you thought it through and you got to “**dole**”, but the *o* splits here.

S: So, **me duele**.

T: **Me duele**. Good. **Me duele**. So, you don't say in Spanish *my leg hurts* – “**mi pierna duele**” – you don't say that, you say *it hurts me the leg, it hurts me the leg*. So, *leg* is **pierna**, how would you say *my leg hurts*?

S: **Me duele la pierna.**

T: Good. **Me duele la pierna**. If you want to say *my leg doesn't hurt anymore*, you can just use *more* for *anymore*. So, what was *more*, again?

S: **Más.**

T: **Más**. So, *my leg doesn't hurt anymore*:

S: **No me duele la pierna más.**

T: Good. Now, the noun, *pain*, is **dolor, dolor**.

S: **Dolor**.

T: If you want to say *I have a headache*, you can just say *I have pain of head* – **dolor de cabeza, dolor de cabeza**. So, how would that be, *I have a headache*?

S: **Tengo dolor de cabeza**.

T: Good. **Tengo dolor de cabeza**. Good. *I had, I was having, pain of head*, so, the line in the past.

S: **Tenía dolor de cabeza**.

T: Good. **Tenía dolor de cabeza**. And of course we can also say **me duele la cabeza** or **me dolía la cabeza** – this would be another way of saying it. So, just as we can say **dolor de cabeza** to say *headache, the ache of the head*. If we want to say *José's house, Maria's house*, in Spanish we will say *the house of Maria, the house of José*. So, how would you say *the house of José, José's house*?

S: **La casa de José**.

T: So, how would you say *we are going to José's house*?

S: **Vamos a la casa de José**.

T: Good. **Vamos a la casa de José**. What if you wanted to say *we are going to Maria's party, we are going to Maria's party*:

S: **Vamos a la fie-**

T: That's correct.

S: **Vamos a la fiesta de María**.

T: Yes. **Vamos a la fiesta de María**. Very good. What was *nobody*?

S: **Nadie**.

T: **Nadie**. And *nobody else* or *nobody more*:

S: **Nadie más**.

T: Good. *I didn't speak with anybody else in Maria's party. I didn't speak with anyone else in Maria's party, I only spoke with you.* So, let's start from the beginning. *I didn't speak:*

S: **No hablé.**

T: *With anybody else:*

S: **Con nadie más.**

T: *In Maria's party:*

S: **En la fiesta de María.**

T: Good. **No hablé con nadie más en la fiesta de María,** *I only spoke with you.* Now, *only* or *just*, that we say a lot in English, *I just spoke with you, I only spoke with you,* in Spanish is **solo, solo.**

So, *I only spoke with you* (speaking informally):

S: **Hablaste,**

T: *I only spoke, with you,* don't let it blend together.

S: **Hablé contigo solo.**

T: Good. Or, more naturally might be **solo hablé contigo.** But **solo** at the end there, it's fine, it just sounds more emphatic, you might want to be emphatic here: **no hablé con nadie más en la fiesta de María, solo hablé contigo. Hablé solo contigo, hablé contigo solo.**

## Track 67

T: I would like to talk a little bit more about writing in Spanish. So, we haven't really looked so much about how to read and write in Spanish, we've spelled some words, we've discussed some sounds and we've looked at convertible words, **convertible** words that we convert over from Latin English into Spanish, and they give us a great idea about how to read and write in Spanish.

For example, if we have a /j/ sound, for example in *general*, how is this pronounced in Spanish?

S: /*kheneral*/.

T: /*kheneral*/. And it's spelled the same. So, there we understand that *g-e* makes /*khe*/ sound without having to learn it formally, we can just look back to these convertible words when we are unsure of how a sound might be pronounced. So, maybe you see *c-e* together and you are like "is that /*se*/ or is that /*ke*/?" But then if you look back to **concentración**, then you have your answer: "con-*cen*": *c-e*, **concentración** gives you your answer. So, apart from the actual sounds we also need to understand where the stress in any given word is when we read it. So, in Spanish, you may have noticed you have written accents, little dashes above some vowels. Now, this isn't like French, for example, where the little dashes might actually change the sound of the vowel. None of that, luckily, is going on in Spanish. The written accent is just showing the stress, but why do we have it sometimes and not other times? So, there is a general rule in Spanish, which is: if the word ends in a vowel, an *n*, or an *s*, the accent should be on the penultimate syllable, on the second last syllable. Now, why do you think vowels and then *n*'s and *s*'s have been singled out for that role, what if you look at our verbs? What do our verb forms end in?

S: Well the "they" end in an *n*.

T: Right.

S: Ah yes, *s* as well.

T: Or?

S: Vowel.

T: Exactly. So, it's what our verbs end in: an *n*, *s*, or vowel. So, Spanish says if a word ends in *n*, *s*, or a vowel, then natural accent will be on the penultimate syllable, the second last syllable.



**Diferente, habla, hablan, hablas, hablamos**, ending *s*, but we are adding two syllables, so still on the second last, **hablamos**. **Importante, adictivo**. Now, if the word ends in any other consonant, any other consonant that's not *n* or *s*, then the natural accent place is to go to the end of the word, and we see this perfectly with any "to" verb. How do you say *to eat*?

S: **Comer**.

T: Accent on the end. **Comer**. *To be*, for states?

S: **Estar**.

T: **Estar**. *To speak*:

S: **Hablar**.

T: **Hablar**. *To find*:

S: **Encontrar**.

T: **Encontrar**. So, this *r* is not an *n* or an *s* or a vowel, and what that means is that the accent is coming on the end. So, these are our natural accents, and if the word obeys the rules of the natural accents, we have no written accent, generally, there's a couple of exceptions which I will mention. So, if there is no written accent, you follow those rules. If it ends *n*, *s*, or vowel, you put the accent on the second last syllable, and if it ends in any other consonant you are putting the accent on the end. But if your word breaks this rule, then you have a written accent to show you where you should be stressing. So, for example, what is *tradition* in Spanish?

S: **Tradición**.

T: **Tradición**. And what are you ending it with? What is the last letter?

S: *n*.

T: And where is the accent?

S: At the end.

T: At the end. Does this break our rule?

S: Yes.

T: So, the /o/ will have a written accent, that last *o* will have a written accent on the end, showing you that you are stressing it. **Tradición**. So, all of these *-ión* words, that all have their accent on the end - **situación, opinión** - they all have a written accent there on the end. So, now I'm gonna tell you some words, that we've come across already, and I want you to tell me if they will have a written accent or not. So, what you need to decide is "are they breaking the accent rule or not".

**Encuentro. Encuentro.** Firstly, what does that mean, **encuentro**?

S: *I encounter.*

T: Good, *I find*. **Encuentro**. Do we have a written accent there?

S: No.

T: No, good. **Encontró**. What does that mean first, **encontró**?

S: I- sorry. *He/she/it* or *you* (formal) *found*.

T: Good. And does it have a written accent?

S: Yes.

T: Yes, because it's breaking the rule, we're ending in a vowel and we have the accent on the end. So, all of these, in that point in the past, are gonna have the accent. **Encontró, habló, llamó, llegó**. Good. **Vive. Vive**. Firstly, what does that mean? **Vive**:

S: *He/she/it/you* (formal) *live*.

T: Good. Does it have an accent?

S: No.

T: Good. **Vivió**:

S: It has an accent.

T: Where?

S: At the *o*.

T: Good. **Vivió** – *he lived, she lived, you (formal) lived, it lived*. **Limón**, what do you think **limón** means?

S: *Lemon*.

T: *Lemon*. Good. Which is a Persian word actually, and it actually was used to talk about citrus fruits generically, generally, and *lime* came from the same word, so *lemon* and *lime* is actually the same word essentially. Does it have an accent, **limón**?

S: Yes.

T: Yes, cause it should be **LI-mon**, right, but it's not, it's **li-MÓN**, it's breaking that rule, so it has a written accent. So, when we are reading Spanish, if the word ends in a vowel, an *n*, or an *s*, we want to put the accent on the penultimate syllable. If it ends in another consonant, we wanna put the accent on the end, unless we are shown with a written accent that the rule is being broken. **Salud** means *health*, related to *salute* in English. **Salud**, and you can say it when you toast. Does it have a written accent?

S: No.

T: No, good, it ends in a *d*, so we expect the accent to be on the end, **salud**. So, usually accents are written to show us that we are breaking the accent rule, but there are some other situations where we have a written accent. One of these situations is when we have words that are monosyllables – words that are just one syllable - and we can differentiate them with a written accent. For example, how was the word for *yes*?

S: **Sí**.

T: And how was the word for *if*?

S: **Si**.

T: **Si**. It's the same word, so *yes* is written with a written accent, and *if* is not. Now this written accent doesn't change the pronunciation, this differentiates them so when you are reading you don't have the ambiguity that could sometimes be caused by "oh, is that a *yes* or an *if*?", both could make sense there, especially because you use *yes* emphatically, in Spanish you can say **sí lo quiero**, *yes I want it*, but if that's written and you don't hear the emphasis, **si lo quiero**, then you might read

*if I want it.* So, to clear up that ambiguity when you have monosyllables - words of one syllable - that are the same, one will take an accent to show the difference. How was *for me*?

S: **Para mí** or **por mí**.

T: Good, very good, either one, depending what *for* you want. Now, how was *my house*?

S: **Mi casa**.

T: **Mi casa**. So, this is different **mi**: one is the **mí** that comes after prepositions – **para mí, por mí, de mí** – and the other one is for possession – *my*. So, **para mí**: there you have the written accent on the **mí** of **para mí**, and you don't have it on **mi casa**, just to show the difference. What was the word for *you*, speaking informally?

S: **Tú**.

T: **Tú**. And what was *your house*?

S: **Tu casa**.

T: **Tu casa**. The word for *you*, **tú**, takes a written accent, but the word for *your* in *your house*, **tu casa**, doesn't. So, monosyllables that are the same are differentiated by accent. *I know*, how do you say *I know*?

S: **Sé**.

T: Yes, this **sé** has a written accent; the **se** of **se lo doy**, *I give it to him*, the **se** of **se queda**, *he remains himself/she remains herself*, doesn't have an accent; only the **sé** of **saber**, *I know*, has one. So, it's something you will pick up reading. Another example where we have accents is to differentiate question words from non-question words when they are the same. For example you have **donde**, what does **donde** mean?

S: *Where*.

T: *Where*. But sometimes **donde** is a question word, like **¿dónde estás?** *Where are you?* There it will go with an accent, but if I say *I'm going to meet him where we saw the football*, this is not a question, so it doesn't have an accent, so Spanish likes to differentiate them as well. But now we are entering quite a bit of detail and many Spanish speakers, when they are writing, make these

mistakes as well and don't put these accents where they should, but I'm explaining just in case you come across **dónde** with an accent and you don't understand why it's there because it's not breaking the accent rule – this is why. So, in the same way we have **como**, which means *how* or *like*, the **cómo** for *how* takes an accent and the **como** for *like* doesn't. So, there are a couple of grammatical examples, when we are having accents just to differentiate words that are the same or to differentiate question words from non-question words, but most of the time they are directing us to break the accenting rules. And it's very easy to remember the accenting rules because we only need to look at the present tense. We know that our verbs end in vowels, *n*'s or *s*'s, and in the present tense we always have the accent on the penultimate syllable without any written accent, with, of course, that one exception, **estar**, where we have **estás**, **están**, **está** and we do have a written accent. So we can look back there at the present tense to remind us that if the word ends *n*, *s*, or vowel, the natural accent is on the penultimate syllable, like the verbs in the present tense, and if it ends in any other letter, the natural accent is on the end of the word. And if we break this rule we show it with a written accent.

## Track 68

T: What was *tonight* in Spanish, *tonight*?

S: **Esta noche.**

T: **Esta noche.** Good, “this night”. And we can use this as a hook to work out the other *this*’s and *that*’s and *these* and *those* that we might need. So, **esta noche**, which tells us that **noche** is what kind of noun, what gender?

S: Feminine.

T: Feminine. Good, and what if you wanted to say *that night*? What do you do to **esta** to get *that*?

S: **Esa.**

T: **Esa.** Good, take away the *t*, good, so *that night*:

S: **Esa noche.**

T: **Esa noche.** And *those nights*:

S: **Esas noches.**

T: **Esas noches.** Good. The word for *man* is **hombre, hombre, h-o-m-b-r-e, hombre.**

S: **Hombre.**

T: Good. How would you say *this man*?

S: **Esta hombre.**

T: You think **hombre** is a feminine word?

S: No. **Este hombre.**

T: **Este hombre.** Good. *That man*:

S: **Ese hombre.**

T: Good. You can also say **el hombre este, el hombre ese**, to say *this man* or *that man* in Spanish, which might be a structure taken from Arabic, because in Arabic you don’t really have *to be* in the

present tense, so you can't say *this man*, because you would understand from it that *this is a man*, so in Arabic it's the same: *alrajul hdha - el hombre este*. As I mentioned before when languages come into contact, like the eight hundred years between Spanish and Arabic, they don't just share vocabulary. How would you say *these men*?

S: **Estos hombres.**

T: Good. **Estos hombres.** So, with **este** we have the /e/ of **el, el hombre, este hombre**, and with **estos** we have the -os of **los, los hombres, estos hombres, these men**. How about *those men*?

S: **Esos hombres.**

T: **Esos hombres.** Good. So, this means that we have **este** and **esta** for *this*, when we are referring to a masculine noun or a feminine noun. But sometimes we say this just generally, *oh, I can't believe this*, we don't mean a specific noun when we say *I can't believe this*, so we have like a neuter *this*, that is not masculine or feminine, and that one is **esto**. So, **creer** is to *believe*, **creer**, with two e's. How would you say *I don't believe this*?

S: **No creo esto.**

T: Good. **No creo esto.** Good. *I don't believe this*. How would you say *I don't like anything more than this*? In Spanish we will say *nothing pleases me more than this, nothing pleases me more than this, I don't like anything more than this*:

S: **Nada me gusta más que esto.**

T: Good. **Nada me gusta más que esto.** How would you say *nothing pleased me more than that? I didn't like anything more than that, nothing pleased me more than that*:

S: **Nada me gusta-**

T: *Nothing pleased me:*

S: **Nada me gustó más que eso.**

T: Good. **Nada me gustó más que eso.** *Nothing pleased me more than that, I didn't like anything more than that.* **Nada me gustó más que eso.** **Tan, tan**, in Spanish means *so*, like in the sense of *so tired*, **tan**. *T-a-n*. How would you say *so tired*?

S: **Tan cansado.**

T: Good. So, how would you say *I was so tired*, and we mean a line in time?

S: **Estaba tan cansado.**

T: And you being feminine?

S: **Cansada.**

T: Good. **Estaba tan cansada.** What if you wanted to say *we were so tired that we slept all day*? So, first bit is *we were so tired*, let's be a masculine or mixed group, *we were so tired*:

S: **Estábamos tan cansado- cansados.**

T: Good. **Estábamos tan cansados**, *that we slept all day*. So what is this *that*?

S: **Que.**

T: **Que. Estábamos tan cansados que** *we slept all day*. Now, *all day* is "all the day", you remember how is *day*?

S: **Día.**

T: **Día.** And *the day*:

S: **La día.**

T: It would be, but-

S: **El día.**

T: **El día.** It ends in *a*, but it's masculine. So, *all day* is "all the day", how would it be?

S: **Toda-**

T: It's masculine.

S: **Todo el día.**

T: *We were so tired that we slept all day, we were so tired that we slept all day*:

S: **Estábamos tan cansados que dormimos todo el día.**



T: Very good. **Estábamos tan cansados que dormimos todo el día.** So **dormimos** could be *we slept* or *we sleep*, we know it's the same in the present, but **estábamos tan cansados** gives us our context, so we understand that of course it refers to past, **estábamos tan cansados que dormimos todo el día.** How would you say *we were so tired when we arrived that we slept all day?* So, *we were so tired:*

S: **Estábamos tan cansados.**

T: *When we arrived:*

S: **Cuando llegamos.**

T: *That we slept all day:*

S: **Que dormimos todo el día.**

T: Good. **Estábamos tan cansados cuando llegamos que dormimos todo el día.** So, here in this sentence we have **llegamos** and **dormimos** that could be past or present, but **estábamos** brings us into the context right from the beginning, **estábamos tan cansados cuando llegamos que dormimos todo el día.** So, we said that *when* was:

S: **Cuándo.**

T: **Cuándo.** And *how much* is **cuánto**, with a *t*, **cuánto.**

S: **Cuánto.**

T: **Cuánto.** How do you say *again*, like *another time?*

S: **Otra vez.**

T: **Otra vez.** Good. So, you could say *how many times*, how would that be? *How many times:*

S: **Cuántos veces- Cuántas veces?**

T: **Cuántas veces.** Good. We know it's feminine, because we said **otra vez**, and not **otro vez**. So, we can, if we have a word like **vez** where it's not obvious what is the gender, we need to look back to somewhere that we used it – **otra vez**, oh, ok, it's feminine, **cuántas veces**, good. How would you say *I don't know how many times I visited him?* *I don't know how many times I visited him:*

S: **No sé cuántas veces.**

T: *I visited him:*

S: **Lo visité.**

T: **No sé cuántas veces lo visité.** *I don't know how many times they visited him, I don't know how many times they visited him:*

S: **No sé cuántas veces los visitaron-** oh, *him-* **lo visitaron.**

T: Good. **No sé cuántas veces lo visitaron.** And what if you wanted to say *I don't know how many times they visited her?*

S: **No sé cuántas veces la visitaron.**

T: Good. **No sé cuántas veces la visitaron.**

## Track 69

T: So now we have a panorama of times in Spanish. We've seen all of the different times. We can find *will*, *would*, the present, the pasts, the *have* tenses. Maybe some of these we are clearer on than others, but we've learned how to find what we might think we don't know and how to analyze the language, so that through listening to Spanish we can reinforce the language that we've learned and bring it to the surface and pick up again anything that we might have forgotten along the way. But there is one more tense to learn in Spanish. One more very important tense in Spanish, and personally it's my favorite thing about Spanish. In Spanish we have what we can call a mood tense, the subjunctive tense in grammatical terminology, but we will call it the mood tense because it's a tense that just shows mood. Now, you might be interested to hear that we also have it in English. Now, we don't use it as much in English as we do in Spanish but it is there. For example, in English you can say *it is important that you are here* or *it is important that you be here*. So, *it's important that you are here* sounds more everyday, let's say, more casual. *It's important that you be here*; that gives us a different feeling. It feels more serious, it feels more imperative. How are we achieving that feeling? We're using *be* instead of *you are*. We are using *you be*. *It's important that you be here*. Another example of how English uses this mood, I might say *had I gone, I would know*. *Had I gone, I would know*. Now, *had I*, that inversion of *I had* to *had I* usually is to make a question. *Had you gone already?* for example. But here it's not a question. *Had I gone, I would know*. Here we are creating a mood tense. We are saying if *I had gone* with *had I gone*. We also say *not only is it*, for example, *not only is it a problem, it's the biggest problem*. *Not only is it*, again, *is it* is what we do to make a question. But here it's not a question. *Not only is it a problem, it's the biggest problem*. So the changing of the order of *is* and *it* gives us this mood tense here in English as well. So we don't need to analyze too much how it works in English, because there's not so much correlation between English and Spanish about how it works. It's used much more extensively in Spanish. But the idea is not completely alien to us. In Spanish, it's a very common thing that will allow you and oblige you to perceive and to express the world in a certain way. Now, to form the mood tense, to form the subjunctive tense in Spanish, is very easy, and we don't need to learn any new sounds to do it. All we do is we switch between the verbs. With *-ar* verbs we will use the *-er/-ir* endings, and with *-er/-ir* verbs we will use the *-ar* verb endings. And that's how we build this tense. So, for example, how is *to speak*?

S: **Hablar.**

T: And how is *he speaks*?

S: **Hablá.**

T: **Habla.**

S: Sorry, **habla. Habla.**

T: **Habla.** Good. The accent there at the beginning. **Habla.** Now if you want to make this the mood tense, we will switch groups. We we will switch groups. Verbs from the *-ar* group use *-er/-ir* endings, and verbs from the *-er/-ir* group use *-ar* endings. So how would you make **habla** in the mood tense?

S: **Hable.**

T: **Hable.** Good. So you have *they speak*:

S: **Hablan.**

T: **Hablan.** And the mood tense version will be?

S: **Hablen.**

T: **Hablen.** Good. How is *I speak*?

S: **Hablo.**

T: **Hablo.** Of course if we go from **hablo** in the *-ar* group and we go to *-er/-ir* we will still have **hablo**. We will change an *o* for an *o*. So we don't do that. **Hablo** will also become **hable**. So again we have a situation where *I* jumps in with *he, she, it, and you* (formal). So **hable** can also be the mood tense for *I*. What is *we speak*?

S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** And the mood tense of *we speak*:

S: **Hablemos.**

T: **Hablemos**. Good. We are using the /e/, not that odd *i* that pops up with the *-ir* verbs in the present like **vivimos, salimos**. *-emos* for the mood tense. **Hablemos**. What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer**.

T: **Comer**. *I eat*:

S: **Como**.

T: **Como**. But the mood tense version would be?

S: **Coma**.

T: Good. **Coma**. And what else can **coma** mean, then?

S: *He/she/it* version of the mood tense.

T: Good, and *you* (formal). Very good. *They eat*, normal tense, present tense?

S: **Comen**.

T: **Comen**. And the mood tense?

S: **Coman**.

T: **Coman**. Good. So it's going to be great to practice this mood tense, because of course you have to first think what the verb should be, and then you switch it. So we're going to have a nice practice mentally, in our mental exercises, of the tenses that we already learned whilst we are building the mood tense. So the use of the mood tense we can divide between obligatory and optional. There are some situations in which we absolutely must use the mood tense, otherwise it will be considered an error. It will sound incorrect and distract from what we are saying. And then there are cases where the use of the mood tense is optional. You can use it to give a different meaning or a different flavor or a different feeling, which is the much more exciting area, where it's optional. But the obligatory uses will allow us a very important exposure to the feeling of the mood tense. So now we're going to look at some examples. In English when you say *I want you to wait*, *I want you to wait*, this is quite a peculiar structure in English. And it's not really translated in this way in many other languages. *I want you to wait*. In most other Romance languages, at least, it's translated as *I want that you wait*. This is how we would say it in French or Portuguese or Italian.

So *I want you to wait* is *I want that you wait*. Now, this *you wait* is going to be in the mood tense. When we are expressing what we want in this way, we will use the mood tense. We are putting our subjectivity onto the world when we say *I want that* and following this *that*, we will use the mood tense. So how would you say *I want you to wait*? *I want that you wait* (informally):

S: So *I want* remains the same and it's **quiero**. *That* is **que**. And then *you wait* becomes **espere**.

Sorry, **esperes**.

T: Good. All together, *I want that you wait*:

S: **Quiero que esperes**.

T: Good. **Quiero que esperes**. Ah? So if you say **quiero que esperas**, here it would be considered an error. This is an obligatory use of the subjunctive, of the mood tense. **Quiero que esperes**. *I want you to wait for him*, or *I want you to wait for it*:

S: **Quiero que lo esperes**.

T: Good. **Quiero que lo esperes**. *I want you to wait for it or for him*. Very good. *Do you want me to wait?* So first let's find the in-between sentence. Give it to me in English, how we will say it in Spanish. *Do you want me to wait?:*

S: *Do you want that I wait for you?*

T: You made it more complicated. *It's just do you want that I wait?* But, let's put it. So *do you want me to wait for you?* Give me that one. *Do you want me to wait for you?* And let's speak informally.

S: **¿Quieres que te espere?**

T: Very good. **¿Quieres que te espere?** And of course this could mean: *Do you want me to wait for you? Do you want him to wait for you? Do you want her to wait for you?* So if we wanted to clarify *I*, how would we do that? *Do you want me to wait for you?:*

S: **¿Quieres que yo te espere?**

T: Very good. **¿Quieres que yo te espere?**

## Track 70

T: What was the word for *what*?

S: **Qué.**

T: **Qué.** *What*, when it's not a question, is **lo que, lo que.**

S: **Lo que.**

T: For example, if you want to say *I saw what you're doing*, this is not a question, no? *I saw what you're doing.* Here, the *what* is not a question. Here it's **lo que.** *I cooked what they're eating. I cooked what they're eating.* Here, *what* is not a question, no? **Yo cociné, I cooked, lo que comen,** or **lo que están comiendo** if we mean right now. So, *what* not as a question is **lo que.** How would you say *I don't want you to speak about what we spoke about* - but you know we don't need this *about.* So the first bit is *I don't want you to speak*, and let's speak informally. *I don't want you to speak, I don't want that you speak:*

S: **No quiero que hables.**

T: Very good. **No quiero que hables.** *About:*

S: Is it **de**?

T: **De,** you could use, or you could use?

S: **Sobre.**

T: **Sobre.** Good. So, **no quiero que hables de,** or **sobre** *what we spoke about*, and we can just say *what we spoke:*

S: **Lo que hablamos.**

T: Yes. It's the same in the past. So give it to me now all together. *I don't want you to speak about what we spoke about.* From the beginning and thinking it through again.

S: **No quiero que hables sobre lo que hablamos.**

T: Good. **No quiero que hables sobre lo que hablamos,** or **no quiero que hables de lo que hablamos.** Good. But that sentence could be ambiguous, no? I mean, in your mind, when you're

creating this sentence you will have the context very strongly in your mind that you're thinking about what we spoke about the other day. But that doesn't necessarily mean that the person receiving it has that same context in their mind. They might, depends what your conversation is about. But if you don't have a context that's shared, it could be ambiguous. You could understand *I don't want you to speak about what we speak about generally*. Because of course we have **hablamos**, which can be past or present. **No quiero que hables sobre lo que hablamos**. Generally. So there's two ways here that you could clarify. You could add something like *the other day, el otro día*. **No quiero que hables sobre lo que hablamos el otro día**. So you are showing with some time expression that it was past. Or you could use the line in the past. *What we were speaking about*. Because here it's interchangeable, the meaning changes so slightly and both meanings are fine, no? If we look at English, *I don't want you to speak about what we were speaking about*. *I don't want you to speak about what we spoke about*. So maybe here in Spanish you choose the line in the past just so it's obvious that you're talking about the past. So let's give it another go, using the line in the past. *I don't want you to speak about what we were speaking about*. *I don't want you to speak* (informally still):

S: **No quiero que hables sobre lo que hablábamos**.

T: Very good. **No quiero que hables sobre lo que hablábamos**. *Necessity* in Spanish is – do you remember what to do with *-ity* words to make them Spanish?

S: *-idad*.

T: Good. So *necessity* becomes:

S: **Necesidad**.

T: **Necesidad**. *To need* is **necesitar**.

S: **Necesitar**.

T: Good. How would you say *I need*?

S: **Necesito**.

T: **Necesito**. *I need you to prepare it*. Let's speak formally. *I need you to prepare it* (formally):

S: In English again it would be *I need that you prepare it*.



T: Exactly.

S: **Necesito que lo prepare.**

T: Very good. **Necesito que lo prepare.** This is to *you*, formally. If you wanted to make it clear that you are speaking to *you* and not speaking about *him* or *her*, how would you do that here? *I need you to prepare it:*

S: **Necesito que usted lo prepare.**

T: Very good. **Necesito que usted lo prepare. Necesito que lo prepare usted.** Very good. So with **quiero que, necesito que**, we're seeing two things that they have in common. We have a verb like **quiero, necesito**, a verb that's showing what we want to occur in the world, expressing our subjectivity, let's say, in this way, and we have the structural similarity that the mood tense is coming after **que**. *To be short of, to be short of, to be missing, to lack*, is **faltar**. Quite uncomfortable translations, but this is a very common verb in Spanish. **Faltar**. It's used very often, this verb in Spanish. For example, you could say *I need you to prepare what's missing. I need you to prepare what's missing. What's left over, what we need to do still*, ah? So again, formally, *I need you to prepare:*

S: **Necesito que prepare.**

T: Good. *What's missing.*

S: **Lo que falta.**

T: **Necesito que prepare lo que falta.** And **lo que** because the *what* here is not a question. Very good. The noun is also used quite often. The noun is **falta, la falta**. So **falta** means *lack, lack*. So if I say **falta de consideración**, what does it mean? **Falta de consideración:**

S: Oh, right. *Lack of consideration.*

T: Good. *Lack of consideration.* It's also used with *respect*, **falta de respeto, lack of respect**. And it's also used in the expression **hace falta**. "It makes lack." "It makes lack." Which is just another way of saying *it's necessary*, but it's very common. And **hace falta que** of course is followed by this mood tense in the same way that we do with **quiero que, necesito que**, we will follow it with this

mood tense. So, if you wanted to say, using **hace falta**, *it is necessary that we eat soon*, what was the word for *soon*?

S: Is it **pronto**, or is that Italian?

T: That's it. In Italian, actually, it means *ready*, **pronto**. This is why when Italians answer the phone, they say **pronto**, because historically, let's say, there was an operator there connecting the wires. And they were there going *ready? Are you ready? Is it ready? Can you hear me?* But in Spanish it's *soon*. Like the British slang. People say in England *get here pronto, get here soon*. So *it makes lack*, **hace falta**, *it makes lack that we eat soon*:

S: Sorry, can you explain again how, why does that make sense? *It makes lack that we eat soon*?

T: *It makes lack* would be the literal translation, but literal translations are often uncomfortable, no? Especially when we're talking about fixed expressions. So **hace falta** is an extremely common expression, quite difficult to translate comfortably. Just another way of saying *it's necessary*. So *it makes lack* or **hace falta** *that we eat soon*. How would it be?

S: **Hace falta que comamos pronto.**

T: **Hace falta que comamos pronto.** So **hace falta** you will hear around a lot, and **falta** as a noun, you will hear it especially in phrases like **falta de respeto**, *a lack of respect*, you hear that a lot. And **faltar** as a verb, *to lack*, or *to be missing* is also very useful. *To prefer* in Spanish is **preferir**. **Preferir.**

S: **Preferir.**

T: **Preferir.** How is *I prefer*?

S: **Prefero.**

T: It should be.

S: **Prefiero.**

T: Better. **Prefiero.** Good. So again if you say *I prefer him to stay*, you're not going to say *I prefer him to stay*, we will say *I prefer that he stays*, and what are we going to do with *he stays*? I think you're getting the gist now.

S: Mood tense.

T: Mood tense. So it's not just the structures that we are identifying, it's the feeling. This is very important for the mood tense. What you want to really get your head around is the feeling of the mood tense, so you can start experimenting about where you would use it and listening out for where you hear people using it. *I prefer that he stays, I prefer for him to stay, I prefer that he stays:*

S: **Prefiero que se queda.** Sorry, **quede.**

T: Good. **Prefiero que se quede.** *I prefer them to stay, I prefer for them to stay:*

S: **Prefiero que se queden.**

T: **Prefiero que se queden.** *I prefer that they don't stay here. I prefer that they don't stay here. I prefer for them not to stay here:*

S: **Prefiero que se – que no se queden aquí.**

T: Good. **Prefiero que no se queden aquí.** Very good. How would you say *I prefer you to give it to him? I prefer you, speaking informally, to give it to him:*

S: So it's *I prefer that you give it to him?*

T: Exactly.

S: **Prefiero que lo le – ah, se lo des.**

T: That's it. Good. **Prefiero que se lo des.** So this could mean *I prefer you to give it to him, to her,* how would we clarify it? If we want to show it's *to him. I prefer you to give it to him:*

S: **Prefiero que se lo des a él.**

T: Very good. And what if it was to her?

S: **A ella. Prefiero que se lo des a ella.**

T: **Good. Prefiero que se lo des a ella.** Very good. So to clarify we can then say **a él, a ella,** to show afterwards who we meant with **se.**

## Track 71

T: *To count* in Spanish is **contar, contar**.

S: **Contar**.

T: **Contar**. We can see that it's the same word, but it's also *to recount*, like in English how you say *to recount a story*. So, **contar**, you can also use it like *to tell*, especially with telling stories. How would you say *I tell*?

S: I'm tempted to say **cuento**.

T: **Cuento**, you would be correct, **cuento**, good, the *o* splits. So, **cuento** is *I tell*, and **cuento** is the noun, meaning *story*, **un cuento** is *a story*. So, we can see how **contar** is *to count*, but also *to recount* or another verb for *to tell*. *C-o-n-t-a-r*. So, how would you say *I want you to tell me, I want you to recount to me* (informally)?

S: **Quiero que me cuentes**.

T: Good. **Quiero que me cuentes**. *I want you to tell me something* and speaking plurally now, speaking to more than one *you*:

S: **Quiero que me cuenten algo**.

T: Good. **Quiero que me cuenten algo**. *To count on, to count on*, in the sense of *you can count on me, to count on* is **contar con**, so, "to count with" in Spanish. So, how would you say *I want you to count on me? I want you to count on me* (speaking informally):

S: **Quiero que cuentes con mi- conmigo**.

T: Good. **Quiero que cuentes conmigo**. Good. *I want you to count on me*. **Quiero que cuentes conmigo**. Very good. So, we said that sometimes, between English and Spanish, that the prepositions might change, we say *to count on* in English and in Spanish *to count with*. We also spoke about how we can use the negative language transfer of Spanish speakers speaking English, that may make some mistake and we can make certain assumptions about Spanish through that. So, maybe we hear a native Spanish speaker speaking English, saying *you can count with me*, and if we hear that a couple of times we can understand that that's probably how it's said in Spanish.

So, we can take advantage of any negative language transfer we may hear from Spanish speakers in English. What was *to wait* or *to hope*?

S: **Esperar.**

T: **Esperar.** So, if you say *I hope that*, then of course you will also follow this up with our mood tense. So, how would you say *I hope that you count on me* (informally)?

S: **Espero que cuentes conmigo.**

T: Good. **Espero que cuentes conmigo.** *I hope that you count on me.* Good. How would you say *We hope that they count on Maria?* *We hope that they count on Maria:*

S: **Esperamos que cuenten con María.**

T: Good. **Esperamos que cuenten con María.** *We hope that they count on Maria.* What if you wanted to say *we hope that they tell Maria it*, using **contar**? So now we're using **contar**, *to count*, like *to recount*, *we hope that they recount it to Maria*, *we hope that they tell it to Maria:*

S: **Esperamos que lo cuenten a María.**

T: Very good. **Esperamos que lo cuenten a María.** So, here we have the other meaning of **contar**, *to recount*, *to tell*. What was *to see*?

S: **Ver.**

T: **Ver.** So, if we say, for example, *we hope that they see Maria*, what is *they see* in the present?

S: **Ven.**

T: **Ven.** Now, if you want to make the mood tense and you switch to the other side you would get “van”, which would probably cause, especially in the optional uses of the mood tense, a lot of confusion, because “van” sounds like-

S: Like *they are going*.

T: Yes, so, we actually build the mood tense on the *I* form, which was the only irregular form of **ver** in the present. Do you remember how to say *I see*?

S: **Veo.**

T: **Veo.** So, we kept the *e*. So, the mood tense is based on this version to avoid any ambiguity that might be caused with **va**, **vas**, **van**. So, how would you say *I hope that they see, I hope that they see*:

S: **Espero que vean.**

T: Good. **Espero que vean.** Now, if you want to say *I hope that they see Maria*, we will say **a María**. Now the literal translation doesn't make any sense: *I hope that they see to Maria*. In Spanish we have this personal **a**, that we use when we are referring to somebody that we are doing the action of the verb to. So, in this case the person that we are doing the action of *seeing* to, **espero que vean a María**. The reason for this is that the order in Spanish is quite flexible, words like **María** can come before the verb or after the verb, which might cause confusion about whether Maria is doing or being done to, whether **David** is doing or being done to. So, when it's being done to, we include this **a**, and when there is not any other preposition there that shows us that we are doing it to, so we saw already, for example, **contar con María**, there we don't need the **a**, but if there is no other preposition we will have to put that **a**. So, let's practice this. What is *to understand*?

S: **Comprender.**

T: **Comprender.** So, how would you say, *I hope that you, speaking informally, I hope that you understand David? David. I hope that you understand David*:

S: **Espero que comprendas a David.**

T: Good. **Espero que comprendas a David.** How would you say the same sentence speaking formally? *I hope that you, formally, I hope that you understand David*:

S: **Espero que comprenda a David.**

T: Good. **Espero que comprenda a David.** Now, we can see why this **a** is important, because if it weren't there, if we were to say **espero que comprenda David**, it would sound like *I hope that David understands*, because David is flexible: **espero que David comprenda, espero que comprenda David** would both mean *I hope that David understands*. So, to make it clear, this habit formed in Spanish of putting the **a** there. For example, the word for *man* was? Begins with a silent *h*.

S: **Hombre.**

T: **Hombre.** *The man:*

S: **El hombre.**

T: **El hombre.** If you say *to the man*, “**a el hombre**”, **a** and **el**, they stick together and they form **al**, and it’s written like this: *a-l, al hombre*. So, if you were to say *I want him to see the man, I want that he sees the man, I want that he sees to the man*, so how would that be?

S: **Quiero que va-**

T: We go from **veo**, to avoid that ambiguity.

S: **Vea. Quiero que vea al hombre.**

T: Good. **Quiero que vea al hombre.** But if you were to say: *I want the man to see, I want that the man sees:*

S: **Quiero que el hombre vea.**

T: **Quiero que el hombre vea.** Or **quiero que vea el hombre.** So, because the order is flexible, we can’t just put **el hombre** afterwards and understand from that *I want that he sees the man*. If we put **el hombre** afterwards we will still understand *I want that the man sees*. So, we need to say **al hombre**. What was *I like, it pleases me?*

S: **Me gusta.**

T: **Me gusta.** So, you could say *I like that the teacher visits*, and here we will use the mood tense after *I like that*, because again you are casting your subjectivity onto the world and you show that with this mood tense. *I like that the teacher visits. The teacher, we say the professor*, so how is that?

S: **El profesor.**

T: Good, or for female, for feminine?

S: **La profesora.**

T: Very good. So, either one. *I like that the teacher visits:*

S: **Me gusta que la profesora visite.**

T: Very good. **Me gusta que la profesora visite** or **me gusta que visite la profesora**, the order is flexible. Now, if you wanted to say *I like that she visits the teacher*, how would that be?

S: **Me gusta que visite la profesora.**

T: So I still understand from this sentence: *I like that the teacher visits*, because the order, the word order is not changing the information for us, because the word order is flexible. So, **me gusta que visite la profesora**, *I like that the teacher visits*. But, if we want to make it understood *I like that he visits the teacher*, how are we going to clear that up?

S: **Me gusta que visite a la profesora.**

T: Good. **Me gusta que visite a la profesora.** Very good. So, to clarify, it's not just when there might be some ambiguity that we have to use this personal **a**, we always need to use this **a** when the human that we mention is having the action of the verb done to them and there is no other preposition present. Now, I say *the* human, not *a* human, because it's when we refer to a specific person, and whilst this personal **a** is generally used with humans, we might also see it as a way of personifying non-humans, so some people use it with pets, for example, or it can be used in some creative ways, for example, **a la muerte, escapar a la muerte**, to escape death, and using this personal **a** in this expression personifies death, but generally speaking, we will use it with humans, and with specific humans, when we are referring to a specific person. So, for example, *I need to find the plumber* – there we would use the personal **a**, *I need to find a plumber* – there we wouldn't. So, it's important to listen out for it and to analyze, when you hear it, to understand why it was used, and this is the way we internalize this kind of quite specific details that we find in language. And the reason why I keep stressing the importance of listening is to practice this thinking process, to practice analyzing the language and becoming our own teachers. This is how language becomes something fascinating and pleasant to learn instead of frustrating and painful.



## Track 72

T: Another place where we use this mood tense is when we are giving orders to each other, most of the time, with just one exception which we will look at, we are using this mood tense to give orders. For example, if you wanted to say informally *don't speak*, you will just say *you don't speak*, but you will put it in this mood tense. So, how would you say that, *don't speak*?

S: **No hables.**

T: **No hables.** Good. *Don't speak.* **No hables.** How would you say *don't stay*, *don't stay*, still speaking informally, so you need to say *you don't stay*, and then you just switch the ending. So, let's build it up together, how do you say *you don't stay*?

S: **No te quedas.**

T: **No te quedas.** So, this is *you don't stay*. But, if you want to make this *don't stay*, then you will use this mood tense.

S: **No te quedes.**

T: **No te quedes.** And then it sounds like *Don't stay! No te quedes. Don't stay here:*

S: **No te quedes aquí.**

T: Good. **No te quedes aquí.** The word for *there* is **ahí**, **ahí**, spelled *a-h-í*, and there also exists **allí**, spelled with double *l*, there's a tiny, even imperceivable difference between **ahí** *a-h-í* and **allí** *a-l-l-i*. How would you say *don't stay there*, informally?

S: **No te quedes ahí.**

T: Good. **No te quedes ahí.** Good. How would you say *don't give it*, speaking informally? *Don't give it:*

S: **No des... No lo des.**

T: **No lo des.** *Don't give it to him:*

S: **No lo des a él.**

T: Now, if you put a **él** it's going to be for clarification purposes, in which case it will be a repetition of something else.

S: **No se lo des.**

T: **No se lo des.** Good. **No se lo des.** *Don't give it to him.* What if you wanted to show, clarify or emphasize that it's *to him*?

S: **No se lo des a él.**

T: Good. **No se lo des a él.** What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer.**

T: **Comer.** Now, speaking to more than one person, how would you say: *Eat!* How would you tell more than one person to eat?

S: **Coman.**

T: **Coman.** Good. So, how would you say: *Wait!*, talking to more than one person?

S: **Esperen.**

T: Good. **Esperen.** Now, if you want to say *Wait for me*, we know already we don't use *for*, we just say *me*, **me**. With positive commands, when you're telling somebody to do something rather than not to do something, we have these little words like **me** or **lo**, breaking the rules that we learned so far about their position – they will come after the changed verb, only with positive commands. This helps our ear tune into the fact that it's a command. Because other than that vowel changing, which is a very small change which might be quite hard to pick up audibly, we also have these small little words like **me** or **lo** coming after the verb and that also helps our ear tune into the fact that it's a command. So, if you want to say to this more than one person, to this plural *you*, *wait for me*, *await me*, how will it sound?

S: **Espérenme.**

T: **Espérenme.** Good. And it's written like one word as well. **Espérenme.** How would you say *wait for it*, or *wait for him*, still to more than one person?

S: **Espérenlo.**

T: **Espérenlo.** *Wait for them.*

S: **Espérenlos.**

T: **Espérenlos.** But, if you were to say *don't wait for them*, then we don't have it on the end, this is a negative command. So, *don't wait for them*, still to more than one person:

S: **No los esperen.**

T: Very good. **No los esperen.** How would you say, speaking formally, *eat*:

S: **Coma.**

T: **Coma.** Good. *Eat it:*

S: **Cómalo.**

T: **Cómalo.** Good, so we have the **lo** on the end, but if you were to say *don't eat it*, still speaking formally:

S: **No lo coma.**

T: Good. **No lo coma.** And speaking informally?

S: **No lo comas.**

T: **No lo comas.** And speaking to more than one person?

S: **No lo coman.**

T: **No lo coman.** But, if we wanted to say *eat it*, speaking to more than one person, positive command, *eat it:*

S: **Cómanlo.**

T: **Cómanlo.** Very good. *To forget* was **olvidar, olvidar.**

S: **Olvidar.**

T: **Olvidar.** Related to *oblivion* in English actually, *oblivion* means like a state of complete forgetting, so we can see the connection there between *oblivion* and **olvidar**. **Olvidar** – *to forget*. Or **olvidarse**, either, it can be either because **olvidar** is a verb where we need to say what is being

forgotten, we need to say it, so if we use *it* we have no problem, **lo olvido**, but if we want to just say *I forget*, then we have a problem, because we are not saying *what*, so we need to say *I forget myself*, **me olvido**, so it's a verb that doesn't like to be alone. So, how would you say *forget it*, speaking formally, *forget it*:

S: **Olvídelo.**

T: **Olvídelo.** Good. Now, if you just want to say *forget*, and we don't want to say *it*, this verb doesn't like to be alone, so there we would say *forget yourself*, so how would this be, still formally:

S: **Olvídese.**

T: Very good. **Olvídese.** How would you say *don't forget it*, speaking informally, *don't forget it*?

S: **No lo olvides.**

T: Good. **No lo olvides.** But, if we don't want to put the **lo**, we can just say *don't forget yourself*, *don't forget*, so how would that be?

S: **No te olvides.**

T: Good. **No te olvides.** Or we could do both, we could say **no te lo olvides**, we could put both, **no te lo olvides**. How would you say to more than one person *don't forget*, *you guys don't forget*?

S: **No se olviden.**

T: Good. **No se olviden.** *Don't forget it*, still to plural:

S: **No lo olviden.**

T: **No lo olviden.** Good. Or **no se lo olviden**, you could put them both, meaning doesn't really change. How would you say *let's not forget it*, how do you think that would be? *Let's not forget it*:

S: **No lo olvidemos.**

T: Good. **No lo olvidemos.** **No lo olvidemos.** But if you didn't want to say *it*, and you just wanted to say *let's not forget*, how would you say it?

S: **No nos olvidemos.**

T: **No nos olvidemos.** Good. What was *to buy*?

S: **Comprar.**

T: **Comprar.** How would you say, to more than one person, *buy what is missing, what lacks, what is necessary*? So, what was this *missing, lacks, necessary* verb?

S: **Faltar.**

T: Good. **Faltar.** So, speaking to more than one person, *buy what is missing, what is necessary, what lacks*:

S: **Compren que- que lo.**

T: **Lo que.**

S: **Compren lo que falta.**

T: Good. **Compren lo que falta.** You could also say **compren lo que hace falta**, *buy what is making lack*, you will hear that as well. So, we are using the mood tense to make commands, with one exception. The one exception is with positive informal commands. So, what that means is when we are speaking informally and we are telling somebody *to* do something, rather than *not* to do something. The reason why we don't use the mood tense here is because we want a shortcut, it's what we do most, to tell people informally what to do. If you think about it, all day you are saying *wait here, buy this, call me later, do that and the other*, it's such common speech that it seemed a bit heavy to use the mood tense for this. So, Spanish took a shortcut, and the shortcut is just dropping the *s* of the *you* form of the verb. So, for example, we have **comprar**, *to buy*. *You buy*, informally, is:

S: **Compras.**

T: **Compras.** Now, to make the order, the positive order, we just drop the *s* and we get:

S: **Compra.**

T: **Compra.**

S: Which is the same as the *he/she/it-*

T: It's the same as the *he/she/it* form, but it will never cause really any ambiguity for two reasons. Firstly, your tone of voice when you are making an order, the context is always very present, and also because we'll be putting our small words, like **lo**, **me**, **la**, after the verb, with the positive orders at least, so it's very obviously an order. But we want to think it through this way, that we are taking off the *s*, so we keep the association with *you* informal. So, we have *to buy*, **comprar**; *you buy*, informally, **compras**; then we want to make an order, which is "get rid of the *s*", and we say **compra**. How would you say *buy it*, talking informally?

S: **Cómpralo**.

T: **Cómpralo**. *Buy me it*:

S: **Cómpramelo**.

T: **Cómpramelo**. Good. What was *to forget*?

S: **Olvidar**.

T: **Olvidar**. How would you say *forget it*, talking informally?

S: **Olvida**.

T: Good, but we need to say what we are forgetting with this one.

S: **Olvidalo**.

T: **Olvidalo**. And if we don't want to say the **lo**, we can say:

S: **Olvídate**.

T: **Olvídate**. Good. What was *to eat*?

S: **Comer**.

T: **Comer**. Let's say *eat it*, informally:

S: **Cómelo**.

T: **Cómelo**. Good. But, *don't eat it*, still informally:

S: **No lo come**.

T: So, it's just the positive commands that we have this shortcut, when we go to negative, we want to use the mood tense.

S: **No lo comas.**

T: **No lo comas.** Good. How would you say *eat it*, speaking formally? Formally:

S: **Cómalo.**

T: **Cómalo.** Good. *Don't eat it*, still formally:

S: **No lo coma.**

T: **No lo coma.** Good. *Eat it*, speaking plurally, to more than one person, *eat it*:

S: **Cómanlo.**

T: Good. **Cómanlo.** *Don't eat it*:

S: **No lo coman.**

T: **No lo coman.** Very good. What was *to sell*?

S: **Vender.**

T: **Vender.** *Sell it*, speaking informally:

S: **Véndelo.**

T: **Véndelo.** Good. But, *don't sell it*:

S: **No lo vendas.**

T: **No lo vendas.** So, our shortcut is dropping the *s* of the present for the positive commands, which are informal, it's something that's quite specific, positive commands informally, but it's something that we do all day and that should help us remember that we have this shortcut for it. **Callar**, *c-a-l-l-a-r*, **callar**, means *to quiet*, and **callarse**, **callarse**, means *to shut up*. So, how would you tell somebody to *shut up*, informally?

S: **Cállate.**

T: **Cállate.** Good. *Quiet yourself.* Good.

S: So is it as polite as *be quiet*, or is it really *shut up*?

T: No, it's not very polite. If you were to speak to more than one person, how would you say it?

S: “**Cállente**”, sorry, **cállense**.

T: **Cállense**, good, now we need the mood tense. **Cállense**. Very good.



## Track 73

T: So we've seen how with orders we want to use this mood tense, with the exception of positive orders which are informal. There we have a shortcut, we can just cut off the *s* of the informal form. For example, what is *to wait*?

S: **Esperar.**

T: And what is *you wait*, informally?

S: **Esperas.**

T: **Esperas.** And *wait*, the order:

S: **Espera.**

T: **Espera.** That's our shortcut. How would you say *let's wait*?

S: **Esperemos.**

T: **Esperemos.** Good. And you can also say **esperamos**, it just sounds less like an order. It would sound more like *shall we wait*? ¿**Esperamos**? *Shall we wait*? But then the order, **esperemos**. *Let's not wait*:

S: **No esperemos.**

T: **No esperemos.** Good. So orders, we are using with *you*, the different versions of *you*, and with *we*. But maybe I want to say what I want *him* to do, or what I want *her* to do, or what I want *them* to do. Other than the structures that we learned already, **quiero que**, **prefiero que**, etc, we can just say **que** and follow it with the subjunctive. So for example, maybe you tell me *David is waiting for you* and I say **que espere**. **Que espere**. *That he waits*, but I'm using this mood tense so I'm saying *let him wait*. *Let him wait*. **Que espere**. Maybe I really want the show to finish. I want the show to hurry up and finish. I can say **que**, *it finishes* in the mood tense and then I get that meaning of *let it finish*. *Hurry up and finish*. So how would I say that? *Let it finish*:

S: **Que termine.**

T: **Que termine.** Good. **Que termine.** We said that the word for *already* was **ya**. And we can use that here, so *let it finish already*:

S: **Que termine ya.**

T: **Que termine ya.** *Enough already.* We said that **callarse** was *to quiet oneself* or *to shut up*. So maybe you want somebody to shut up. You're not angry enough to tell them directly. Maybe you will just say *oh, let them, let him shut up. Let him quiet himself.* How would that be?

S: **Que se calle.**

T: Good. **Que se calle.** Another situation that we use the mood tense in, is when after the word **cuando**, we refer to the future. For example, if I say *when we speak* and I mean generally, how will it sound?

S: **Cuando hablamos.**

T: **Cuando hablamos.** So this is generally, when we speak generally and you could continue, no?

But, if you mean in a future event, *when we speak later on*, then you will use this mood tense. Now this is a very interesting use of the mood tense because it highlights some kind of superstition maybe that the language is uncomfortable with referring to something in the future that didn't happen yet as a fact. So you're putting this mood tense there to kind of highlight that subjectivity. Give me *when we speak* then. *When we speak*, and we mean the future. *When we speak*:

S: **Cuando hablemos.**

T: **Cuando hablemos.** We are using this mood tense because we are referring to something that's going to happen in the future that we give it as a fact. And it's like who are we as mere mortals to do such a thing, to refer to this event or to this fact that will be. So for example, you could say *when we eat together, we speak.* And you mean generally. *When we eat together, we speak.* What was *together*? Related to *junction*, related to *joint*? Related to what in English they say *military junta*.

S: **Junta.**

T: So how would you say *when we eat together, we speak*? *When we eat together, we speak*:

S: **Cuando comemos junta.**

T: **Junta** is the version you found through *military junta*, but you are not just going to take it, you are going to have to process it as well. *When we eat together:*

S: **Juntas.**

For two females, that's fine. So **cuando comemos juntas**. *We speak:*

S: **Hablamos.**

T: Good. All together. *When we eat together, we speak:*

S: **Cuando comemos juntas, hablamos.**

T: Good. **Cuando comemos juntas, hablamos**. So here you're speaking generally, **generalmente**, generally. *When we eat together, we speak*, but if you want to say *when we eat together* and you're referring to the future. A fact that you're naming that hasn't happened yet, there you want to use your mood tense. So let's work our way through it. *When we eat together*, and we're referring to the future:

S: **Cuando comamos juntas.**

T: *We will speak*, and we don't need *will* with *we will speak* because the *when we eat together* is a future context. We can just go back to normal everyday present again.

S: **Hablamos.**

T: Good. **Cuando comamos juntas** (two females) *when we eat together, hablamos, we will speak*.

Now **hablamos** is just normal present because it is not directly connected to **cuando** and we have future context already so we can just use **hablamos**. So if we compare these two sentences, the only difference is in that mood tense. **Cuando comemos juntos, hablamos**. This means generally.

I went back to male or mixed group. **Cuando comemos juntos, hablamos**, generally. **Cuando comamos juntos, hablamos**. *When we eat together, we will speak*. What is *I go* or *I'm going*?

S: **Voy.**

T: **Voy.** Now you could probably guess that the mood tense of **voy** and **va** and **vamos** is irregular. So the root is **vaya**, *v-a-y-a*, **vaya**. And then we add on our consonants if we need them, so for example the *they* form or the *you* plural form would be?

S: **Vayan.**

T: **Vayan.** *We* form:

S: **Vayamos.**

**Vayamos.** Good. So how would you say *we see her when we go*, and you're speaking generally?

*We see her:*

S: **La vemos.**

T: **La vemos.** *When we go*, generally speaking:

S: **Cuando vamos.**

T: Good. **La vemos cuando vamos.** But, if we want to say *we will see her when we go*, and we're referring to the future, not generally. *We will see her when we go*. How will that be? So, *we will see her*, we can just use the present because *when we go* is the future context. So, again how is *we will see her*?

S: **La vemos.**

T: Good. *When we go*, and we refer now to the future with *when we go*:

S: **Cuando vayamos.**

T: Good. **La vemos cuando vayamos.** So, we have **la vemos cuando vamos** generally, **la vemos cuando vayamos** in the future.

## Track 74

T: So we've been seeing the obligatory uses of the mood tense and we will continue to look at some of these uses. *To choose* is **elegir**. **Elegir**.

S: **Elegir**.

T: Which sounds a little bit like:

S: *Elect*.

T: Yes, *elect*. Related to *elect*. *Election* in Spanish is **elección**. *I choose* from **elegir** is **elijo, elijo**. So what happened there?

S: The /e/ became /i/.

T: Yes, the *e* or the /e/ sound became an *i* or an /i/ sound. So instead of splitting, this *e* just turns into an *i*. And that happens sometimes in Spanish with a few verbs. When we stress the *e*, instead of splitting it will just turn into an *i*. So here we have **elijo**. And this just when we stress it. So how would you say *we choose* from **elegir**?

S: **Elegimos**.

T: **Elegimos**. Good. So there the *e* is not turning into an *i* because we are not stressing it. **Elegimos**.

But in the other places where we stress it, it will. So we have **elijo**. *You*, informal. *You choose*:

S: **Eliges**.

T: **Eliges**. Good. So how would you say *I don't want you to choose for me*? Now when *for* means *on my behalf*, *I don't want you to choose for me*, *I don't want you to choose on my behalf*, the *for* that we use is **por**. But, maybe we don't mean *on my behalf*. Maybe we mean *I don't want you to choose something for me*. Literally *something that is for me*. So, in that case we would use **para**. But, let's make the sentence like *on my behalf*. *I don't want you to choose for me*. *I don't want you to choose on my behalf*, speaking informally:

S: **No quiero que elijas por mí**.

T: Very good. **No quiero que elijas por mí.** Good. So **por mí** is like on my behalf. *I don't want you to take my decisions.* **No quiero que elijas por mí.** *To break* was **romper**, or **romperse** if we say something breaks without saying who breaks it. We said that **romper** was related to *rapture* in English, which also means it's related to *corrupt*. The *-rupt* of *corrupt* is *rupture, disrupt, erupt*.

So **romper** is *to break*. How would you say *I don't want it to break? I don't want it to break*:

S: **No quiero que rompa.**

T: If you say **no quiero que rompa** I'm waiting to hear what you don't want it to break.

S: **Lo rompa**, ah, not **lo rompa**-

T: That would be a different sentence-

S: **Se rompa.**

T: Good. If you were to say **no quiero que lo rompa**, it would mean *I don't want him or her to break it*, or *you* (formal) to break it. If you say **no quiero que se rompa**, we are not saying *who*. We are just saying *I don't want it to break. I don't want it to break itself*, even though we don't literally mean *itself*. We said that we can use **para, for, para**. We can use **para** like *to*, when it's *in order to*. So when we have a *to* in English which implies *in order to*, we should put **para** in Spanish. What was *to find*?

S: **Encontrar.**

T: **Encontrar. Encontrarse, encontrarse, to find oneself, is to meet up. To meet up.** So how would you say *we have met up* or *we have found ourselves* or *each other*, which is the same word in Spanish?

S: **Hemos. Nos hemos encontrado.**

T: Good. **Nos hemos encontrado.** *We have met up. So we have met up in order to speak. We have met up to speak. We have met up in order to speak*:

S: So, **nos hemos encontrado para hablar.**

T: Good. **Nos hemos encontrado para hablar.** Good. So *we have met up to speak*. And, although we wouldn't say *in order to speak* usually in English, if that *to speak* implies *in order to speak*

then we will put **para** in Spanish. **Nos hemos encontrado para hablar**. But after **para que**, *so that*, **para que**, you must use the mood tense. *We have cooked in order that they eat. We have cooked so they eat:*

S: **Hemos cocinado para que coman.**

T: Good. **Hemos cocinado para que coman.** Good. *We have cooked so that they eat.* And you can't make the shortcut there, of **para comer, hemos cocinado para comer**, because of course it would just sound like *we have cooked in order to eat, in order for us to eat.* Good. *To go back or to return is volver. Volver.*

S: **Volver.**

T: **Volver**, like in *revolve*. The *-volve* of *revolve* is **volver** and exists in Spanish, **revolver**. But in Spanish, **revolver** means to *stir*. **Revolver**. So **volver** is to *return* or *to go back* or *to come back*.

How do you think you would say *I return? I come back* or *go back*:

S: **Volvo. Vuelvo.**

T: **Vuelvo.** Good. The *o* splits. **Vuelvo.** How would you say *you come back* or *you go back*, speaking informally?

S: **Vuevles.**

T: **Volver.** Take it slowly.

S: **Vuelves.**

T: Good. **Vuelves.** Now if you say *so that you come back, in order for you to come back, so that you come back*:

S: **Para que vuelvas.**

T: Good. **Para que vuelvas.** So you could say something like *I've done it so that you come back. I've done it so that you come back.* So *I have done*: the version of **hacer** after **haber**, after any version of **haber** is **hecho**. It's very irregular. And we said that **hecho**, the version of **hacer** after **haber**, also means *fact*. So *I have done*, how is it? *I have done*:

S: **He hecho.**

T: Good. *I have done it so that you come back*, informally:

S: **Lo he hecho para que vuelvas.**

T: Good. **Lo he hecho para que vuelvas.** How would you say *I have done it so that they come back*?

S: **Lo he hecho para que vuelvan.**

T: Good. **Le he hecho para que vuelvan.** Good. How would you say *they have done it so that we come back*? *They have done it so that we come back*:

S: **Lo han hecho para que volvamos.**

T: Good. **Lo han hecho para que volvamos.** *They have done it so that we come back.* And I should mention that you might hear **para** shortened down in Spanish to **pa**. So **para que** would sound like **pa que**, **pa que volvamos**. How much this happens or if it happens at all depends on dialect. So you will notice it if you hear **pa**, it's just **para**. What was the word for *so*, like in *so tired*?

S: **Tan.**

T: **Tan.** And **también**, *t-a-m-b-i-e-n* is *as well, also*. And it actually has *tan* inside there. The *n* turned to an *m* because of that *b*, it softened it. So we have **tan** and then **bien**. **También**. Just like in English *as well*. **Tan**, other than *so*, can also be translated as *as* in certain circumstances and then *well*, from *as well*, **bien**. So interestingly they are like direct translations of each other. Even though if you think about it the direct translation doesn't make any sense: *as well*. But it's the same in English and Spanish. *As well*, **también**. So how would you say *so that you too, so that you as well come back*, and let's speak informally?

S: **Para que tú también vuelvas.**

T: Good. **Para que tú también vuelvas** or **para que vuelvas tú también**. So how would you say *we have done everything, we have done everything, so that you also come back*? *We have done everything so that you also come back*:

S: **Hemos hecho todo para que tú también vuelvas.**

T: Good. Very good. **Hemos hecho todo para que tú también vuelvas.** Very good.



## Track 75

T: What was *to do* or *to make*?

S: **Hacer.**

T: **Hacer.** We said that for the informal positive command, we have a shortcut. We find the *you* version of the verb, **haces**, and we take away the *s*. “Hace”. But with **hacer** we have an irregularity. The informal command for **hacer** is **haz**. *H-a-z*. So in most of Spain, you will hear */hath/*. **Haz**.

S: **Haz.**

T: So if you want to say *do it*:

S: **Hazlo.**

T: **Hazlo.** Good. Another use of the mood tense is to turn words like *where* into *wherever*. What was *where*?

S: **Donde.**

T: **Donde.** So of course we can't use the mood tense with **donde** because it's not a verb. How do you say *where you want*, *where you want*, speaking informally?

S: **Donde quieres.**

T: **Donde quieres.** Good. Now if we want to say *wherever you want*, then to get *wherever* actually we can change the verb to the mood tense and that changes the feeling of *where*. And then *where* turns into *wherever*. So if you want to say *wherever you want*, still informally:

S: **Donde quieras.**

T: I want to hear well though the *i* and the *e* in **quieras**.

S: **Donde quieras.**

T: Good. **Donde quieras.** So *do it wherever you want*:

S: **Hazlo donde quieras.**

T: Good. **Hazlo donde quieras.** What was *you like it*, still informally? *You like it*:

S: **Te gusta.**

T: **Te gusta.** How would you say *do it how you like to do it* - so *do it how you like*. What was the word for *how*? *How are you called? What's your name?*:

S: **Cómo.**

T: **Cómo.** Good. So *do it how it pleases you. Do it how you like*:

S: **Hazlo como te gusta.**

T: Good. **Hazlo como te gusta.** *Do it how you like to. Do it how you like to do it.* Now, what if you wanted to give the meaning *do it however you like*?

S: **Hazlo como te guste.**

T: **Hazlo como te guste.** In English we are changing *how* to *however* and in Spanish we are changing **te gusta** to **te guste**. **Hazlo como te guste.** How would you say *do what you prefer? Do what you prefer*. Still informal:

S: **Haz lo que prefieres.**

T: And:

S: **Prefieres.**

T: Very good. **Haz lo que prefieres.** So what we are investigating here is an optional use of the mood tense, no? Because **haz lo que prefieres** is perfect Spanish. It just means *do what you prefer*. But if you want to give the meaning *do whatever you prefer* how will you change that?

S: **Haz lo que prefieras.**

T: Good. **Haz lo que prefieras.** *Do whatever you prefer. Eat whatever you prefer. Eat whatever you prefer*, speaking informally:

S: **Comes lo que prefieras.**

T: **Comes lo que prefieras** would be *you eat whatever you prefer*. **Comes lo que prefieras**, which is a way of saying it. You could say it like this. **Comes lo que prefieras**. It just sounds actually a

little sweeter. *You eat whatever you prefer*, rather than *eat whatever you prefer*. But, here we are working with the order. We have a shortcut where we are not using the mood tense, what is it?

We have **comes**, *you eat*. And what do we do to get the order?

S: **Come**.

T: **Come**. Good. So making the order, even though your sentence was very nice and very sweet, **comes lo que prefieras**. Let's make it an order. *Eat whatever you prefer*:

S: **Come lo que prefieras**.

T: Very good. **Come lo que prefieras**. Now make this formal. *Eat whatever you prefer*, but speaking formally:

S: **Coma lo que prefiera**.

T: Very good. So here we have two mood tenses. We have **coma** which is the order and then **prefiera**, giving us *whatever* from *what*. **Coma lo que prefiera**. What if you were speaking to more than one person? *Eat whatever you prefer*:

S: **Coman lo que prefieran**.

T: Good. **Coman lo que prefieran**. Good. What was *to need* in Spanish? Sounding more like *to necessitate*.

S: **Necesitar**.

T: **Necesitar**. Good. *Whenever you need*. *Whenever you need*. How do you say that? Speaking informally:

S: **Cuando necesites**?

T: Very good. **Cuando necesites**. *Whenever you need*. Good. We said that *to choose* was like *elect*.

**Elegir. Elegir**. How would you say *I choose*?

S: **"Elejo."**

T: And we had some change happening with that *e*.

S: Ahh, yes. **Elijo**.

T: **Elijo**. Good. **Elijo**. *You choose*, speaking informally:

S: **Eliges**.

T: **Eliges**. *To follow* and also *to continue* or *to carry on*, we can use this verb like that, is **seguir**.

**Seguir**. So it's *to follow* or *to continue*, *to carry on*. **Seguir**.

S: **Seguir**.

T: And this behaves like **elegir** in that the *e* will not split, it will just turn into an *i* when we stress it.

So how do you say *I continue* or *I follow*?

S: **Sigo**.

T: **Sigo**. And there are some other verbs that come from **seguir**. We have **conseguir**, *to get* or *to manage to*. We have **perseguir** which means *to chase*. And we will see the same irregularity in them. The *I* version of **conseguir**, **consigo**. **Perseguir**, **persigo**. So like we said before, we can generalize the irregularities in Spanish. So **sigo**, *I follow*, and how about *he, she, it follows*, or *you* (formal) *follow*:

S: **Segue**.

T: **Segue**. *You* (informal):

S: **Sigues**.

T: *They* or *you guys*:

S: **Siguen**.

T: But *we*:

S: **Seguimos**.

T: **Seguimos**. Good. We are not stressing the *e* so it escapes from the irregularity. **Seguimos**. Good.

So we could say something like *I'll follow you wherever you go*. So, we can say *I will follow you*

or we can just use the present *I follow you*. Because, the *wherever you go* is a future context informally.

S: **Te sigo.**

T: **Te sigo.** Good. *Wherever you go*. So this is actually *to wherever you go*. *Wherever you go to, to wherever you go*. So how would you say *to where*?

S: **Adonde**

T: **Adonde.** Good. And *you go* (informally) and we want the mood tense which is irregular.

S: Is it **vaya**?

T: Yes. Very good. So now we can say the whole sentence. *I'll follow you wherever you go*. *To wherever you go*, informally:

S: **Te sigo adonde vaya- vayas.**

T: Good. Very good. Another irregular verb in the mood tense is **ser**. The base for the mood tense of **ser** is **sea**. **Sea**. *S-e-a*.

S: **Sea.**

T: And you'll hear the very common expression **o sea, o sea**. Literally meaning something like "or it might be". **O sea, o sea** is just like this kind of way to break up speech whilst you're thinking what to say like an *uhhh*. So **sea** is the base for the mood tense. So if you want to say something like *I prefer that it be like this*. *I prefer that it's like this*. *I prefer for it to be like this*. Of course we say *I prefer that it be like this*. What was the word for *like this* or *like that*?

S: **Así.**

T: Good. So *I prefer that it be like this*, *I prefer it to be like this*:

S: **Prefiero que lo-** do we, no we don't use **lo** here.

T: Good.

S: **Prefiero que sea así.**

T: Very good. **Prefiero que sea así**. What does **sea lo que sea** mean?

S: *Whatever will be will be.*

T: *Whatever it is, whatever will be, will be. **Sea lo que sea.** Whatever will come. Good.*

## Track 76

T: The word for *there is* or *there are*, *there is* or *there are*, in most languages this is a separate verb, but in English we are expressing it with a combination of *there* and *is* or *are*. In Spanish, to say *there is* or *there are* we have **hay**, **hay**, *h-a-y*, and **hay** is actually from **haber**.

S: **Hay**.

T: **Hay**. And for once we have a situation where it's changing in English and it's not changing in Spanish: **hay** means *there is* or *there are*, it's not changing. The word for *somebody* is **alguien**, **alguien**.

S: **Alguien**.

T: Good. How would you say *there is somebody here that wants to speak with you*? And let's speak formally, *there is somebody here that wants to speak with you*. So the first bit is *there is somebody here*:

S: **Hay alguien aquí**.

T: Good. *That wants to speak with you*, speaking formally:

S: **Que quiere hablar con usted**.

T: Good. **Hay alguien aquí que quiere hablar con usted**. *There is somebody here that wants to speak with you*. Now, if you say *Is there somebody here that speaks Spanish*? And you specify with your subjectivity this thing that we don't know if it exists or not, this somebody that speaks Spanish, and you do that with this **que** structure: *Is there somebody here that speaks Spanish*, then here you will use the mood tense, this subjective tense. So, how would you say that? *Is there somebody here that speaks Spanish?*:

S: ¿**Hay alguien aquí que hable español?**

T: Very good. ¿**Hay alguien aquí que hable español?** But if somebody replies to you *there are two people that speak Spanish here*, *there are two people here that speak Spanish*, you think you will use the mood tense?

S: No.

T: No, they are just saying what there is! So, *there are two people*, which in Spanish is *there are two persons*, so, *there are two people here*:

S: **Hay dos personas aquí.**

T: *That speak Spanish:*

S: **Que hablan español.**

T: Very good. **Hay dos personas aquí que hablan español.** Very good. The past of **hay** is **había**, which shows us, actually, that **hay** comes from **haber**. It's a very weird historic version of **haber**. But **había**, we see more clearly, that it comes from **haber**. Now, **había** doesn't change either, so you will have to resist the temptation to say **habían** when you want to say *there were* instead of *there was*, no? It's always **había**, doesn't change. **Hay** doesn't change for *there is* or *there are*, and **había** doesn't change for *there was* or *there were*. So, how would you say *There were two people that spoke Spanish*? Now, this is an interesting sentence, because in English we will use the point in the past, *there were two people that spoke Spanish*, but what do you think we will use in Spanish, the point or the line?

S: The line.

T: Why?

S: Because I've heard Spaniards speaking in English, saying it that way.

T: So, you believe that's the negative language transfer, that's great! So, it makes sense for it to be the line in the past, because what we are referring to here is the fact they were Spanish-speakers, and they weren't Spanish-speakers just for that moment, were they? So if we look at it and we think about which one fits better, we will choose the line, so again, it's a great example that we don't want to take a direct translation from English, from *spoke*, we want to just look at the context and decide if it makes sense to use the line or the point. So, give me this sentence - *there were two people here that spoke Spanish*:

S: **Había dos personas aquí que hablaban español.**

T: Good. **Había dos personas aquí que hablaban español.** If we were to use the point here – **que hablaron español** – we wouldn't be talking about the fact that they are Spanish-speakers, but



rather that they spoke Spanish at that time, whatever time we are referring to. We said that **hay**, *there is* or *there are*; or **había**, *there was* or *there were*; comes from **haber** in fact. So, when we say something like *there has to be something*, and with this *be* we mean *exist*, *there has to exist something*, this *be* is actually coming from *there is/there are*, not from *to be*. It's coming from this invisible verb that we do not have in English, which we make up for by using *there is/there are*. So, when we say something like *there has to be something that you can eat*, *there must be something that you can do*, this *be* is *exist*, *there must exist something*, in which case it's **haber**. It's not **ser** and it's not **estar**, and if you try to think which one it is, **ser** or **estar**, you will be a long time trying to work out which one it is. So, how would you say this sentence? *There has to be something that you can do* (let's speak informally). *There has to be something that you can do*.

You can use *has to* or *must*, doesn't make a lot of difference here.

S: **Tiene que hay-**

T: But it's *to* form, so **hay** and **había** come from?

S: **Haber. Tiene que haber.**

T: *Something that you can do*:

S: **Algo que puedas hacer.**

T: Yes, **puedas**, very good. **Tiene que haber algo que puedas hacer**. Because here, like before with the example of *is there somebody that speaks Spanish*, we are speaking about the existence of something when we don't know whether it exists or not, with this structure of **hay** and **que**. So, we are seeing that the mood tense has structural limitations, it can occur only in certain places structurally, and at the same time only to give certain meanings or feelings. Now, these meanings or feelings and the fact that Spanish is concerned with us expressing them and perceiving them through the language shows the value system of Spanish, or part of the value system of Spanish. Now different languages have different value systems, what a language requires you to express through it, and then the other things that the language might ignore might be considered its value system. And languages, like cultures and individuals, have things they value, things they pay attention to and things they don't, which is what makes something like the mood tense so incredibly interesting to analyze and observe and use. So again, not something we want to be

obsessed about getting correct, it really is something that we want to feel and also understand logically through our exposure and use of Spanish. We should also bear in mind that the use of the subjunctive or the mood tense can change slightly depending on dialect and also idiolect, which is the individual dialect of each person. So, we want to look out for it, listen actively, analyze and enjoy the journey of understanding it and also using it and the different possibilities of expression that that gives us. It will be a very fascinating insight into the value system of this particular language.

## Track 77

T: How would you say *there should be something to eat*? *There should be something to eat* - so, we said that *should* was *would owe* or *would must*, so what is *to owe*, which we can use like *must* and it's related to *debt*?

S: **Deber.**

T: **Deber.** And *would must* or *would owe* gives us the meaning *should*.

S: **Debería.**

T: Good. *There should be something to eat*:

S: **Debería haber.**

T: Good. Your first place your mind is going to go is to choose between **ser** and **estar**. If neither fit, make that little check, "oh, is this *exist*? Is this the *be* that means *exist*?" And then you know it's **haber**. So, *there should be, there should exist something to eat*:

S: **Debería haber algo comer- para comer.**

T: Good, *in order to eat, there should be something in order to eat*, good. **Debería haber algo para comer**, *there should be something to eat*. Very good. Another common place that we use the mood tense in Spanish, is when we say *it is*, an adjective, **que**, and then a verb. This verb is going to go into the mood tense, you are noticing that **que** has a lot to do with the subjunctive, that this **que** introduces the mood tense in many cases. So, for example, if I want to give you some advice and tell you *it's terrible that you eat this, it is terrible that you eat this*. So, let's speak informally:

S: **Es terrible que comas esto.**

T: Good. **Es terrible que comas esto.** Good. So, it's the **que**, the combination of **es terrible** and **que**, which introduces this mood tense. If you say *it is terrible if you eat this*, then you don't use the mood tense. So, how would you say that? *It is terrible if you eat this*, still speaking informally:

S: **Es terrible si comes esto.**

T: Good. **Es terrible si comes esto.** How would you say *it is possible*?

S: **Es posible.**

T: Good. How would you say *It's possible that we go later?* What is *later*, or *more late*?

S: **Más tarde.**

T: Good. And what is the root for the mood tense of *go*? **Voy**, **va** becomes:

S: **Vaya.**

T: Good. So, *it is possible that we go later*:

S: **Es posible que vayamos más tarde.**

T: Good. **Es posible que vayamos más tarde.** **Fuerte** in Spanish means *strong*, but it's also used colloquially and maybe the closest translation that I can think of would be something like, I mean, again it's very colloquial, but you can say *oh, that's hardcore, that's full-on*, in Spanish you say a lot **qué fuerte, qué fuerte**, *how heavy, how hardcore, how full-on*, **qué fuerte**. And we see that we can use **qué** like *how* – **qué fuerte; qué lindo**, *how nice, how beautiful*; **qué bueno**, *how good*. You can say **qué increíble que** or **qué fuerte que**, so, whilst we have two **que**'s there in Spanish, this is just *how incredible that, how hardcore that*, and, of course, we will carry on into the mood tense. So, *how strong, how heavy, that he is here*, how would you say that?

S: **Qué fuerte que esté aquí.**

T: Good. **Qué fuerte que esté aquí.** In English we achieve a similar feeling to what we get with the Spanish subjunctive sometimes with words like *should* or *might*. Here for example, in English we could say *how incredible that he should come*, here we don't mean *should*, like in its literal meaning like **debería**, no, here in English we are using *should* to give this kind of mood tense feeling: *how incredible that he should come*. **Está bien, está bien**, means it's okay. The literal translation of **bien** is *well*, and *to be well* is a state, so it goes with **estar**: **está bien**, but it can also be used like *it's okay*. So for example, you could say, you know, *it's okay that you ask but I don't have to reply*. So, *to ask* is **preguntar**, and *to reply* or *to respond* is **responder**. So, we will say *it's okay that you ask, but it's not necessary that I respond, I don't need to respond, it's not necessary that I respond*. So, the first bit – *it's okay that you ask*, and we are speaking informally, and *to ask* was **preguntar**:

S: **Está bien que preguntes.**

T: Good. **Está bien que preguntes.** So, it's like *okay, you can ask as much as you like*, so this is the feeling we get here with the mood tense, or in English we might use *might* here to get this kind of mood tense feeling: *it's okay that you might ask. But:*

S: **Pero.**

T: *It's not necessary that I respond, I don't need to respond, it's not necessary that I respond*, there's a few ways we can say this:

S: **No es necesario.**

T: **Necesito** is the verb.

S: **Necesidad?**

T: Is *necessity*. So, *necessary*. How is *vocabulary* in Spanish?

S: Ah, wait, **necesario**.

T: Good. So, *it's not necessary that I respond:*

S: **No es necesario que responda.**

T: Very good. **Está bien que preguntes, pero no es necesario que responda.** And there we have the mood tense after **es necesario**, or **no es necesario que**, so we have *it is*, adjective, **que**, and then the verb, and that verb with the mood tense. We also could have said **no hace falta que responda**, *it doesn't make lack*, this common expression we said that we will hear around, **hacer falta, no hace falta que responda**. How would you say *it is important that we find it soon? It's important that we find it soon:*

S: **Es importante que lo encontremos pronto.**

T: Good. **Es importante que lo encontremos pronto.** Good.

## Track 78

T: What was *to follow* or *to continue*, *to carry on*?

S: **Seguir.**

T: **Seguir.** And how was *I continue* or *I carry on* or *I follow*?

S: **Sigo.**

T: **Sigo.** Good. If you want to say *I continue speaking*, here we use the *-ing*, *I continue speaking*, so how would that be?

S: **Sigo hablando.**

T: **Sigo hablando.** *He continues speaking:*

S: **Sigue hablando.**

T: **Sigue hablando.** *He continues speaking, she continues speaking, you (formal) continue speaking. It's probable that he continues speaking.* So, in English we will probably say *he'll probably continue speaking*, but in Spanish *it is probable that he continues speaking*. So, how would that be?

S: **Es probable que siga hablando.**

T: Very good. **Es probable que siga hablando.** Good. *It is probable that he continues speaking.* So, after **seguir** to get the meaning of *continue* we can use the *-ing*. What was *to be* for characteristics?

S: **Ser.**

T: **Ser.** Good. How would you make the *-ing* form of **ser**?

S: **Siendo.**

T: **Siendo.** *Free*, in the sense of not requiring any money, is **gratis** in Spanish.

S: **Gratis.**

T: This is where we get *gratuitous* from in English. It's a bit gratuitous, it's unnecessary, it's free, it's extra. **Gratis**. So, you can say *it's imperative that it continues to be free*. So, *it's imperative that it continues being free*, how would you say that?

S: **Es imperativo que siga siendo gratis.**

T: Good. **Es imperativo que siga siendo gratis.** *To start*, we said that we had **comenzar** and **empezar**. **Comenzar** is, of course, easier to remember and use, because it sounds like *commence*, but **empezar** is probably more common. So, you can use whichever you like now. How would you say *it's spectacular that they start to speak Spanish*? Now, after *start*, to connect to the next *to* form you need **a**. There are just a handful of verbs that are not verbs of movement, for example, like **ir**, **volver**, **salir**, that need **a** to connect, apart from these there are just a handful of verbs that use some preposition to connect, and **empezar** and **comenzar** are two of them. So, how would you say *it's spectacular that they begin to speak Spanish* (*spectacular* is the same word in Spanish)?

S: **Es "spectacular"**,

T: Almost the same word.

S: Oh, right, **espectacular**.

T: Good, **es espectacular**, *that they begin*:

S: **Que comiencen a hablar español.**

T: Good. **Es espectacular que comiencen a hablar español.** *It's spectacular that they start to speak Spanish*. Now, after **comenzar** and **empezar** you could also put the *-ing* form, and the meaning would change a little, it would mean *it's spectacular that they start out speaking Spanish*. Now, in English there is not a lot of difference, *that they begin to speak Spanish*, *that they begin speaking Spanish*, both in English mean to start speaking Spanish. But in Spanish, if you use the *-ing* here it would mean that they start out speaking Spanish, like right from the beginning. So, when I'm speaking about these courses for example, I say that we start out speaking Spanish, right from the beginning. Now, speaking about that in Spanish I would use the *-ing* here. So, *it's spectacular that they start out speaking Spanish*:

S: **Es espectacular que comiencen hablando español.**

T: Good. And here we don't need the **a**, because we are not connecting to a *to* form. What was the verb *to finish* or *to terminate*?

S: **Terminar.**

T: **Terminar.** Now, if you want to say a sentence like *I want you guys to speak with me when you finish selling them*, we will say *when you finish to sell them*. Here you won't use the *-ing*, but *to finish*, **terminar**, is also one of those verbs that needs a preposition to connect to the next *to* form. In this case the preposition is **de**. So, *to finish selling them* is **terminar de vender**. So, *I want you guys to speak with me when you finish selling them*, so the first bit is *I want you guys to speak with me*, how is that bit?

S: **Quiero que hablen conmigo.**

T: Good, mood tense, **quiero que hablen conmigo**. Good. *I want that you talk with me*, **quiero que hablen conmigo**, *when you finish selling them*. So, *when you finish*, and we are still speaking to you guys:

S: **Cuando terminen,**

T: Good, why did you use the mood tense there – **cuando terminen**?

S: Because it's the future *when*.

T: Good. When **cuando** refers to *generally*, we won't use the mood tense, we just use the present, and here, referring to a future event that hasn't happened, after **cuando**, we use the mood tense, well remembered. **Quiero que hablen conmigo cuando terminen**, *when you finish selling them*, and we are not going to use *selling*, we are going to use *to sell*, and we connect that with **de**:

S: **Cuando terminen de venderlos.**

T: Good, so altogether – *I want you guys to speak with me when you finish selling them*:

S: **Quiero que hablen conmigo cuando terminen de venderlos.**

T: Good. **Quiero que hablen conmigo cuando terminen de venderlos**. So this means *I want you guys to speak with me when you finish selling them*, but **terminar** we can also use like *end up*: *I want you guys to speak with me when you end up selling them*. So, using the *-ing* form after



**terminar**, instead of **de** and the *to* form, gives us this meaning of “end up”. So, if you wanted to say, *I want you guys to speak with me when you end up selling them*, so *I want you guys to speak with me*:

S: **Quiero que hablen conmigo.**

T: *When you end up selling them*, so we will say *when you finish* and then we will actually use the *-ing*:

S: **Cuando terminen vendiéndolos.**

T: Good. **Quiero que hablen conmigo cuando terminen vendiéndolos.** *I want you guys to speak with me when you end up selling them.* So, there is a difference here, depending on whether we use the *to* form or the *-ing* form, just as we saw with **empezar** or **comenzar**, there can be a difference between using the *to* form afterwards or the *-ing* form afterwards, and both of them need a preposition to join the *to* form, which might be a clue to you that there is a difference between using the *to* form and then the *-ing* form. If the *to* form is joining with a preposition, then maybe this particular verb takes the *-ing* form afterwards as well with a slightly different meaning. **Empezar a hablar**, *to start to speak, to start speaking*; **empezar hablando**, *to actually begin something speaking*, or, as we would probably say, *to start out speaking*; **terminar de vender**, *to finish selling*; **terminar vendiendo**, *to end up selling*. So, what we have aimed to teach here is the idea of the mood tense, the general feeling of the mood tense, and the kind of constructions in which it occurs, and, like I said, understanding the mood tense is about listening out for it, and listening out for how people around you use it. A great way to learn it is to chat online, for example, because maybe in real life, and almost certainly at the beginning, you won't pick up those subtle changes in vowels that you get with the mood tense. But if you are chatting online you will notice quite clearly, “ah, there they used an *a* and not an *e*, or there they used an *e* and not an *a*, oh why?” And then you will look at the context of the sentence and work out why the mood tense was used and that really is the best way to internalize it.

## Track 79

T: So let's make a little recap of some of the situations in which we are using the mood tense with a new verb, **dejar**. **Dejar**. **Dejar** means *to leave*, but in the sense of *to leave a message*, rather than *leave, to go out* like **salir**. **Dejar**.

S: **Dejar**.

T: **Dejar**. Good. How would you say *leave me a message*, speaking formally? A message is **un mensaje**. **Un mensaje**.

S: **Déjeme un mensaje**.

T: Good. **Déjeme un mensaje**. And, of course, positive command, we have the **me**, *me*, after the verb, **déjeme un mensaje**. How would you say *I want you to leave me a message*, speaking informally? *I want you to leave me a message*:

S: **Quiero que me dejes un mensaje**.

T: Good. **Quiero que me dejes un mensaje**. In the same way, if you were to say *I want to tell him to leave me a message*, you won't say *I want to tell him to leave me a message* literally, you will say *I want to tell him that he leaves me a message*. What is *to say* or *to tell*?

S: **Decir**.

T: **Decir**. Good, so, *I want to tell him* is the first bit.

S: **Quiero decirle**.

T: *That he leaves me a message*:

S: **Que deje- me deje un mensaje**.

T: Good. **Quiero decirle que me deje un mensaje**. So, you don't want to tell him that he is leaving you a message, you want to tell him to leave you a message, so here we use the mood tense. If you were to say **quiero decirle que me deja un mensaje** what would be understood there without the mood tense is *I want to tell him that he, she, or you (formal) is leaving me a message*, but if you

use here your mood tense, then it's understood there that sense of order, and you will understand *I want to tell him to leave me a message, quiero decirle que me deje un mensaje.* Good.

*When he leaves you the message, call me* (let's speak informally); *when he leaves you the message, call me:*

S: **Cuando te deje el mensaje.**

T: Good. **Cuando te deje el mensaje, call me,** informally, so, it's our shortcut.

S: **Llámame.**

T: Good. **Cuando te deje el mensaje, or cuando él te deje el mensaje,** if you wanted to clarify, **llámame.** Good. So, after **cuando,** when we are referring to the future, when we are referring to something that hasn't happened yet, we feel a bit superstitious about it and we want to use our mood tense. **Cuando te deje el mensaje, llámame.** *It's essential that he sees my message. It is essential - the -tial here, what do you think might happen to it in Spanish? Like the -tion, like in tradition, becomes:*

S: **Tradición.**

T: So, something similar might happen here.

S: **Esencial.**

T: Well done, **esencial.** *Spacial - espacial, good. So, it's essential that he sees my message:*

S: **Es esencial que.**

T: *He sees my message, it's based on the irregularity of veo, the I version:*

S: **Vea.**

T: Good. So, *it's essential that he, or she, or you (formal) see my message:*

S: **Es esencial que vea mi mensaje.**

T: Good. **Es esencial que vea mi mensaje.** Good. **Ojalá** in Spanish means something like *hopefully.*  
**Ojalá.**

S: **Ojalá.**

T: You will hear it a lot, **ojalá**, and there are a lot of versions of the history of where it came from. What it's definitely got something to do with is "Allah", the Arabic word for *God*, or *the god*, Allah, and the south of Spain was part of the Muslim world for around eight centuries, so we have a lot of Arabic words and structures and habits in Spanish, and one of them is this popular expression **ojalá**. And there are a lot of versions of where it came from exactly, although my favorite is that it's a contraction of "ojo-Allah", **ojo** means *eye*, and it's still used in some places, like *watch out! Ojo! Careful, watch it, beware*, so it's like "ojo-Allah", so you say it when you want something, "ojo-Allah", *I want this*, **ojalá**, hopefully. Although that's just one version of where **ojalá** came from. So, after **ojalá** you can use the mood tense to say what you want to happen, so, you can say for example, *hopefully she will leave a message*, or *she leaves a message*, using your mood tense. *Hopefully she leaves a message*:

S: **Ojalá deje un mensaje.**

T: Good, **ojalá deje un mensaje**. How would you say *hopefully it will be soon*? When something happens is a characteristic of it, so if you want to say *hopefully it's soon*, we need to use that irregular root of **ser** that we have in the mood tense, do you remember how that is, and it's like the popular expression that we have in Spanish, that you might hear a lot, which begins *o*.

S: **O sea.**

T: Good. *Hopefully it is soon, hopefully it will be soon*:

S: **Ojalá sea pronto.**

T: Good. **Ojalá sea pronto**. Good. So, **ojalá** you will hear and want to use very often, and also you use with this subjective tense. So, like we said, you just want to listen out for when the mood tense is used, get interested in it, analyze why it's been used, think about why it's been used, think about how that fits in to the image and the vision that you are getting of the mood tense and how and why it's used. It's something that you should enjoy and analyze and the most interesting areas might be the optional uses, because with the optional uses of the mood tense you can really give many different tones to what you are saying, whether it's humor, or sarcasm, or sincerity, irritation – there is a whole spectrum of feelings you can express with it. And these are best understood explored in a live environment – practicing, listening to and analyzing Spanish.

## Track 80

T: We saw many uses for **se**, the sound /se/. We have **sé** as a verb, **yo sé**, from **saber**, *I know*, and this **sé** is written with a written accent **sé** or **yo sé**, or we said **lo sé** is very common, *I know it*, just because **sé**, **sé**, **sé** is a little short, so you might hear **lo sé**, **lo sé**, **lo sé**, *I know it*. And then we have the grammatical **se** which we've seen as *self – himself, herself, themselves, yourself* speaking formally, *itself, oneself*. So, for example, you can say *he stays*, or *he remains himself*:

S: **Se queda.**

T: **Se queda.** Good. So, this is the **se** that we have for *him/her/you* (formal)/*it/themselves*. And then we also had a **se** which was when we have two //’s together – the first one, the personal one will turn into **se** only because Spanish doesn't like phonetically the sound of having these two //’s together. So, for example, if you had a verb like *to prepare*, what is *to prepare*?

S: **Preparar.**

T: **Preparar.** And *I prepare*:

S: **Preparo.**

T: **Preparo.** *I prepare it*:

S: **Lo preparo.**

T: And *I prepare them it, I prepare it for them* or *I prepare them it*:

S: **Se lo preparo.**

T: **Se lo preparo.** Good, this **les** turns into **se**, because we can't have **les lo**. So, we've seen these uses of **se** so far – the grammatical **se** for *self* and then also this phonetic change. We have one more use for **se** to see, one more use for **se**. Now, when we combine **se** with **me**, **te**, **le**, **les**, **nos**, we get the meaning of *on me* in English, in the sense of *it died on me*, maybe the computer breaks down and you say *it died on me*. So you can say *it died on me, it ran out on me*, so you have this *on me* structure in English, which you can use with only some verbs. Now, in Spanish you can do this as well, only it's much more common and it's not restricted to just a few verbs. Adding **se** and then **me/te/nos/le/les**. So, for example, *the door was la puerta, la puerta*, and *to close was cerrar*,

**cerrar**, so, if you want to say *the door closes* you will say *the door closes itself*, so let's make that first, how would you say that? *The door closes itself*:

S: **La puerta se cierra.**

T: Good. **La puerta se cierra** or **se cierra la puerta** – it's flexible. Now, if you want to say *the door closes on me*, **se me cierra la puerta**. So maybe the door keeps closing by itself and you want to give that *on me* feeling **la puerta se me cierra**, **se me cierra la puerta**, either are okay.

To burn in Spanish is **quemar**, *q-u-e-m-a-r*. **Quemar**.

S: **Quemar.**

T: **Quemar**. So, if you want to say *the dinner burns*, *the dinner gets burned*, what was *the dinner* or *to dine*?

S: **Cenar.**

T: **Cenar**. So, **cenar** was *to have dinner* or *to dine*, and *the dinner*, the noun, how was it?

S: **Cena.**

T: **La cena**. Good. So, *it burns itself the dinner*, *the dinner gets burned*:

S: **La cena se quema.**

T: **La cena se quema**. Now, if you want to say *the dinner burns on me*, *the dinner is burning on me*, how would you make that meaning?

S: **La cena se me quema.**

T: **La cena se me quema**, **se me quema la cena**. So, you don't have to worry about using this structure for now, until you are really comfortable with all of these little words like **me**, **lo**, **le**, **las**, and **se**, etc, all of these, but you will hear it, so we are looking at this just briefly now, so it doesn't cause any confusion when you hear it. When you have this extra **se**, and you know it's extra, because it's coming with **me/te/nos/le**, it shouldn't cause any confusion if you hear **se me**, **se nos**, **se te**, then you understand what is happening. **Acabar**, **acabar**, is *to finish* or *to run out*. **Acabar**.

S: **Acabar.**

T: Good. *A-c-a-b-a-r*.

S: **Acabar.**

T: How would you say *the battery runs out, or the battery runs itself out? The battery is la batería, la batería:*

S: **La batería se acaba.**

T: Good. **La batería se acaba.** If you want to say *oh, my battery always runs out*, you are talking about your phone and your battery is always running out, you can say *my battery, the battery*, like we said we don't use *my* as much in Spanish as we do in English, *the battery always runs out on me, the battery always runs out on me*, what was the word for *always*?

S: **Siempre.**

T: Good, so let's try this sentence. *The battery always runs out on me:*

S: **La batería siempre se me acaba.**

T: Very good. **La batería siempre se me acaba.** How would you ask *Does the battery run out on you?* Speaking informally, *Does the battery run out on you?:*

S: **¿La batería se te acaba?**

T: Good. **¿La batería se te acaba?** Good. And what if you were speaking formally?

S: **¿La batería se le acaba?**

T: Good. **¿La batería se le acaba?** We use **le**, because it's *on you, the battery runs out on you*, so, not using **lo**, using **le** – *to you, on you, from you, for you* – all included there in **le**. And if you are speaking to more than one person:

S: **La batería se les acaban, no, se les acaba.**

T: Good, very good. **La batería se les acaba.** Good. So, if you hear this extra **se** around – you know what it's doing. **Quemar** was *to burn*, how would you say *it burned, it burned?*

S: **Quemó.**

T: **Quemó.** Now, what if you wanted to say *the dinner got burned?*

S: **La cena se quemó.**

T: Good. **La cena se quemó, se quemó la cena,** *the dinner got burned.* Now, how would you say *the dinner burned on me, the dinner got burned on me?*

S: **La cena se me quemó- se me quemó.**

T: Good. **La cena se me quemó, se me quemó la cena.** *The dinner burned on us:*

S: **La cena se nos quemó.**

T: Good. **La cena se nos quemó,** very good.



## Track 81

T: How would you say *I don't want the door to close on me*? So what was *to close*?

S: **Cerrar.**

T: And *the door*:

S: **La puerta.**

T: **La puerta.** Which is related to *port*. Of course, you stress down on the *o* of *port* and you get **puerto**. **Puerto** is *port*. And you change the *o* to an *a* and you get **puerta**, *door*. So, *I don't want the door to close on me*:

S: **No quiero la puerta-** Oh. *I don't want that the door closes on me.*

T: Exactly.

S: **No quiero que la puerta se me cierre.**

T: Very good. After **quiero que**, **no quiero que**, we're using the mood tense. **No quiero que la puerta se me cierre.** Or **no quiero que se me cierre la puerta.** Good. How do you say *again*, or *another time*?

S: **Otra vez.**

T: Good. *I don't want the door to close on me again*:

S: **No quiero que la puerta se me cierre otra vez.**

T: Good. **No quiero que la puerta se me cierre otra vez.** What was the verb *to return* or *to come back*? And it's related to *revolve*.

S: **Volver.**

T: **Volver.** Good. **Volver.** Instead of saying **otra vez**, another way of saying *again* in Spanish is to use **volver**. So, for example, *it closes again*, we can say **vuelve a cerrarse**. *It returns to close.*

Why do we have **a** here? **Vuelve a cerrarse?**

S: Because it's a verb of movement.

T: Good. So how would you say *I don't want the door to close again*, with **volver**, how would it be?

So let's take it from the beginning. *I don't want that*:

S: **No quiero que.**

T: *The door returns*:

S: **La puerta vuelva.**

T: Very good. *To close itself*:

S: **A cerrarse.**

T: Good. **No quiero que la puerta vuelva a cerrarse.** Or **no quiero que vuelva a cerrarse la puerta.**

So **volver a** can be used like *again*, and it's very common in Spanish. You might hear it around.

So if you say *I don't want it to happen again*, for *to happen* you can use *to pass*. What was *to pass*?

Or if you don't remember, you can make a guess here.

S: **Pasar.**

T: **Pasar.** Or *occur*, **ocurrir**. You can use that as well, for *happen*. **Suced***er*, *succession*, **suced***er*. All of these mean *to happen*. **Pasar** is probably easier, and easier to remember. So, *I don't want it to happen again*. *I don't want it to return to happen*:

S: **No quiero que vuelva a pasar.**

T: Good. **No quiero que vuelva a pasar.** Good. So we saw that we have the mood tense with which we are switching the vowel, so we go from **vuelve** to **vuelva** to get the mood tense. Or we have **cerrar** and we go from **cierra** to **cierre** to get the mood tense. We only have mood tense in the present and in the past. It doesn't exist in the futures. It used to, and there are a couple of words left behind in fixed expressions that still have this form. But for all intents and purposes, it doesn't exist any more in Spanish, the future mood tense. We have the present, which we've practiced and have a very good hold on, and the past mood tense. Now, the past mood tense is very easy to build. We will always build it going from the *they* form of the point in the past. And now that I've mentioned the point in the past, I should also mention that the mood tense for the past is the same for the line and the point. There are no two different ones. It counts for both. And we build it going

from the point in the past for *they*. So for example, if we take a verb like *to speak*, **hablar**, and *they spoke*:

S: Is it **hablaron**?

T: Yes, **hablaron**. So that's the first step to find the mood tense for the past, is to go to the *they* form for the point in the past, **hablaron**. So you find **hablaron** and you change that last *o* to an *a* and what do you get?

S: **Hablaran**.

T: **Hablaran**. And that is your mood tense for *they* in the past. Now from that, we can work backwards to find the *I, he, she, it, you* (formal) version. If we work backwards from **hablaran**, what would we do to work backwards from **hablaran**, what would we get rid of?

S: The *n*, **hablara**.

T: **Hablara**. And then we can make the *you* (informal) version:

S: **Hablaras**.

T: Good. And *we*, and the accent won't move.

S: **Habláramos**.

T: **Habláramos**. Good. So that's your set. We can do the same now with **comer**. What was *they ate*, the point in the past?

S: **Comieron**.

T: **Comieron**, good. So now give me the mood tense version of *they ate*:

S: **Comieran**.

T: **Comieran**. Good. And *I ate, he, she, it, you* (formal) ate:

S: **Comiera**.

T: Good. *We*:

S: **Comiéramos**.

T: **Comiéramos.** And *you* (informal):

S: **Comieras.**

T: **Comieras.** So this is how we form our mood tense in the past. We want to go from the *they* form. So we use this pretty much in the same kind of situations that we use the present mood tense. Just in the past, with a couple of situations that are specifically for past. So for example, where **quiero que** necessitates the mood tense in the present, **quería que**, *I wanted that*, will necessitate the mood tense in the past. What is *I wanted*, using the line in the past?

S: **Quería.**

T: So now you could say something like *I wanted them to eat with us. I wanted that they ate with us.*

And that *they ate* of course will be in the mood tense. *I wanted that they ate with us:*

S: **Quería que comieran con nosotros.**

T: Good. **Quería que comieran con nosotros.** And as we said, point in the past, line in the past, when it comes to the mood tense, it's the same. *I was hoping that he would call me. I was hoping:*

S: **Esperaba que.**

T: *That he would call me.* So, *I was hoping that*, we don't say *would*, we use the past mood tense again. *I was hoping that he called me:*

S: **Esperaba que me llamara.**

T: Good. **Esperaba que me llamara.** So whilst in English we would say *I was hoping that he would call me*, in Spanish *I was hoping that he called me*, and we use the past mood tense.

**Esperaba que me llamara.** Good. What was *to need* or *to necessitate*?

S: **Necesitar.**

T: Good. **Necesitar.** How would you say *we needed*, using the line in the past? *We needed, we were needing:*

S: **Necesitábamos.**

T: Good. **Necesitábamos**. How would you say *we needed to speak with him?* *We needed to speak with him:*

S: **Necesitábamos que-**

T: Why **que**? *We needed to speak:*

S: **Necesitábamos hablar.**

T: *With him:*

S: **Con él.**

T: Good. So here we don't need the mood tense. **Necesitábamos hablar con él.** *We needed to speak with him.* But, if you were to say *we needed that he speak with us, we needed that he spoke with us*, then this *that*, this **que** is what most of the time in Spanish is alerting you that maybe you want to use the mood tense. So, *we needed that he speak with us*, how is that?

S: **Necesitábamos que hablara con nosotros.**

T: Very good. **Necesitábamos que hablara con nosotros.** Very good. What was *to return*, and we said that we can also use this verb like *again*?

S: **Volver.**

T: **Volver.** So if I wanted to say *I called you again*, I could just say *I returned to call you*. It's got nothing to do with actually returning, ah? It's just a way of saying *again*. So what is *I returned*, from *to return*, from **volver**:

S: **Volvá.**

T: Go back to **comer**:

S: **Volví.**

T: Good. So *I called you again*, speaking informally:

S: **Volví a llamarte.**

T: Good. **Volví a llamarte.** *To organize. In order to organize:*

S: **Para organizar.**

T: Good. So all together, *I called you again in order to organize*, speaking informally:

S: **Volví a llamarte para organizar.**

T: Good. **Volví a llamarte para organizar.** So, if we have **para organizar**, we don't need to worry about the mood tense. And we can sometimes adjust our sentence, putting *to* forms so that we can avoid finding the mood tense. So you could say something like **volví a llamarte para organizar**, **volví a llamarte para organizar**, *I called you again in order to organize*, and there you don't need the mood tense. But if you were to say *I called you again so that, in order that, we organized*, then there you would have to use the mood tense. So how would that be? *I called you again*, informally still:

S: **Volví a llamarte.**

T: *So that:*

S: **Para que.**

T: *We organized.* So it's the mood tense now, in the past:

S: **Organizaron. Organizaran. Organizáramos.**

T: Very good. Very good. So you have to take a trip through, ah, to find it. And it's quite time consuming at the beginning. But once you start practicing this past mood tense, of course it becomes much quicker to find these different forms. **Volví a llamarte para que organizáramos.** And like I said, you can even avoid the use of the mood tense just by saying **volví a llamarte para organizar**, in a structure like this one, for example. So we're seeing that there are similar structures to the structures we practiced the mood tense in the present with, just in the past.

## Track 82

T: We also said that when we use **ser** or **estar**, with an adjective plus **que** - so for example, **es relevante que**, *it's relevant that*, **está bien que**, *it's okay that* - we will follow this up with the mood tense. So how would you say for example, *it's not very relevant that they found it*, *it's not very relevant that they found it*, for example? So how is *it's not very relevant*:

S: **No es muy relevante.**

T: Good. *That they found it*:

S: **Que encontraron, encontraran, lo encontraran.**

T: Good. **No es muy relevante que lo encontraran.** So here we're not starting with the past, are we? **No es muy relevante.** That's the present. But after **que** we refer back to the past, so we can use the past mood tense. In the same way, we could use the present mood tense. We could say *it's not very relevant that they find it*, *that they might find it*, using the present mood tense. So how would that sound?

S: **No es muy relevante que lo encuentren.**

T: Good. **No es muy relevante que lo encuentren.** Good. How would you say *it wasn't very relevant*? Now, the line (we can use the line in the past here) from **ser** is irregular. But, we can remember the word *era* in English, to remember this line in the past from **ser**. Because a line in the past is an *era*, and if we pronounce *era* as if it was Spanish, we get:

S: **Era.**

T: **Era.** And that's the line in the past from **ser**. So how would you say *it was very relevant*?

S: **Era muy relevante.**

T: Good. *It was very relevant that they found it. It was very relevant that they found it*:

S: **Era muy relevante que lo encontraran.**

T: Good. So, we want to identify the structures that allow us to use the mood tense, other than to use the mood tense correctly, to also avoid it sometimes. No? So imagine you're having a conversation

and you just want to get the meaning across and the point across, and maybe you don't want to worry in that moment about finding the mood tense. You just have something you need to say, and you will worry about it later how it would be with the mood tense. So we can play around with the structure as we did, for example, with **volví a llamarte para organizar**. *I called you again to organize*, instead of **volví a llamarte para que organizáramos**. *I called you again so that we organized*. Like we did there, we can play around a little bit with the structure to avoid using the mood tense. So for example, instead of saying **es importante que**, we could also say *the important thing is that*. And when we say *the important thing is that*, what we end up with is **es que**. So, we said that we have a useful structure we can use to give this *the important thing*. So instead of saying **la cosa importante**, which would be a literal translation of *the important thing*, how could we make that structure using **lo**?

S: Just say **lo importante**?

T: Yes, **lo importante**. Good. So we said that instead of saying literally *the important thing*, you can just use **lo**. With any adjective, and you get this idea of *the important thing*. **Lo importante**, *the important thing*. **Lo increíble**, *the incredible thing*. **Lo espectacular**, *the spectacular thing*. **Es que**, and then after that **es que**, you don't need any mood tense. So, *incredible* is **increíble**, slightly different in Spanish than in English. We don't have the *d*, and we can actually see where incredible comes from. *To believe* in Spanish was **creer**. And **creíble** would be *believable*. And **increíble** is *unbelievable*. So *incredible* actually means *unbelievable*. **Increíble**.

S: **Increíble**.

T: So first, if we say *it's incredible that*, then we will want the mood tense. So, *it's incredible that they come back, that they return*. What was *to return*?

S: **Volver**.

T: **Volver**. Good. So, *it's incredible that they return, that they come back*:

S: **Es increíble que vuelvan**.

T: Good. **Es increíble que vuelvan**. But, if you wanted to avoid going through that, you could just say *the incredible thing is that they come back*. And there you don't need the mood tense. So, *the incredible thing*:



S: **Lo increíble.**

T: *Is that they return:*

S: **Es que vuelven.**

T: Good. **Lo increíble es que vuelven.** *The incredible thing is that they come back.* How would you say *the incredible thing is that they do it again?* And we will use the structure with **volver** to say *again.* So, *the incredible thing is that they return to do it.* What was *to do* or *to make?*

S: **Hacer.**

T: Good. *The incredible thing is that they do it again.* *The incredible thing is that they return to do it:*

S: **Lo increíble es que vuelven a hacerlo.**

T: Very good. **Lo increíble es que vuelven a hacerlo.** *The incredible thing is that they do it again.*

But what if you were to say *it is incredible that they do it again?*

S: **Es increíble que vuelvan a hacerlo.**

T: Very good. **Es increíble que vuelvan a hacerlo.** And how would you say *it's incredible that they did it again?* *It's incredible that they returned to do it:*

S: **Es increíble que volvieron, volvieron, volvieron a hacerlo.**

T: Good. **Es increíble que volvieron a hacerlo.** Very good. Well done.

## Track 83

T: What was the word for *what* or *that*?

S: **Que.**

T: **Que.** And what was the word for *to buy*?

S: **Comprar.**

T: **Comprar.** Good. So if we wanted to say something like *that you bought it is not my problem, that you might have bought it is not my problem, the fact that you bought it is not my problem*, we can just start with **que** and put the verb in the mood tense, and we get this feeling. *The fact that you may have bought it.* We're doing the same thing in English - *may have* - with this *may* we are getting some mood. So, let's start. Speaking informally, *that you bought it, that you may have bought it:*

S: So **comprar** becomes **compraron, comprara, compraras.**

T: Good.

S: **Que compraras.**

T: Don't forget your *it* just because you're concentrating so much on the verb.

S: **Que lo compraras.**

T: *Is not my problem:*

S: **No es mi problema.**

T: Good. **Que lo compraras no es mi problema.** Maybe you want to say something like, *that you told him is not my problem.* So, *to tell* we can use **decir**, to tell or to say, or **contar** we saw as well. **Contar** means *to count* or *to recount*. So let's use **contar**. *That you told him, the fact that you told him, is not my problem.* Speaking informally still:

S: **Que contaras. Que le contaras no es mi problema.**

T: **Que le contaras no es mi problema.** Good. In English I should say - although I have this London English so often I don't say - I should say *if I were you*. Now *I was* is the normal past tense, from

*to be. I was.* So we change *was* to *were* to get the past mood tense in English. *If I were you,* hypothetical past. In Spanish whenever we speak about the past hypothetically, after **si**, after *if*, we will use the mood tense. So for example, what was the verb *to be able to, can*, related to *power*?

S: **Poder.**

T: **Poder.** Now if you want to make the *they* form in the past, *they could, they were able to*, there's a slight change. The *pod* that you would be left with after taking *-er* away from **poder**, turns to *pod*. *Pod*. So how would you say *they were able to*, using the point in the past?

S: **Pudieron.**

T: **Pudieron.** Good. So from this base we can form the mood tense. So if you wanted to say something like *if I could. If I could cook, I would cook.* So, *if I could*:

S: **Si pudiera.**

T: *To cook*, or “to kitchen”:

S: **Cocinar.**

T: Good. **Si pudiera cocinar, I would cook.** So to find *would*, you must look back at *I would like. It would please me*:

S: **Me gustaría.**

T: Good. So, there you have your *would*. So *I would cook*:

S: **Cocinaría.**

T: Good. **Si pudiera cocinar, cocinaría.** How would you say *if I could cancel it, I would?* So, *if I could cancel it, I would cancel it*:

S: **Si pudiera cancelarlo.**

T: *I would.* So *I would cancel it*:

S: **Lo cancelaría.**

T: Good. **Si pudiera cancelarlo, lo cancelaría.** Good. What was *to have*? The *to have* that we use to go into the past?

S: **Haber.**

T: **Haber.** Now when **haber** goes into the point in the past, that first bit *hab* of **haber**, when you take off your *-er*, it changes for the point in the past. It becomes *hub*, *h-u-b*. So how would you say *they had* using the point in the past, going from **haber** and this *hab* of **haber** will become *hub* when we make the point in the past:

S: **Hubieron.**

T: **Hubieron.** Good. So we can say, *if you had told me it*. So speaking informally, *if you had told me it*, how would you say that? *If you had told me it*:

S: **Si me lo hubieras contado.**

T: Good. **Si me lo hubieras contado**, *I would have gone*. So *if you had told me, if you had told me it, I would have gone*. So now we need *would have*. We leave everything else at the door. So how do we get *would have* from **haber**?

S: **Habería.**

T: **Habría.**

S: **Habría.**

T: Good. The *e* falls away. **Habría**. So *I would have gone*:

S: **Habría ido.**

T: Good. So all together. *If you had told me it, if you had told me it, I would have gone*:

S: **Si me lo hubieras contado, habría ido.**

T: Good. **Si me lo hubieras contado, habría ido**. *If we had known, we would have gone, if we had known, we would have gone*:

S: **Si hubiéramos sabido,**

T: *We would have gone*:

S: **Habríamos ido.**

T: Good. What is *to see*?

S: **Ver.**

T: **Ver.** And what is *they saw*, point in the past?

S: **Vieron.**

T: **Vieron.** What was *my house*?

S: **Mi casa.**

T: **Mi casa.** *Your house*, informally:

S: **Tu casa.**

T: **Tu casa.** Do you remember how to say *his house, her house, your house* (formally), *their house*?

S: **Su casa.**

T: **Su casa.** Good. So how would you say *if you saw their house? If you saw their house*:

S: **Si vieras su casa.**

T: Good. **Si vieras su casa.** How would you say *if you saw it, you would understand it*? Let's speak formally. *If you saw it, you would understand it*, speaking formally:

S: **Si lo viera, comprendería- comprendería.**

T: Good.

S: **Comprendería's** the past, is the tense, isn't it?

T: The line in the past. Very good. **Si lo viera, lo comprendería.** Or we can use **entender**, which also means to understand. **Si lo viera, lo entendería.**

I should mention that there also exists an alternative form for the past mood tense: the past subjunctive, with *-ase* or *-iese*. So you may hear **hablase** instead of **hablara**, or **entendiese** instead of **entendiera**, **comiese** instead of **comiera**, **comiésemos** instead of **comiéramos**. But how much that alternative form is used really depends on the dialect. The main way, the most common way of using the past subjunctive is the one that we've learned here. And there's no difference between

the two in meaning. They are just two versions of the same tense. So you don't need to worry about using **hablase** instead of **hablara** for example, but you will need to recognize it if you hear it or read it somewhere.

## Track 84

T: So now we really do have the panorama of all times and moods in Spanish. So now that's everything. That's every tense including both the idea of time and the idea of mood. We've learned how to construct them all, and we should really listen actively to refresh any knowledge that we might need to refresh through our exposure to Spanish. Analyzing always what we hear, and if you're listening to a song or a movie maybe you just hear the endings of the verbs at the beginning. But if you can identify what that ending means, that's the important bit. In the same way this course has been focused equally on the process that we go through in building our structures in Spanish, as it has been focused on content. So half of the point of this course has been content, has been teaching you Spanish; and the other half has been how to manage Spanish, how to manage these elements that we've learned. How to think about this information and how to relate to information generally in a new way. How to find things that you think you might have forgotten. We've also looked now and then at some irregularities in Spanish. Verbs or other words that don't follow the rules that we learned. Now the older the language, the more irregularities it tends to have. Spanish, effectively being modern Latin, is quite prone to irregularities. But the irregularities can be made sense of within themselves. You can group together irregularities. So whilst throughout the course we were looking at the odd irregularity as it popped up, now at the end of the course we are going to tidy up the irregular verbs. So there are a group of verbs, which we can call the "go verbs". These are the verbs that use *-go* instead of *-o* for the *I* form. For example, how do you say *to have*, *to have*, for possession?

S: **Tener.**

T: **Tener.** And *I have*:

S: **Tengo.**

T: **Tengo.** So this *-go* pops up for the *I* version, but only for the *I* version. How do you say *he has*, or *she has*, *you* (formal) *have*?

S: **Tiene.**

T: **Tiene.** And *you* (informal):

S: **Tienes.**

T: And *they*:

S: **Tienen.**

T: **Tienen.** And *we*:

S: **Tenemos.**

T: **Tenemos.** So the *-go* is only popping up for the *I* version. What was *to come*?

S: **Venir.**

T: **Venir.** Good. *I come*:

S: **Vengo.**

T: **Vengo.** So here we have the *-go* again. But *he comes*:

S: **Viene.**

T: **Viene.** *They come*:

S: **Vienen.**

T: *You* (informal):

S: **Vienes.**

T: *We*:

S: **Venemos- venimos.**

T: **Venimos.** Good. So we have this *-go* popping up just for the *I* form. We've seen other verbs like this. What was *to go out* or *to leave*?

S: **Salir.**

T: **Salir.** And *I go out* or *I leave*:

S: **Salgo.**

T: **Salgo.** *To put*:



S: **Poner.**

T: **Poner.** And *I put*:

S: **Pongo.**

T: **Pongo.** Good. We have **decir**, *to say* or *to tell* and we get **digo**, which is even more irregular but we see the *-go*. We have **hacer**, *to make* or *to do*, and we get **hago**. **Oír**, which means *to hear*, **oír**. And we have **oigo**, *I hear*. **Traer**, **traer** means *to bring*. And *I bring* is **traigo**. So, *to bring* is *t-r-a-e-r*, **traer**, and then *I* is **traigo**. It takes an extra *i*. So here we get **traigo**. **Traer** is interesting because **traer** means *to bring*. But when it forms part of another verb, we can translate it like *-tract*. For example, **extraer** means:

S: *Extract.*

T: Good. How would you say *attract*?

S: **Atraer.**

T: **Atraer.** *Contract:*

S: **Contraer.**

T: *Distract:*

S: **Distraer.**

T: Good. *I distract:*

S: **Distraigo.**

T: **Distraigo.** *I distract.* Or you could say *I get distracted*. **Me distraigo.** Good. So these *-go* verbs are a little bit special and they behave quite irregularly. But more or less in the same way. One of the things they do in the same way is that in the mood tense, instead of switching vowels like the rest of the verbs do in the mood tense in the present, they go from *-go* to *-ga*. So whilst in the normal present this *-go* only pops up for *I*, we have **tengo/tiene/tienen/tenemos**, the *-ga* for the mood sense is for everybody. So we get **tenga** for *I, he/she/it* and *you* formal. How would you make it informal?

S: **Tengas.**

T: Exactly. So if you were to say *I want you to come, I want that you come*, speaking informally - so *I want that*:

S: **Quiero que.**

T: Good. Now we want *you come* and we want the mood tense version. So it's a -go verb, so our base for the mood tense is **venga**. So if you want to speak informally and say *I want that you come, I want you to come*:

S: **Quiero que vengas.**

T: Very good. **Quiero que vengas**. And you will hear actually in Spain **venga, venga, venga**. They use it all the time, meaning *come on, come on*. **Venga vale**. They say **vale** as well in Spain. **Venga vale**. You will hear this all the time. When a Spanish person is hanging up the telephone you can hear fifteen of them, **venga vale, vale venga, venga vale**. So this **venga** that you will hear around a lot will be a nice hook to remember that this -go goes to -ga. Actually, when somebody is answering the phone in Spain, you might hear **diga** or **dígame**. What does that mean, **dígame**?

S: *Tell me.*

T: Yes. The mood tense by itself is an order. For a positive order then we have the **me** after the verb, **dígame**. So you will hear people answering the phone like this in Spain. *Tell me. Dígame*. So **traer** was *to bring*. What is *I bring*?

S: **Traigo.**

T: **Traigo**. And what is *you bring*, speaking informally?

S: **Traigas.**

T: This is the mood tense. But we don't want the mood tense, we just want *you bring* informally.

S: **Traes.**

T: **Traes**. Good. But if you say *I want you to bring it*, how would you say that? *I want you to bring it*, informally:

S: **Quiero que lo traigas.**

T: Very good. **Quiero que lo traigas.** *I don't want you to distract me, I don't want you to distract me,*  
still informal:

S: **No quiero que me distraigas.**

T: Very good. **No quiero que me distraigas.** *I don't want you to distract me.* Very good.

## Track 85

T: We can identify this group of *-go* verbs and expect them to go to *-ga* when they are in the subjunctive or the mood tense. So *I leave* from **salir** is:

S: **Salgo.**

T: **Salgo.** And if I want to tell somebody *leave* (formally):

S: **Salga.**

T: **Salga.** And if I want to tell more than one person:

S: **Salgan.**

T: Good, and if I want to tell them *don't leave*:

S: **No salgan?**

T: **No salgan.** Good. **Poner** was *to put*. *I put*:

S: **Pongo.**

T: **Pongo**, good. Lets speak formally, *put it here*, *put it here*:

S: **Lo ponga aquí.**

T: And where does that **lo** go with positive commands?

S: **Póngalo aquí.**

T: Good. **Póngalo aquí.** But *don't put it here*:

S: **No lo ponga aquí.**

T: Very good. **No lo ponga aquí.** We saw with regular verbs that we have a shortcut where we don't use the mood tense for informal positive commands. So if I want to tell you to eat I can just say **come**, I go to **comes** and I drop the *s*, **come**. If I want to tell you to find it I can go to **encontrar**, **encuentras**, I can drop the *s*, **encuéntralo**. That's our shortcut for informal positive commands where we don't use the mood tense. With these *-go* verbs, to make that shortcut you just drop the *-go*, so for example, how do you say *I have* from **tener**?

S: **Tengo**.

T: **Tengo**. If you want to tell somebody informally *have*, you just drop the *-go*:

S: **Ten**.

T: **Ten**. *Have it*:

S: **Tenlo**.

T: Yes. **Tenlo**.

S: So we don't see **tenga**?

T: For formal, but we are now looking at the shortcut that we have for informal, so how would you say *have it*, speaking formally?

S: **Téngalo**.

T: **Téngalo**. But informally we are not using the mood tense, we have a short cut, it's just different to the short cut we learnt before, the short cut is just dropping the *-go*, **tenlo**. A nice way to remember this is how you will see people in many Spanish speaking countries answering the phone, either **dígame**, formally, or **dime** informally. What is *I come*?

S: **Vengo**.

T: And how do you tell somebody formally to come?

S: **Venga**.

T: **Venga**. Now how would you make it informal?

S: **Ven**.

T: **Ven**. Good. So I should mention that the **venga** that you hear in Spain as *come on* is not necessarily formal, it's lost that feeling of formality because it's like a fixed expression, so **venga, venga** you hear all the time, and then **ven** will sound much more like *come*, physically *come*, rather than *come on*; **venga, venga, venga** is used like *come on*. What was *to leave* or *to go out*?

S: **Salir**.

T: **Salir.** *I leave or I go out:*

S: **Salgo.**

T: **Salgo.** *Leave, speaking informally:*

S: **Sal.**

T: **Sal.** We can just drop the *-go*. *I say or I tell* is  **digo**. If you want to say *tell me* formally, how is it?

S: **Dígame.**

T: **Dígame.** If you want to make that same command informally, how will it be?

S: **Dime.**

T: **Dime.** Good. So both things you hear when people answer the phone in Spain - **dime, dígame** - and in other countries, in other Spanish speaking countries as well. So for *-go* verbs they will go to *-ga* to form the mood tense and for the orders, the short cut for the informal positive order they will just drop this *-go*. So if you want to say *tell me when you come*, speaking informally, how would that be?

S: **Dime cuando vengas.**

T: Good. After **cuando** we are using the mood tense because we are referring to the future. **Dime cuando vengas.** *Tell me when you come.* How would you say *tell me when you do it* - and lets speak formally now? *Tell me when you do it*, speaking formally:

S: **Dígame cuando lo haga.**

T: Very good. **Dígame cuando lo haga.** Good.

## Track 86

T: These *-go* verbs, these verbs that take *-go* instead of *-o* for the *I* version in the present, also behave a little bit strangely in the future tenses. In the *will* and *would* tenses. So, we can look at that now, and whilst looking at it, revise the endings that we learned for *will* and *would*. So we said that our *will* endings, what we add on to the *to* form of the verb to get *will*, are the same as those very irregular versions of **haber** in the present. So we can make that connection to help us internalize them. Can you talk me through those *will* endings?

S: So it's *-e* for *I* and *-emos* for *us*.

T: For *we*, very good.

S: For *we*. *-a* for *he, she, it*, and *you* formal, *-an* for *they*.

T: *They* or *you* plural, and the last one, *you* informal?

S: *-as*.

T: Good. So we have the endings. And our endings for *would*, which again we are adding on to the *to* form of the verb, we need to remember one key sound for *would*. If we remember how to say *I would like*, that's a nice hook to remember the key sound. So what is the key sound?

S: *-ía*.

T: *-ía*. And then on to *-ia* we can add on, of course, our *-mos* or *-n* or *-s* if we need to. Good. So *-go* verbs, these verbs that have *-go* and then *-ga* for the mood tense, when they are building the futures, they have a contraction. But, they all make the same contraction. For example, *I will have* is **tendré**. **Tendré**.

S: **Tendré**.

T: **Tendré**. So, of course, it should be "teneré", but it's **tendré**. So that last *e* of **tener** turns into a *d*, and we get **tendré**. This is a contraction because it means we end up with two syllables instead of three. It would be "teneré", but it's **tendré**. Which just makes everything a little bit more efficient. But all of these verbs, these *-go* verbs, are behaving in a similar way. So we have *to come*:

S: **Venir**.

T: **Venir.** And *I will come*:

S: **Vendré.**

T: **Vendré.** Very good. *I would come* - the same contraction for both futures:

S: **Vendría.**

T: **Vendría.** Good. *I would come. We would come*:

S: **Vendríamos.**

T: **Vendríamos.** *We would come later, but we don't have time. We would come later, but we don't have time*:

S: **Vendríamos más tarde, pero no tenemos tiempo.**

T: Good. **Vendríamos más tarde, pero no tenemos tiempo.** What was *to put*?

S: **Poner.**

T: And *I put*:

S: **Pongo.**

T: **Pongo.** So this *-go* alerts us to the fact that this verb will behave in this irregular way as well. So if you want to say *I will put it here*, how will it be? *I will put it here*:

S: **Lo pondré aquí.**

T: Good. **Lo pondré aquí.** *I would put it here, I would put it here*:

S: **Lo pondría aquí.**

T: Good. *We would put it here*:

S: **Lo pondríamos aquí.**

T: Good. **Lo pondríamos aquí.** And *we will put it here*:

S: **Lo pondremos aquí.**

T: Good. **Lo pondremos aquí.** What was *to leave* or *to go out*?



S: **Salir.**

T: **Salir.** *I leave or I go out:*

S: **Salgo.**

T: **Salgo.** So again this *-go* can set off our little alarm bell that this verb will probably be irregular in the futures. So how would you say *I would leave* or *I would go out*?

S: **Saldría.**

T: **Saldría.** Good. *You would leave* or *you would go out* (informally):

S: **Saldrías.**

T: **Saldrías.** *Will you leave? Will you go out tonight? Will you go out tonight?:*

S: **¿Saldrías esta noche?**

T: That's *would you*, now we want *will you*:

S: **¿Saldrás esta noche?**

T: Good. **¿Saldrás esta noche?** But of course we have **esta noche** which is future context so we could just use the present. We could just say *You go out tonight?* We don't need the future, so how would that be?

S: **¿Sales esta noche?**

T: **¿Sales esta noche?** Good. So for most *-go* verbs, we take off the *-go* and we put *-dré* for *I will* and *-dría* for *I would*, in most of them. **Traer**, *to bring*, doesn't do it. **Traeré**, *I will bring*. **Atraeré**, *I will attract*. **Distraeré**, *I will distract*. But most of these that have *-go* will go to *-dría* or *-dré*. **Hacer** and **decir**, *to do* or *to make* or *to say* or *to tell*, **hacer** and **decir** are particularly irregular. And we've already seen this. We've seen how after **haber** they become **hecho** and **dicho**. It's very irregular. We saw how the informal command from **hacer** is **haz**, *h-a-z*. Again irregular, and here as well. *I will do* is **haré**. So it's not following this rule. It's even more irregular. We have **haré**. **Haré**. *I will do* or *I will make*.

S: **Haré.**

T: *H-a-r-e*. **Haré**. And all we need to do is identify one of these irregularities and then we understand that all of *will* and all of *would* will use this same base, the same base that **haré** has used.

So *we will do* or *we will make* is:

S: **Haremos**.

T: Good. And *we would do* or *we would make*:

S: **Haríamos**.

T: **Haríamos**. *We would do it, but we're busy now. We would do it, but we're busy now*: S:  
**Lo haríamos, pero estamos-**

T: *Occupied*.

S: **Ocupados ahora**.

T: Good. **Lo haríamos, pero estamos ocupados ahora**. *We would do it, but we're busy now*. So **haríamos** is *we would do* or *we would make*, and what is *we will do* or *we will make*?

S: **Haremos**.

T: **Haremos**. And *they will do, they will make*:

S: **Harán**.

T: **Harán**. *I would say* or *I would tell* is **diría**. So we get from **decir, diría**. *I would say, he would say, she would say, you (formal) would say*:

S: **Diría**.

T: So like I said, we just need one of these versions to understand how the rest will be. So if **diría** is *I would say* or *I would tell*, how is *I will say* or *I will tell*?

S: **Diré**.

T: **Diré**. *I will tell you later* (speaking informally):

S: **Te diré más tarde**.

T: Good. **Te diré más tarde.** And of course, having future context with **más tarde**, we could just say:

S: **Te digo más tarde.**

T: Good. **Te digo más tarde.** *I tell you later.* What was *to be able to*?

S: **Poder.**

T: **Poder.** How do you say *I would be able to* or *I could*?

S: **Podría.**

T: **Podría.** Good. The /e/ falls out. So this is a different irregularity. This is not a -go verb. **Podría.** Of course it was “podería”, but many years of “podería, podería, podería, podería”, the /e/ fell away. **Podría.** How is *to put*?

S: **Poner.**

T: **Poner.** And *I would put*:

S: **Pondría.**

T: **Pondría.** Good. So there’s a subtle difference in sound between *I would be able to*, **podría**, and *I would put*, **pondría**. *We would be able to*:

S: **Pondríamos.**

T: *We would be able to.* That’s *we would put.*

S: **Podríamos.**

T: **Podríamos.** And *we would put*:

S: **Pondríamos.**

T: **Pondríamos.**

## Track 87

T: Looking at the past tenses, the line in the past and the dot in the past, the line in the past is extremely regular. We only have a few odd irregular verbs for the line in the past. **Ser** is one of them and we can remember by thinking of an era. So what is the base for **ser** as a line in the past?

S: **Era**.

T: **Era**. Good. So this means *I was, you (formal) were, he/she/it was*, as a line in the past. How would you say *we were*?

S: **Éramos**.

T: **Éramos**. Good. The accent doesn't move. **Éramos**. *They were* or *you guys were*:

S: **Eran**.

T: **Eran**. And *you* informal?

S: **Eras**.

T: **Eras**. Good. We had the line in the past of **ir**, which was a little bit like a mix between the *-aba* ending that we have for *-ar* verbs for the line in the past and the *-ía* ending that we have for *-er/-ir* verbs in the line in past. So what was *I was going* from **ir**?

S: **Iba**.

T: Very good. **Iba**. *We were going*:

S: **Íbamos**.

T: *You* informal:

S: **Ibas**.

T: And *they* or *you guys*:

S: **Iban**.

T: **Iban**. Good. And then we had **ver**, *to see*. How is *I see*, in the present?

S: **Veo**.

T: **Veo**. And this extra *e* that it keeps for the *I* form in the present, **veo**, carries over into the line in the past. So *I was seeing, you (formal) were seeing, he/she/it were seeing* is **veía**.

S: **Veía**.

T: **Veía**. So *we were seeing*:

S: **Veíamos**.

T: *You* informal:

S: **Veías**.

T: And *they*:

S: **Veían**.

T: Good. So the line in the past is a very safe tense. We just have a few irregular verbs, but for the rest we can be very certain that taking off the *-ar* and putting *-aba*, or taking off the *-er/-ir* and putting *-ía* is going to give us the result that we want. The point in the past is less regular, less reliable. There are a group of verbs in the dot of the point in the past which are irregular, but they all do something very similar. Now most of the verbs in this group are *-go* verbs, but not all of them. Now what these verbs do in the point in the past is that firstly, the beginning bit of the verb - so for example, if we have **poder** - that beginning bit, *pod-*, changes and we already saw this. We saw, for example, *they were able* was **pudieron**. So that *pod-* changes to *pud-*. Here it's a little change, but there are more drastic changes with other verbs. So this is the first thing. The base of the verb that is left once we take the endings off changes. Sometimes radically, sometimes a little bit like here from *pod-* to *pud-*. The second thing that they do is that they use a mixture of the point endings from *-ar* verbs and from *-er/-ir* verbs. They use a mixture of the two endings from both sides, but always the same mixture for each of these irregular verbs. And the third thing they do is to not have the accent on the endings. So firstly, let's revise the point in the past with **hablar** and **comer**. Just to refresh what are these endings. So we have **hablar** *to speak*, and *I spoke* is:

S: **Hablé**.

T: Good. And *he spoke* or *she spoke* or *you (formal) spoke*:

S: **Habló**.

T: **Habló.** And then we had *to eat* which was **comer**. And *I ate*:

S: **Comí.**

T: **Comí.** And *he ate* or *she ate* or *you* (formal) *ate, it ate* - **habló** and then with **comer** it's:

S: **Comió.**

T: **Comió.** Good. Back to **hablar**. How was *we spoke*?

S: **Hablamos.**

T: **Hablamos.** Good. Same as the present tense. And *they spoke*:

S: **Hablaron.**

T: **Hablaron.** And *you* (informal) *spoke* - which in the *you* (informal) version, we hear that informal *s* and the informal *t* in the ending:

S: **Hablaste.**

T: **Hablaste.** Good. Back to **comer**. How is *we ate*?

S: **Comemos. Comimos.**

T: **Comimos.** *They ate* or *you guys ate*:

S: **Comieron.**

T: **Comieron.** And *you* (informal) *ate*:

S: **Comiste.**

T: Very good. **Comiste.** So that's the panorama of our dot in the past, but these irregular verbs use a mixture of these two groups for different endings in the point in the past. For example, **tener**, *to have*. In the point in the past, the way that *ten-* changes, that root changes, we said that's the first thing that happens. The *ten-* of **tener** becomes *tuv-*. *T-u-v*.

S: *Tuv-*.

T: And *I had* is **tuve**. And *he/she/it had* is **tuvo**. So we are not accenting the endings. **Tuve. Tuvo.**  
So where are these two endings coming from, *-e* and *-o*? Are they coming from the *-ar* verbs or from the *-er/-ir* verbs?

S: *-ar*.

T: Good. So we have **tuve** and **tuvo**. So these two endings for *I* and for *he/she/it/you* formal come from *-ar* and the rest come from *-er/-ir*. So how would you say *we had* with the point in the past?

S: **Tuvimos.**

T: **Tuvimos.** And *you* (informal):

S: **Tuviste.**

T: **Tuviste.** And *they*:

S: **Tuvieron.**

T: **Tuvieron.** Good. So now that we have worked our way through this one verb, all we need to do for the other ones is to find the base. The irregular base for the verb and then we know what to do with it. What was *to be*, for states?

S: **Estar.**

T: **Estar.** Now *I was*, the point in the past, from **estar** is **estuve**. So it's nice to look at **tener** and **estar** together because we have **tuve** for *I had* and **estuve** for *I was*.

S: **Estuve.**

T: And *I wasn't*:

S: **No estuve.**

T: Good. *He was, she was, you were* (formal):

S: **Estuvo.**

T: Good. *We were*:

S: **Estuvimos.**

T: **Estuvimos.** *You were* (informally):

S: **Estuviste.**

T: **Estuviste.** *Where were you?:*

S: **¿Dónde estuviste?**

T: **¿Dónde estuviste?** *They were, you guys were:*

S: **Estuvieron.**

T: **Estuvieron.** *Where were you guys?:*

S: **¿Dónde estuvieron?**

T: Good. **¿Dónde estuvieron?** So whilst we have these irregular forms, which need a little bit more effort, many times you can just use the line in the past instead. So if you say something like **¿dónde estuviste?** - *where were you?* - and here we're using a point in time, so maybe it sounds like *where were you in this precise moment when we needed you?*, but even so we could still just use the line in the past to get around this irregular tense. Now we don't want to avoid it forever. Anything that we don't control, of the line which will end up controlling us. Anything we are uncertain of that we don't take the control of, will control us. But, many times you're in a conversation and you don't have time to find that irregular form and maybe you want to worry about it later and check or think about what it was. In that case, you can just turn to the line in the past. **¿Dónde estabas?** instead of **¿dónde estuviste?** So how would you say *I had to go* using this point in the past? So how is *I had*, using the point in the past?

S: **Tuve.**

T: Good. So *I had to go*:

S: **Tuve que ir.**

T: Good. So **tuve que ir**, you would want to use it if you meant that in one precise moment you know *something happened and I had to go*: **tuve que ir**. But, you could also use the line in the past and not have any problem there if you wanted to avoid this irregular tense just to get the meaning



across. So you can just say **tenía que ir**, which is regular, to avoid using this irregular tense. What was *to say* or *to tell*?

S: **Decir.**

T: **Decir** or **contar**, but **decir** we are working with for now. So *dec-* becomes *dij-* in the point in the past. *Dij-*. *D-i-j*. What is *I said*?

S: **Dije.**

T: **Dije.** *He said:*

S: **Dijo.**

T: Good. *We said:*

S: **Dijimos.**

T: **Dijimos.** Good. So they're using the same endings, this group of irregular verbs. *-e* and *-o* from the *-ar* group and then the rest of the endings from the *-er/-ir* group for the point in the past.

## Track 88

T: What was *to put*?

S: **Poner.**

T: **Poner.** *I was putting*, the line in the past:

S: **Ponía.**

T: **Ponía.** Good. Now if you want to say *I put*, the point in the past, *I put* in the past of course in English it doesn't change. *I put*. Present. *I put*. Past. *I put* for the past, our base is *pus-*, *pus-*. *P-u-s*.

So how would you say *I put*?

S: **Pusé.**

T: **Puse.**

S: Ah, **puse.**

T: The endings don't take the accent here for these irregular verbs. **Puse.** *You put*, informally:

S: **Pusiste.**

T: *Where did you put it?:*

S: **¿Dónde lo pusiste?**

T: **¿Dónde lo pusiste?** Good. And now we can see where that **poner** *-pose* was coming from. We said that when we have **poner** as part of a verb in Spanish, it's *-pose* in English. **Componer**, *compose*. **Exponer**, *expose*. **Oponer**, *oppose*. And now we hear this *-pose* sound coming out in the dot in the past: **puse**, **pusiste**. What was *to do* or *to make*?

S: **Hacer.**

T: The base here in this point in the past is *hic-*. *H-i-c*. So if you want to say *I made* or *I did*:

S: **Hice.**

T: And *he made* or *he did*:

S: **Hizo.**

T: **Hizo.** Here it would be *h-i-z-o*. We can't keep the *c*, because it would spell "hico". **Hizo.** *They made or you guys made:*

S: **Hicieron.**

T: Good. Whenever you identify one of these irregular verbs in the point in the past where the base of the verb has changed, then you know what to do with it. That end *-o* is coming from *-ar* and then you have *-imos*, *-iste*, *ieron* from *-er/-ir*. Sometimes the change is subtle. We saw that *pod-* of **poder** became *pod-*. We saw in another lesson that *hab-* of **haber** became *hub-*. *Ven-* of **venir**, becomes *vin-*. So how would you say *I came*?

S: **Vine.**

T: And *he came*:

S: **Vino.**

T: You know how to say *wine* in Spanish?

S: **Vino.**

T: *He came with wine:*

S: **Vino con vino.**

T: **Vino con vino.** **Traer**, *to bring* has **traje**, *I brought* in the past. So how would you say *he brought*?

S: **Trajo.**

T: Good. *We brought:*

S: **Trajimos.**

T: **Trajimos.** And *I brought* again:

S: **Traje.**

T: And **traje** also means suit like the kind you wear. And it's masculine. So *I brought a suit* would be:

S: **Traje un traje.**

T: **Traje un traje. Vino con vino. Traje un traje.** There's one extra irregular past point to look at. It's extra irregular because it doesn't really follow these rules about what groups it's taking the sounds from, and it's also extra irregular because it is the past for both **ser** and **ir**. It is the past for both *I was* and *I went*. And this is **fui**. *F-u-i*. **Fui**.

S: **Fui.**

T: **Fui.** So **fui** means *I was* from **ser**, point in the past, and it also means *I went*. So **ser** and **ir** in the point in the past, they share a past. **Fui** means *I was* or *I went*. And **fue** means *he was, she was, it was, you were* or *went*. So we see that it's extremely irregular. **Fui**. *I was* or *I went*. How would you say *I didn't go*?

S: **No fui.**

T: **No fui. Fue**, *he was* or *he went*. How would you say *he didn't go*?

S: **No fue.**

T: **No fue.** How would you say *we went*?

S: **Fuimos.**

T: Good. And *you* (informal):

S: **Fuiste.**

T: **Fuiste.** Now to make *they* or *you* (plural) *was* or *went*, we would add on *-ieron*, but we will find it very difficult to pronounce "fuieron", "fuieron". So the */i/* sound, the *i* fell away. So how would that sound?

S: **Fueron.**

T: **Fueron.** So the *i*, the */i/* sound, falls away. **Fueron.** The same thing happens in a couple of other cases too. We have **trajeron** from **traer**, *to bring*. *They brought, you guys brought, trajeron. Dijeron, they or you guys said.* So a couple of other examples there of that *i* falling away, just for sound reasons. "Trajieron", "dijieron" is kind of difficult to say so it fell away for efficiency: **dijeron, trajeron, fueron.** So now that we have **fueron**, we can make the past mood tense. We

can say something like *if I were you* because we always go from the *they* form of the point in the past. So if *they went* or *they were* is **fueron**, we can say *if I were you* and of course we're using the mood tense here because we have *if* going into the past hypothetically. So this is a mood tense that is quite specific for the past. We are not putting the mood tense after **si**, after *if* in the present. But for this hypothetical past, *if I were you*, there we have it in English as well as in Spanish. We said that *if I were you* instead of "if I was you" is mood tense in English. So how would that be? *If I were you*:

S: **Fueron** becomes **fueran**.

T: Good.

S: And the *I* version is **fuera**.

T: Good.

S: "**Si fuera t**".

T: Now it's just the word for *you*.

S: **Tú**.

T: **Tú** or **usted** depending on who we're talking to. So **si yo fuera tú**. **Si fuera tú** or **si yo fuera tú**, **si yo fuera usted**, *if I were you*. Now we are understanding why we went from the *they* version to find the mood tense in the past. Because going from the *they* version instead of the *to* form means that if there is some irregularity, we will transfer that irregularity over into the mood tense. So we went from **fueron** to **fuera** and we will go from, for example, **dijeron**, *they spoke*, to **dijera** so we carry over that irregularity of having lost that *i*. **Trajeron**, *they brought* and then **trajera** for the mood tense. *I had* was **tuve**. What was *they had* or *you guys had*?

S: **Tuvieron**.

T: **Tuvieron**. So now we can say *if I had it, I would tell you*. *If I had it, I would tell you*:

S: **Si lo tuviera**.

T: *I would tell you.* You can use **contar**. **Decir** is very irregular for *would*. So if you don't want to deal with that now, imagine you're in a real life context, you can just go to the more regular verb, which is **contar**. *I would tell you*, informally:

S: **Te contaría.**

T: Good. **Si lo tuviera, te contaría**, or **te lo contaría**. *I would tell you it.* We like to close with this *it* in Spanish a lot. **Si lo tuviera, te lo contaría**, *I would tell you it.* So we have *to do* or *to make* which is **hacer**, and we said that the root for the point in the past is *hic-*. *H-i-c* for the *I* version. So how would you say *I made* or *I did*?

S: **Hice.**

T: **Hice.** And *they did* or *they made*:

S: **Hicieron.**

T: **Hicieron.** Good. So you could say *I wanted for them to do it. I wanted that they did it*:

S: **Quería que lo hicieran.**

T: Good. *I wanted them to do it. I wanted that they do it.* **Quería que lo hicieran.** How would you say *I wanted for us to do it, I wanted that we do it, that we did it*?

S: **Quería que lo hiciéramos.**

T: Good. Well done. **Quería que lo hiciéramos.** Good. I'm not as interested here in installing, let's say, all of this content, all of these irregular verbs. All I want to give you is an exposure to how they might work. The irregular verbs that you can come across, so that practicing, you can manage them. So you should not be afraid of making mistakes. You should build the verbs how you are used to and if you suspect that this one might be irregular, check. Check with the person that you are speaking to.

## Track 89

T: So in the spirit of looking at irregularities in Spanish and how to deal with them and how to identify them, I wanted to spend a little bit of time speaking about making your own rules. We've taught you a great amount of Spanish for you to be very conversational and reach fluency just through practice and listening in a very short amount of time, if you get practicing. But we haven't looked at every single piece of content of Spanish, of course, but the content that we've looked at has taken from every area of the language in an analytical way which will allow you to make your own rules when you come across things that you don't quite understand whilst you're practicing and exposing yourself to Spanish. So I just want to experiment a little bit in regards to that with you now. So I will present you with some imaginary situations where you see the language behaving in certain ways and I want you to make your own rule. Now it doesn't mean it's necessarily your own. Somebody else might have come up with it before, but that you will figure out for yourself what is going on. So for example, the word for *too*, as in *t-o-o* is **demasiado**.

**Demasiado.**

S: **Demasiado.**

T: It is a bit of a long word, but if you break it up it's easier to digest. You have **de más**, *of more*, *-iado*. And this is *too*, *t-o-o*, as in too many. Actually **de más** can be used by itself if you say **tengo cuatro de más**. *I have four of more*, **tengo cuatro de más**. It means *I have four too many*. *I have four spare*. *I have four extra*. So **demasiado** means *too*. Now imagine you hear these following sentences and I want you to work out what's happening here. Why this word is behaving differently in different circumstances. So you might hear **demasiadas casas**. You might hear **demasiados coches**. And you might hear **demasiado agresivo**, **demasiado agresiva**, and **demasiado agresivos**. Again. You might hear **demasiadas casas**, **demasiados coches**. Here it's changing from the base form **demasiado**. **Demasiadas casas**. **Demasiados coches**. And then here it's not. **Demasiado agresivo**. **Demasiado agresiva**. **Demasiado agresivos**. So why in one situation is it changing and why in the other situation is it not?

S: The only difference I see is that it's related to nouns in the first two examples and in the second two it's related to something descriptive.

T: Adjectives.

S: Adjectives.

T: **Espectacular.** Well done. Brilliant. That's it. We said that identifying what type of word we have will mostly be all we need to do to figure out what's going on. So we understand from this that when **demasiado** goes with a noun, it will change to match it: **demasiadas casas, demasiados coches.** But when it goes with an adjective it won't: **demasiado agresivo, demasiado agresiva, demasiado agresivos, demasiado agresivas.** It's not changing. So we didn't learn that here, but we have been analytical enough of the language for you to figure that out by yourself. So another example for you to figure out what's going on. Now the words **ala**, *wing*, **agua**, *water* and **aula**, *hole* or *classroom* are all feminine words, but we say **el ala**, *the wing*. **El agua**, *the water*. And **el aula**, *the classroom*. What's going on?

S: Is it because the first letter of those words is *a*, and it would be weird to say "la ala"?

T: You have other words that begin with *a* where you have *la* at the beginning, for example **la alfombra**, *the carpet*. **La almohada**, *the pillow*. So you need to find something that's different between **la almohada** and **la alfombra** to **el agua, el ala, el aula**.

S: Well, the difference in this case is that it's just two, just two syllables, perhaps.

T: That's it. There are two syllables and they begin and end in *a*. So it's a very specific thing. It's not something that we are really going to spend time on learning here in this course. Because it's very likely as well that you'll forget it. So what we have done throughout this course is given you the analytical skills to work it out by yourself and the confidence to make your own rules. So that's the rule. They are all feminine words, but they take **el** because they are two syllables and they begin and end with *a*. And we know that they are feminine because we say **el agua fria**. *The cold water*. **Fria**, not **frio**. So we know they are actually feminine even though they are taking **el**. One more exercise like this. The word for *one* is **uno**. The word for *some* is **alguno**. And the word for *none* is **ninguno**. So we have **uno, alguno, ninguno**. *One, some, none*. So if I tell you *how many do you want*, you will reply to me **uno**. Or if you don't want any, **ninguno**. But if I say *one man*, how do I say *one man* or *a man*?

S: **Un hombre.**



T: **Un hombre.** And if I say *some man*, I say **algun hombre.** And if I say *no man*, I say **ningun hombre.** So we have **uno, alguno** and **ninguno.** **No quiero ninguno, quiero uno, quiero alguno.** But, if I say *I want one car*, for example. **Quiero un coche. Quiero algun coche. No quiero ningun coche.** So what's happening there? Why does **uno** become **un** and why does **alguno** become **algun**?

S: Because a noun is following.

T: Yes, because we have a noun following it and it loses that last *o*. So **uno, alguno, ninguno,** become **un, algun, ningun.** And you would notice that it doesn't happen with the feminine. So we have **una mujer, a woman. Alguna mujer, some woman. Ninguna mujer, no woman.** So the point is just this, that we need to analyze the language that we are coming across, trying to pick out anything that we don't understand to tackle it so that we control it and we understand what's happening so that that element of the language doesn't control us. Very quickly, thinking in this way you will get over your technical problems in the language. You will solve your technical problems and then when you solve your technical problems in a specific language, then you can start to live freely in that language. And become somebody else in that language that is also you, but somebody else, because you are using this mechanism or this tool which as we've said a few times, permits and obliges you to perceive and express the world in a certain way. But before we can fully take advantage of that, we want to get over our technical difficulties and this is achieved not through memorizing what is correct, but analyzing and understanding what is correct and finding why.

## Track 90

T: There are also some variations that you might come across in dialect. For example, in most of Spain they use **le** and **les** whenever they're referring to *him* or *her*, or *you* (formal), or *you guys*, or *they*. So instead of **lo** and **la** and **los** and **las**, they are using **le** and **les**, not just to make *to him*, *to her*, they will use it always when they're referring to people and not things. So in most of Spain, **le veo** means *I see him* or *her* or *you* (formal). And **lo veo** means *I see it*. But in the great majority of the Spanish speaking world this isn't the case.

In most of Spain, you have **vosotros**, which is the *you* (plural informal), which is only used in Spain or most of Spain. But again, nowhere in Latin America so that might be something you want to listen out for if you will practice this dialect of Spanish. Many accents have an aspirated *s* in Spanish so you might hear /ehtá/ instead **está**. /cómo ehtá/ instead of **cómo está**. /ehpero/ instead of **espero**.

Around the Río de la Plata, for example, around Montevideo and Buenos Aires and in 30% of the Spanish speaking world, used exclusively or mixed with **tú**, you also have **vos**. **Vos**. Another word for **tú**. And the verb conjugations might change slightly. So instead of **puedes** you might hear **podés**. And because the accent's coming on the end, that *o* isn't splitting. **Podés**. Instead of **quieres**, **querés**.

So you might come across small differences in different dialects of Spanish, but they are minor and you now have all of the know-how and experience to identify and understand them. And if you want, adopt them, you can adopt these differences. It's advisable to speak like the people you are practicing with, because the more you speak like the Spanish that you are hearing, the more you understand. Now if you're talking with people from different Spanish speaking countries, people with different dialects or accents in Spanish, then you might get something like a pan-hispanic accent, let's say, like many native Spanish speakers who move around the Spanish speaking world or spend time with Spanish speakers from different countries also have. You might even find yourself switching between different accents when you are talking with people from different places. Again a phenomenon that we also find occurring amongst native speakers.

**Ahora hablamos español. Ahora somos hispanohablantes.** Now we speak Spanish. Now we are Spanish speakers. **Somos hispanohablantes y sólo tenemos que practicar, hablar y analizar**

**para perfeccionar nuestro español.** My advice now for the end of the course is to spend some time practicing, to get out and practice and expose yourself to Spanish as much as possible. And then maybe after a short while of practicing, you might want to repeat the course to refresh and touch up on anything that you might be unsure of, especially having practiced and being solid on so many things it will really free up a lot of mental space to home in on the things that you are more uncertain with. And, in this way, repeating the course might be a little bit like when you watch a good movie twice and on the second time round you have a different experience.

The most important thing in this journey of exploring and improving your Spanish is to not to forget to enjoy it, to not obsess with the destination but to enjoy the journey. You are already a Spanish speaker, you should enjoy it. There is a huge variety of literature, music, and cinema coming from Spanish speaking countries, so you can enjoy this and at the same time effectively be studying, but it won't feel like that. And we must bear in mind also that listening is a separate skill. You will hear many things that you could think your way through and say and maybe not understand them. So when you first begin listening, don't be overwhelmed by the fact that you don't understand at the beginning as much as you can speak. All you have to do is insist on analyzing the language that you are exposed to, breaking it up and seeing what you can learn from that and although at the beginning it will seem very fast, once you get in the habit of this analysis and this breaking up of the language in the same way that we were doing when we were building up to create our sentences, in reverse deconstructing what you hear. The more you do this, the more Spanish will slow down. It will slow right down and you'll hear a lot more. So like I said, don't be overwhelmed by not understanding a lot at the beginning, insist, enjoy music, watch movies with subtitles, try to match between the subtitles in English and what you are hearing in Spanish. And just try to match bits and pieces. If you insist with this, very quickly you will notice that you are understanding a lot more and that the language appears to slow right down.

Thank you very much for participating in the Language Transfer project just by doing the course. Please share it. Language Transfer is a completely independent and unfunded project, so we don't have any funds for the diffusion of this course. If this course got to you, it's because somebody shared it, so please do keep sharing and telling people about this way of learning so that they also might enjoy this experience for free. All of our courses are completely free to promote language learning and to allow anybody to have this experience anywhere in the world, but of course the

fact that the courses are free doesn't mean that we are immune to the world of monetary economics. We produce courses much slower than what we would like to, due to a lack of funds. So when you donate, actually what you're donating is time that we are then able to spend on the construction, practice, and recording of new courses. If you'd like more information on the Language Transfer project, what we're doing, and why, then check out our website [www.languagetransfer.org](http://www.languagetransfer.org). We really hope you enjoy using your new language and the new world that it opens up to you. Strangely the same one that was there all along.